



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
12/255,713	10/22/2008	Marcos C. Tzannes	6936-47-CON-3

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

POA ACCEPTANCE LETTER



0C00000005775051

62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 11/26/2012

NOTICE OF ACCEPTANCE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 11/07/2012.

The Power of Attorney in this application is accepted. Correspondence in this application will be mailed to the above address as provided by 37 CFR 1.33.

/jtfitzhugh sr/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
12/255,713	10/22/2008	Marcos C. Tzannes	6936-47-CON-3

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870
POWER OF ATTORNEY NOTICE



62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 11/26/2012

NOTICE REGARDING CHANGE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 11/07/2012.

- The Power of Attorney to you in this application has been revoked by the assignee who has intervened as provided by 37 CFR 3.71. Future correspondence will be mailed to the new address of record(37 CFR 1.33).

/jtfitzhugh sr/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c).

I hereby appoint:

 Practitioners associated with Customer Number:

62574

OR Practitioner(s) named below (If more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number

As attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignments documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(c).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) to:

 The address associated with Customer Number:

62574

OR

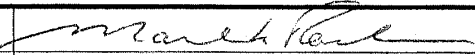
<input type="checkbox"/>	Firm or Individual Name			
	Address			
	City	State	Zip	
	Country			
	Telephone	Email		

Assignee Name and Address: TQ DELTA, LLC
805 Las Cimas Parkway, Suite 240
Austin, Texas 78746

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) (Form PTO/AIA/96 or equivalent) is required to be filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(c) may be completed by one of The practitioners appointed in this form, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record

The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee

Signature		Date	10/14/12
Name	Mark K. Roche	Telephone	512-609-1810
Title	Managing Director		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32 and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	14170511
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Joanne Vos
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	6936-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	07-NOV-2012
Filing Date:	22-OCT-2008
Time Stamp:	14:22:39
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no
------------------------	----

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		EntityStatus_373c_w_POA.pdf	419213 8eb616d75ff3ba52a929a5e4f72ba669ce4d1795	yes	4

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
Document Description	Start	End
Miscellaneous Incoming Letter	1	1
Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73.	2	3
Power of Attorney	4	4
Warnings:		
Information:		
Total Files Size (in bytes):	419213	
<p>This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.</p> <p><u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.</p> <p><u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.</p> <p><u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.</p>		

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re the Application of: Marcos C. Tzannes)	Patent No.: 7,769,104
Application No.: 12/255,713)	Issued: August 3, 2010
Filed: October 22, 2008)	Examiner: WILLIAMS, Lawrence
Atty. File No.: 6936-47-CON-3)	Confirmation No.: 3870

For: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

ASSERTION OF ENTITLEMENT TO SMALL ENTITY STATUS

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Madam:

In accordance with MPEP §§ 509.02 and 509.03 and 37 CFR 1.27, this document is being filed to inform the U.S. Patent Office of the change of status for the above-identified patent from large entity status to small entity status. All fees paid to date have been paid as large entity status. No fees have yet been paid as small entity status. Due to the sale of the referenced patent, the Applicant is now entitled to small entity status.

We respectfully request that small entity status be granted for the above-referenced patent.

Please contact the undersigned if there are any questions regarding this notification.

Respectfully submitted,

SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

Date: 7 Nov '12

By: 

Jason H. Vick
Reg. No. 45,285
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202
Telephone: 303-863-9700

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)Applicant/Patent Owner: TQ DELTA, LLCApplication No./Patent No.: 7,769,104Filed/Issue Date: August 3, 2010Titled: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMTQ DELTA, LLC, a Corporation

(Name of Assignee)

(Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that, for the patent application/patent identified above, it is (choose **one** of options 1, 2, 3 or 4 below):

1. The assignee of the entire right, title, and interest.
2. An assignee of less than the entire right, title, and interest (check applicable box):
- The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is _____%. Additional Statement(s) by the owners holding the balance of the interest **must be submitted** to account for 100% of the ownership interest.
- There are unspecified percentages of ownership. The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title and interest are:

Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest **must be submitted** to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

3. The assignee of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete assignment from one of the joint inventors was made). The other parties, including inventors, who together own the entire right, title, and interest are:

Additional Statement(s) by the owner(s) holding the balance of the interest **must be submitted** to account for the entire right, title, and interest.

4. The recipient, via a court proceeding or the like (e.g., bankruptcy, probate), of an undivided interest in the entirety (a complete transfer of ownership interest was made). The certified document(s) showing the transfer is attached.

The interest identified in option 1, 2 or 3 above (not option 4) is evidenced by either (choose **one** of options A or B below):

- A. An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

- B. A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

1. From: Marcos C. Tzannes To: AWARE, INC.

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel 010877, Frame 0307, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

2. From: AWARE, INC. To: TQ DELTA, LLC

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel 029154, Frame 0937, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

[Page 1 of 2]

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(c)

3. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

4. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

5. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

6. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet(s).

As required by 37 CFR 3.73(c)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

Signature _____

Jason H. Vick

Printed or Typed Name

Date 7 Nov '12

45,285

Title or Registration Number



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	ISSUE DATE	PATENT NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
12/255,713	08/03/2010	7769104	5550-47-CON-3	3870

62574 7590 07/14/2010
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

ISSUE NOTIFICATION

The projected patent number and issue date are specified above.

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)
(application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment is 0 day(s). Any patent to issue from the above-identified application will include an indication of the adjustment on the front page.

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (<http://pair.uspto.gov>).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Application Assistance Unit (AAU) of the Office of Data Management (ODM) at (571)-272-4200.

APPLICANT(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site <http://pair.uspto.gov> for additional applicants):

Marcos C. Tzannes, Orinda, CA;

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: **Mail** Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
or Fax (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

62574 7590 05/18/2010

Jason H. Vick
 Sheridan Ross, PC
 Suite # 1200
 1560 Broadway
 Denver, CO 80202

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

_____ (Depositor's name)
_____ (Signature)
_____ (Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
12/255,713	10/22/2008	Marcos C. Tzannes	5550-47-CON-3	3870

TITLE OF INVENTION: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	\$1510	\$300	\$0	\$1810	08/18/2010

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B	2611	375-260000

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363). <input type="checkbox"/> Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached. <input type="checkbox"/> "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. Use of a Customer Number is required.	2. For printing on the patent front page, list (1) the names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively, (2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.	1 <u>Jason H. Vick</u> 2 <u>Sheridan Ross, P.C.</u> 3 _____
---	---	---

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)
 PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE: Aware, Inc. (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY AND STATE OR COUNTRY) Bedford, MA

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent): Individual Corporation or other private group entity Government

4a. The following fee(s) are submitted: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Issue Fee <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted) <input type="checkbox"/> Advance Order - # of Copies _____	4b. Payment of Fee(s): (Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above) <input type="checkbox"/> A check is enclosed. <input type="checkbox"/> Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number <u>19-1970</u> (enclose an extra copy of this form).
--	---

5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)
 a. Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27. b. Applicant is no longer claiming SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27(g)(2).

NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) will not be accepted from anyone other than the applicant; a registered attorney or agent; or the assignee or other party in interest as shown by the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Authorized Signature: _____ Date: 18 Jun '10
 Typed or printed name: Jason H. Vick Registration No.: 45,285

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re the Application of: Marcos C. Tzannes) Group Art Unit: 2611
Application No.: 12/255,713) Examiner: WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B
Filed: October 22, 2008) Confirmation No.: 3870
Atty. File No.: 5550-47-CON-3)

For: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN
A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

COMMENTS ON STATEMENT OF REASONS FOR ALLOWANCE

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Applicant submits this Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance to address further the Notice of Allowability ("Notice") having a mailing date of May 18, 2010.

In the Notice, the Examiner's stated reasons for allowance were that:

The instant application discloses a method and transceiver for scrambling the phase characteristics of carriers for multicarrier communications. A search of prior art records has failed to teach or suggest, alone or in combination:

A method to scramble the phase characteristics of carriers for multicarrier communications comprising:

“assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol; modulating, by a modulator, the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal;

determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal; and

combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier” (pg. 6, lines 1-24) as disclosed in claim 40.

A multicarrier transceiver for randomizing scrambling the phase characteristics of carriers comprising:

“a transmitter capable of assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;

a modulator capable of modulating the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal; and

a phase scrambler capable of determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier, wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal, and combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier” (Fig. 1, pg. 6, lines 1-24) as disclosed in claim 43.

Based on the Notice, the patentability of all other independent and dependent claims is assumed to be based upon the elements as set forth in such claims and that such claims meet all criteria for patentability under §101, §102, §103 and §112.

As is clear from MPEP 1302.14,

“The statement [of reasons for allowance] is not intended to necessarily state all the reasons for allowance or all the details why claims are allowed and should not be written to specifically or impliedly state that all the reasons for allowance are set forth.”

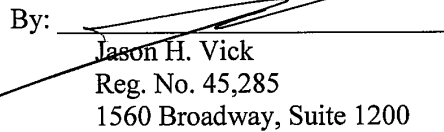
While the stated Reasons for Allowance may be a stated reason for allowing some independent claims, Applicant submits that some independent claims may have a different reason for allowance and that some independent claims have other reasons for allowance.

Specifically, the prior art fails to teach the specific combination of features as recited in the independent claims.

Although the Applicant believes that no fees are due for filing this Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance, please charge any fees deemed necessary to Deposit Account No. 19-1970.

Respectfully submitted,
SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

Date: 18 Jan '16

By: 
Jason H. Vick
Reg. No. 45,285
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202
Telephone: 303-863-9700

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	12255713
Filing Date:	22-Oct-2008
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Filer:	Jason Vick/Joanne Vos
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3

Filed as Large Entity

Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Utility Appl issue fee	1501	1	1510	1510
Publ. Fee- early, voluntary, or normal	1504	1	300	300

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				1810

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	7849800
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Joanne Vos
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	18-JUN-2010
Filing Date:	22-OCT-2008
Time Stamp:	18:36:01
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$1810
RAM confirmation Number	5186
Deposit Account	191970
Authorized User	

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		Issue_fee_Payment.pdf	366053 f55e7fbc6aa8398126d5481402863bfa9aaa blaf	yes	4

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description

Document Description	Start	End
Issue Fee Payment (PTO-85B)	1	1
Miscellaneous Incoming Letter	2	4

Warnings:

Information:

2	Fee Worksheet (PTO-875)	fee-info.pdf	32061 472f5fd2cd955b44edf69dc57198af2cc0fffc 0a	no	2
---	-------------------------	--------------	---	----	---

Warnings:

Information:

Total Files Size (in bytes): 398114

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

62574 7590 05/18/2010
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

EXAMINER: WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B
ART UNIT: 2611
PAPER NUMBER:
DATE MAILED: 05/18/2010

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO.
Values: 12/255,713, 10/22/2008, Marcos C. Tzannes, 5550-47-CON-3, 3870

TITLE OF INVENTION: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

Table with 7 columns: APPLN. TYPE, SMALL ENTITY, ISSUE FEE DUE, PUBLICATION FEE DUE, PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE, TOTAL FEE(S) DUE, DATE DUE
Values: nonprovisional, NO, \$1510, \$300, \$0, \$1810, 08/18/2010

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above.

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:

- A. If the status is the same, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.
B. If the status above is to be removed, check box 5b on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and twice the amount of the ISSUE FEE shown above, or

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:

- A. Pay TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above, or
B. If applicant claimed SMALL ENTITY status before, or is now claiming SMALL ENTITY status, check box 5a on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and 1/2 the ISSUE FEE shown above.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

**Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail Mail Stop ISSUE FEE
 Commissioner for Patents
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 or Fax (571)-273-2885**

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

62574 7590 05/18/2010

Jason H. Vick
 Sheridan Ross, PC
 Suite # 1200
 1560 Broadway
 Denver, CO 80202

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

_____ (Depositor's name)
_____ (Signature)
_____ (Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
12/255,713	10/22/2008	Marcos C. Tzannes	5550-47-CON-3	3870

TITLE OF INVENTION: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	\$1510	\$300	\$0	\$1810	08/18/2010

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B	2611	375-260000

<p>1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. Use of a Customer Number is required.</p>	<p>2. For printing on the patent front page, list</p> <p>(1) the names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively, 1 _____</p> <p>(2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed. 2 _____</p> <p>3 _____</p>
---	---

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE _____ (B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY) _____

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) : Individual Corporation or other private group entity Government

<p>4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Issue Fee</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Advance Order - # of Copies _____</p>	<p>4b. Payment of Fee(s): (Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> A check is enclosed.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number _____ (enclose an extra copy of this form).</p>
---	--

5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated above)

a. Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27. b. Applicant is no longer claiming SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27(g)(2).

NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) will not be accepted from anyone other than the applicant; a registered attorney or agent; or the assignee or other party in interest as shown by the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Authorized Signature _____ Date _____

Typed or printed name _____ Registration No. _____

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO. Includes contact info for Jason H. Vick and examiner WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B.

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)

(application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment to date is 0 day(s). If the issue fee is paid on the date that is three months after the mailing date of this notice and the patent issues on the Tuesday before the date that is 28 weeks (six and a half months) after the mailing date of this notice, the Patent Term Adjustment will be 0 day(s).

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (http://pair.uspto.gov).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

Notice of Allowability	Application No.	Applicant(s)	
	12/255,713	TZANNES, MARCOS C.	
	Examiner	Art Unit	
	LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS	2611	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

1. This communication is responsive to amenmdment filed on 4/21/2010.
2. The allowed claim(s) is/are 40-45, renumbered as 1-6, respectively.
3. Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
 - a) All b) Some* c) None of the:
 1. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
 2. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____ .
 3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

* Certified copies not received: _____.

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.

THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.

4. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be submitted. Note the attached EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF INFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives reason(s) why the oath or declaration is deficient.
 5. CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.
 - (a) including changes required by the Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) attached
 - 1) hereto or 2) to Paper No./Mail Date _____.
 - (b) including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date _____.
- Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).**
6. DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

Attachment(s)

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) 2. <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) 3. <input type="checkbox"/> Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08),
Paper No./Mail Date _____ 4. <input type="checkbox"/> Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit
of Biological Material | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Informal Patent Application 6. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Interview Summary (PTO-413),
Paper No./Mail Date <u>4/22/2010</u> . 7. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Examiner's Amendment/Comment 8. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance 9. <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____. |
|--|--|

/Tesfaldet Bocure/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2611

Examiner-Initiated Interview Summary	Application No. 12/255,713	Applicant(s) TZANNES, MARCOS C.	
	Examiner LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611	

All Participants: (1) LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS.
(2) JASON VICK.

Date of Interview: 22 April 2010

Type of Interview:
 Telephonic
 Video Conference
 Personal (Copy given to: Applicant Applicant's representative)

Status of Application: ALLOWANCE
(3) _____.
(4) _____

Time: 4:25 PM

Exhibit Shown or Demonstrated: Yes No
If Yes, provide a brief description: _____

Part I.
Rejection(s) discussed:

Claims discussed:
claim 43

Prior art documents discussed:

Part II.
SUBSTANCE OF INTERVIEW DESCRIBING THE GENERAL NATURE OF WHAT WAS DISCUSSED:
replace the phrase "capable of scrambling" with "that scrambles".

Part III.
 It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of the interview, since the interview directly resulted in the allowance of the application. The examiner will provide a written summary of the substance of the interview in the Notice of Allowability.
 It is not necessary for applicant to provide a separate record of the substance of the interview, since the interview did not result in resolution of all issues. A brief summary by the examiner appears in Part II above.

/Lawrence B Williams/
Examiner, Art Unit 2611

(Applicant/Applicant's Representative Signature – if appropriate)

EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT

1. An examiner's amendment to the record appears below. Should the changes and/or additions be unacceptable to applicant, an amendment may be filed as provided by 37 CFR 1.312. To ensure consideration of such an amendment, it MUST be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee.

Authorization for this examiner's amendment was given in a telephone interview with Jason Vick on 4/22/2010.

The application has been amended as follows:

In the claims:

a.) In claim 43, replace the phrase in the preamble, "capable of scrambling" with "that scrambles".

DRAWINGS

2. The drawings were received on 4/21/2010. These drawings are accepted by the examiner.

REASONS FOR ALLOWANCE

1. The following is an examiner's statement of reasons for allowance: The instant application discloses a method and transceiver for scrambling the phase characteristics of carriers for multicarrier communications. A search of prior art records has failed to teach or suggest, alone or in combination:

A method to scramble the phase characteristics of carriers for multicarrier communications comprising:

“assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;
modulating, by a modulator, the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal;

determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal; and

combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier” (pg. 6, lines 1-24) as disclosed in claim 40.

A multicarrier transceiver for randomizing scrambling the phase characteristics of carriers comprising:

“a transmitter capable of assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;

a modulator capable of modulating the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal; and

a phase scrambler capable of determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier, wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal, and combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier” (Fig. 1, pg. 6, lines 1-24) as disclosed in claim 43.

Any comments considered necessary by applicant must be submitted no later than the payment of the issue fee and, to avoid processing delays, should preferably accompany the issue fee. Such submissions should be clearly labeled “Comments on Statement of Reasons for Allowance.”

CONCLUSION

2. The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure.

a.) Sakoda et al. discloses Transmitter, Receiver, Communication Method And Radio Communication System in US Patent 6,256,355 B1 wherein he teaches a random phase shifter circuit adding random phase value generated according to a predetermined rule based on an initial phase to the phases of a plurality of carriers, but fails to teach the “ assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol; determining a phase shift for the at least

Art Unit: 2611

one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal” as disclosed in the instant application.

b.) Sakoda et al. discloses Transmission Method, Transmitter and Receiver in US Patent 6,519,929 B1 wherein he teaches random phase shifting to add random phase value generated according to a predetermined rule based on an initial phase to the phases of a plurality of carriers, but fails to teach the “ assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol; determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal” as disclosed in the instant application.

c.) Tzannes discloses System And Method For Scrambling The Phase Of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System in US Patent 6,961,369 B1.

d.) Tzannes discloses System And Method For Scrambling The Phase Of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System in US Patent 7,471,721 B2.

e.) Tzannes discloses System And Method For Scrambling The Phase Of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System in US Patent 7,292,627 B2.

3. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Lawrence B Williams whose telephone number is 571-272-3037. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday-Friday (8:00-6:00).

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner’s supervisor, Ghayour Mohammad can be reached on 571-272-3021. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Application/Control Number: 12/255,713
Art Unit: 2611

Page 6

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free).

/Tsfaldet Bocure/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2611

lbw
May 15, 2010

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. 12/255,713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.	
	Examiner LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
*	A US-6,961,369	11-2005	Tzannes, Marcos C.	375/220
*	B US-7,471,721	12-2008	Tzannes, Marcos C.	375/222
*	C US-7,292,627	11-2007	Tzannes, Marcos C.	375/222
*	D US-6,256,355	07-2001	Sakoda et al.	375/259
*	E US-6,519,292	02-2003	Sakoda et al.	375/295
*	F US-			
*	G US-			
*	H US-			
*	I US-			
*	J US-			
*	K US-			
*	L US-			
*	M US-			


FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
*	N				
*	O				
*	P				
*	Q				
*	R				
*	S				
*	T				

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS


*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
*	Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)				
*	U				
*	V				
*	W				
*	X				

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 12255713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.
	Examiner LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

<input type="checkbox"/> Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant		<input type="checkbox"/> CPA		<input type="checkbox"/> T.D.		<input type="checkbox"/> R.1.47	
CLAIM		DATE					
Final	Original	10/05/2009	04/22/2010				
-	1	✓	-				
-	2	✓	-				
-	3	✓	-				
-	4	✓	-				
-	5	✓	-				
-	6	✓	-				
-	7	✓	-				
-	8	✓	-				
-	9	✓	-				
-	10	✓	-				
-	11	✓	-				
-	12	✓	-				
-	13	✓	-				
-	14	✓	-				
-	15	✓	-				
-	16	✓	-				
-	17	✓	-				
-	18	✓	-				
-	19	✓	-				
-	20	✓	-				
-	21		-				
-	22		-				
-	23		-				
-	24		-				
-	25		-				
-	26		-				
-	27		-				
-	28		-				
-	29		-				
-	30		-				
-	31		-				
-	32		-				
-	33		-				
-	34		-				
-	35		-				
-	36		-				

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 12255713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.
	Examiner LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

<input type="checkbox"/> Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant		<input type="checkbox"/> CPA		<input type="checkbox"/> T.D.		<input type="checkbox"/> R.1.47			
CLAIM		DATE							
Final	Original	10/05/2009	04/22/2010						
-	37		-						
-	38		-						
-	39		-						
1	40		=						
2	41		=						
3	42		=						
4	43		=						
5	44		=						
6	45		=						

REPLACEMENT SHEET

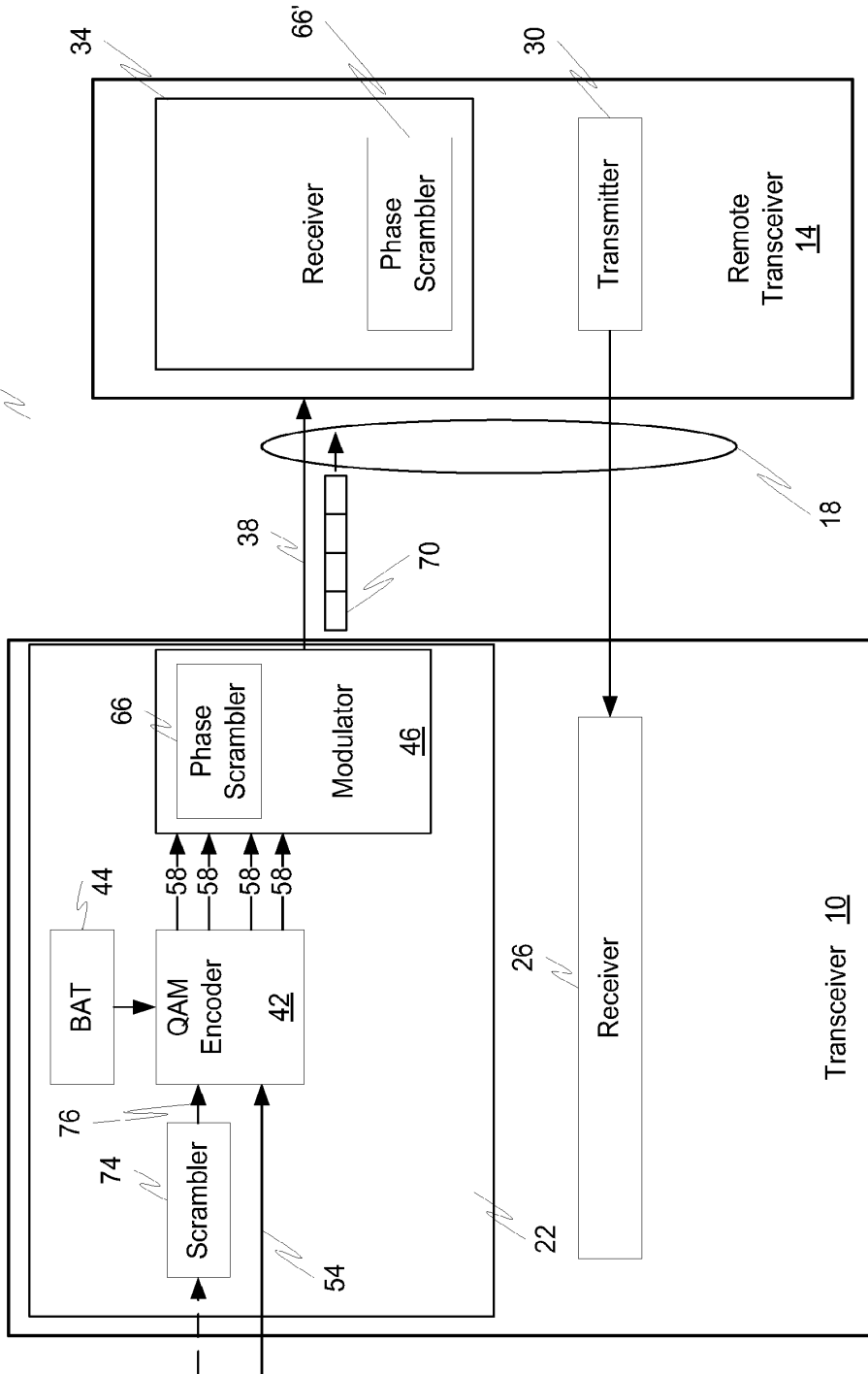


Fig. 1

EAST Search History

EAST Search History (Prior Art)

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L1	4	(375/377).cls. and (randomiz\$3 scrambl\$3) near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 16:50
S1	16	tzannes.in. and scrambling near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2009/10/02 21:12
S2	4	"60164134"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2009/10/02 21:16
S3	0	" a method for randomizing the phase of the carriers in a multicarrier"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2009/10/02 21:18
S4	0	"a method for randomizing the phase"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2009/10/02 21:19
S5	4	"7471721".pn. "7292627". pn. "6961369".pn.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2009/10/05 10:18
S6	3	"7471721".pn. "7292627". pn. "6961369".pn.	USPAT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 10:19

S7	15	"3955141".pn. "4985900".pn. "5682376".pn. "5748677".pn. "6256355".pn. "6507585".pn. "6590860".pn. "6704317".pn. "6961369".pn. "7292627".pn. "20050141410" "20060092902" "20060140288" "20080069253"	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 13:54
S8	4	S7 and (comput\$3 estimat\$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 13:57
S9	23	375/260.ccls. and (comput\$3 estimat\$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 13:58
S10	1	S9 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 13:58
S11	8	(375/219 375/222).ccls. and (comput\$3 estimat\$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 13:59
S12	0	S11 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 14:00
S13	11	375/260.ccls. and (scrambl\$3 randomiz\$3) near4 phase same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 14:01
S14	1	S13 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 14:01
S15	7	(375/219 375/222).ccls. and (scrambl\$3 randomiz\$3) near4 phase same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 14:03
S16	1	S15 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 14:03


S17	5	(370/281 370/295 370/330 370/343 370/436 370/478 370/480 370/481 370/57 370/69.1).ccls. and (scrambl\$3 randomiz\$3) near4 phase same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:45
S18	1	S17 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:45
S19	10	(370/281 370/295 370/330 370/343 370/436 370/478 370/480 370/481 370/57 370/69.1).ccls. and (comput\$3 estimat\$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:47
S20	4	S19 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:48
S21	13	(375/260 375/267 375/362).ccls. and (scrambl\$3 randomiz\$3) near4 phase same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:53
S22	2	S21 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:53
S23	31	(375/260 375/267 375/362).ccls. and (comput\$3 estimat\$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:54
S24	2	S23 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:54
S25	3	(375/295).ccls. and (comput\$3 estimat\$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:55
S26	0	S25 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2009/10/05 15:57

S27	2	"6,590,860" .pn.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2010/04/19 22:54
S28	6	tzannes.in. and ((randomiz \$3 scrambling) near3 phase).clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2010/04/20 08:32
S29	15	tzannes.in. and scrambling near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 16:22
S30	5	tzannes.in. and scrambling near3 phase.clm.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB	OR	ON	2010/04/22 16:23
S31	14	(375/259 375/261 375/295 375/298 375/219 375/220). ccls. and (comput\$3 estimat \$3 determin\$3) near4 phase adj shift same (carrier\$3 sub adj carrier\$1 multi adj carrier)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:45
S32	2	S31 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:45
S33	43	(375/259 375/261 375/295 375/298 375/219 375/220). ccls. and (randomiz\$3 scrambl\$3) near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:47
S34	12	S33 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:47
S35	17	(370/206 370/208).ccls. and (randomiz\$3 scrambl\$3) near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:52
S36	6	S35 and @ad<="19991109"	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:52
S37	2	(455/73 455/91 455/108). ccls. and (randomiz\$3 scrambl\$3) near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/22 22:55
S38	8	"6519292".pn. "6256355". pn. "5742679".pn. "5682376".pn.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 11:38

S39	4	"6519292".pn. "6256355".pn. "5742679".pn. "5682376".pn.	USPAT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 11:38
S40	4	S38 and (randomiz\$3 scrambl\$3) near3 phase	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 11:39
S41	1	"12255713" and independently	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 11:41
S42	1	"6519292".pn. and randomiz \$3 near2 phase\$1	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 13:50
S43	1	"6519292".pn. and (predetermined adj rule initial adj phase adj value \$1)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 13:51
S44	1	"6256355".pn. and (predetermined adj rule initial adj phase adj value \$1)	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	ON	2010/04/26 13:53

4/ 26/ 10 5:22:42 PM


C:\ Documents and Settings\ LWilliams5\ My Documents\ EAST\ Workspaces\ 12255713a.wsp

Issue Classification 	Application/Control No. 12255713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.
	Examiner LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611

ORIGINAL					INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION														
CLASS		SUBCLASS			CLAIMED					NON-CLAIMED									
375		298			H	0	4	L	27 / 36 (2008.01.01)										
CROSS REFERENCE(S)																			
CLASS	SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)																		

<input type="checkbox"/> Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant <input type="checkbox"/> CPA <input type="checkbox"/> T.D. <input type="checkbox"/> R.1.47															
Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original
-	1	-	17	-	33										
-	2	-	18	-	34										
-	3	-	19	-	35										
-	4	-	20	-	36										
-	5	-	21	-	37										
-	6	-	22	-	38										
-	7	-	23	-	39										
-	8	-	24	1	40										
-	9	-	25	2	41										
-	10	-	26	3	42										
-	11	-	27	4	43										
-	12	-	28	5	44										
-	13	-	29	6	45										
-	14	-	30												
-	15	-	31												
-	16	-	32												

/LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS/ Examiner.Art Unit 2611 (Assistant Examiner)	4/26/2010 (Date)	Total Claims Allowed: 6	
/Teshaldet Bocure/ Primary Examiner.Art Unit 2611 (Primary Examiner)	05/06/2010 (Date)	O.G. Print Claim(s) 40	O.G. Print Figure 2

Search Notes 	Application/Control No. 12255713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.
	Examiner LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611

SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
375	219, 222, 260, 267, 295, 362	10/5/2009	LW
370	57, 69.1, 281, 295, 330, 343, 436, 478, 480-481		
Update Search		4/26/2010	LW
375	219-220, 259, 261, 295, 298		
370	206, 208		
455	73, 91, 108		

SEARCH NOTES			
Search Notes	Date	Examiner	
EAST, NPL, Inventor	10/5/2009	LW	
EAST, NPL, Inventor	4/26/2010	LW	

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
375	261, 298, 377	4/26/2010	LW

--	--



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 5 columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO.
12/255,713 10/22/2008 Marcos C. Tzannes 5550-47-CON-3 3870

62574 7590 04/27/2010
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

EXAMINER

WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B

ART UNIT PAPER NUMBER

2611

NOTIFICATION DATE DELIVERY MODE

04/27/2010

ELECTRONIC

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

jvick@sheridanross.com

Interview Summary	Application No. 12/255,713	Applicant(s) TZANNES, MARCOS C.	
	Examiner LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

(1) LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS. (3) MARCOS TZANNES.

(2) JASON VICK. (4) _____.

Date of Interview: 20 April 2010.

Type: a) Telephonic b) Video Conference
c) Personal [copy given to: 1) applicant 2) applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: d) Yes e) No.
If Yes, brief description: _____.

Claim(s) discussed: 40 and 43.

Identification of prior art discussed: _____.

Agreement with respect to the claims f) was reached. g) was not reached. h) N/A.

Substance of Interview including description of the general nature of what was agreed to if an agreement was reached, or any other comments: Discussed amendment for claims 40, 43. Also discussed correction for Fig. 1.

(A fuller description, if necessary, and a copy of the amendments which the examiner agreed would render the claims allowable, if available, must be attached. Also, where no copy of the amendments that would render the claims allowable is available, a summary thereof must be attached.)

THE FORMAL WRITTEN REPLY TO THE LAST OFFICE ACTION MUST INCLUDE THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW. (See MPEP Section 713.04). If a reply to the last Office action has already been filed, APPLICANT IS GIVEN A NON-EXTENDABLE PERIOD OF THE LONGER OF ONE MONTH OR THIRTY DAYS FROM THIS INTERVIEW DATE, OR THE MAILING DATE OF THIS INTERVIEW SUMMARY FORM, WHICHEVER IS LATER, TO FILE A STATEMENT OF THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW. See Summary of Record of Interview requirements on reverse side or on attached sheet.

/Lawrence B Williams/ Examiner, Art Unit 2611	
--	--

Summary of Record of Interview Requirements

Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP), Section 713.04, Substance of Interview Must be Made of Record

A complete written statement as to the substance of any face-to-face, video conference, or telephone interview with regard to an application must be made of record in the application whether or not an agreement with the examiner was reached at the interview.

Title 37 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) § 1.133 Interviews Paragraph (b)

In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office action as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135. (35 U.S.C. 132)

37 CFR §1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent or Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

The action of the Patent and Trademark Office cannot be based exclusively on the written record in the Office if that record is itself incomplete through the failure to record the substance of interviews.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or the attorney or agent to make the substance of an interview of record in the application file, unless the examiner indicates he or she will do so. It is the examiner's responsibility to see that such a record is made and to correct material inaccuracies which bear directly on the question of patentability.

Examiners must complete an Interview Summary Form for each interview held where a matter of substance has been discussed during the interview by checking the appropriate boxes and filling in the blanks. Discussions regarding only procedural matters, directed solely to restriction requirements for which interview recordation is otherwise provided for in Section 812.01 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, or pointing out typographical errors or unreadable script in Office actions or the like, are excluded from the interview recordation procedures below. Where the substance of an interview is completely recorded in an Examiners Amendment, no separate Interview Summary Record is required.

The Interview Summary Form shall be given an appropriate Paper No., placed in the right hand portion of the file, and listed on the "Contents" section of the file wrapper. In a personal interview, a duplicate of the Form is given to the applicant (or attorney or agent) at the conclusion of the interview. In the case of a telephone or video-conference interview, the copy is mailed to the applicant's correspondence address either with or prior to the next official communication. If additional correspondence from the examiner is not likely before an allowance or if other circumstances dictate, the Form should be mailed promptly after the interview rather than with the next official communication.

The Form provides for recordation of the following information:

- Application Number (Series Code and Serial Number)
- Name of applicant
- Name of examiner
- Date of interview
- Type of interview (telephonic, video-conference, or personal)
- Name of participant(s) (applicant, attorney or agent, examiner, other PTO personnel, etc.)
- An indication whether or not an exhibit was shown or a demonstration conducted
- An identification of the specific prior art discussed
- An indication whether an agreement was reached and if so, a description of the general nature of the agreement (may be by attachment of a copy of amendments or claims agreed as being allowable). Note: Agreement as to allowability is tentative and does not restrict further action by the examiner to the contrary.
- The signature of the examiner who conducted the interview (if Form is not an attachment to a signed Office action)

It is desirable that the examiner orally remind the applicant of his or her obligation to record the substance of the interview of each case. It should be noted, however, that the Interview Summary Form will not normally be considered a complete and proper recordation of the interview unless it includes, or is supplemented by the applicant or the examiner to include, all of the applicable items required below concerning the substance of the interview.

A complete and proper recordation of the substance of any interview should include at least the following applicable items:

- 1) A brief description of the nature of any exhibit shown or any demonstration conducted,
- 2) an identification of the claims discussed,
- 3) an identification of the specific prior art discussed,
- 4) an identification of the principal proposed amendments of a substantive nature discussed, unless these are already described on the Interview Summary Form completed by the Examiner,
- 5) a brief identification of the general thrust of the principal arguments presented to the examiner,
(The identification of arguments need not be lengthy or elaborate. A verbatim or highly detailed description of the arguments is not required. The identification of the arguments is sufficient if the general nature or thrust of the principal arguments made to the examiner can be understood in the context of the application file. Of course, the applicant may desire to emphasize and fully describe those arguments which he or she feels were or might be persuasive to the examiner.)
- 6) a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed, and
- 7) if appropriate, the general results or outcome of the interview unless already described in the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner.

Examiners are expected to carefully review the applicant's record of the substance of an interview. If the record is not complete and accurate, the examiner will give the applicant an extendable one month time period to correct the record.

Examiner to Check for Accuracy

If the claims are allowable for other reasons of record, the examiner should send a letter setting forth the examiner's version of the statement attributed to him or her. If the record is complete and accurate, the examiner should place the indication, "Interview Record OK" on the paper recording the substance of the interview along with the date and the examiner's initials.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re the Application of: Marcos C. Tzannes) Group Art Unit: 2611
Application No.: 12/255,713) Examiner: WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B
Filed: October 22, 2008) Confirmation No.: 3870
Atty. File No.: 5550-47-CON-3)

For: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN
A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

SUPPLEMENTAL AMENDMENT AND RESPONSE

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Applicants submit this Supplemental Amendment and Response to supplement the March 9, 2010 Amendment and Response. Please credit any overpayment or charge any underpayment to Deposit Account No. 19-1970.

Please amend the above-identified patent application as follows:

Amendments to the Specification begin on page 2 of this paper.

Amendments to the Claims are shown in the listing of claims which begins on page 3 of this paper.

Amendments to the Drawings begin on page 5 of this paper.

Remarks begin on page 6 of this paper.

Amendments to the Specification

Please amend the last paragraph of page 1, beginning at line 26 with the following:

The phase and amplitude of the carrier signals of the DMT transmission signal can be considered random because the phase and amplitude result from the modulation of an arbitrary sequence of input data bits comprising the transmitted information. Therefore, under the condition that the modulated data bit stream is random, the DMT transmission signal can be approximated as having a Gaussian probability distribution. A bit scrambler is often used in the DMT transmitter to scramble the input data bits before the bits are modulated to assure that the transmitted data bits are random and, consequently, that the modulation of those bits produces a DMT transmission signal with a Gaussian probability distribution.

Please amend the first paragraph on page 5 with the following:

By way of example, the DMT transmitter 22 shown in FIG. 1 includes a quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) encoder 42, a modulator 46, a bit allocation table (BAT) 44, and a phase scrambler 66. The DMT transmitter 22 can also include a bit scrambler 74, as described further below. The remote transmitter 30 of the remote transceiver 14 comprises equivalent components as the DMT transmitter 22. Although this embodiment specifies a detailed description of the DMT transmitter 22, the inventive concepts apply also to the receivers 34, ~~36~~26 which have similar components to that of the DMT transmitter 22, but perform inverse functions in a reverse order.

Amendments to the Claims:

This listing of claims will replace all prior versions, and listings, of claims in the application:

Listing of Claims:

1-39. (Canceled)

40. (Currently Amended) A method to ~~randomize~~scramble the phase characteristics of carriers for multicarrier communications comprising:
assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;
modulating, by a modulator, the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal;
determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal; and
combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier.

41. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 40, wherein the phase shift is determined using a function of the carrier number.

42. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 41, wherein the function of the carrier number comprises at least multiplying the carrier number by a predefined phase value.

43. (Currently Amended) A multicarrier transceiver capable of ~~randomizing~~scrambling the phase characteristics of carriers comprising:
a transmitter capable of assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;
a modulator capable of modulating the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal; and

a phase scrambler capable of determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier, wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal, and combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier.

44. (Previously Presented) The transceiver of claim 43, wherein the phase shift is determined using a function of the carrier number.

45. (Previously Presented) The transceiver of claim 44, wherein the function of the carrier number comprises at least multiplying the carrier number by a predefined phase value.

Amendments to the Drawings:

The attached drawing sheet includes changes to Fig. 1 as requested by the Examiner. This sheet, which includes Figure 1 replaces the original sheet.

REMARKS

Applicants respectfully requests reconsideration of this application as amended.

Applicants would like to thank Examiner Lawrence Williams for the courtesies extended to Applicant and the Applicant's representative during the April 20 personal interview. During the interview, the claims were generally discussed and it was agreed to amend the claims as reflected herein. In addition, the Examiner requested a correction of errors in the specification and figures, which are also addressed herein. More specifically, replacement Fig. 1 includes reference to elements 2 and 22 as shown in the originally filed parent application.

With these amendments, Applicants respectfully submit that the application is in condition for allowance and respect the issuance thereof.

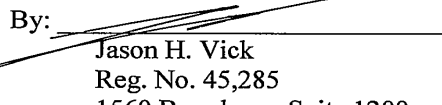
Should the Examiner believe anything further is desirable in order to place the application in even better condition for allowance, the Examiner is encouraged to contact Applicants undersigned representative at the telephone number listed below.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge to deposit account number 19-1970 any fees under 37 CFR § 1.16 and 1.17 that may be required by this paper and to credit any overpayment to that Account. If any extension of time is required in connection with the filing of this paper and has not been separately requested, such extension is hereby petitioned.

Respectfully submitted,

SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

Date: 21 Apr 110

By: 
Jason H. Vick
Reg. No. 45,285
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202
Telephone: 303-863-9700

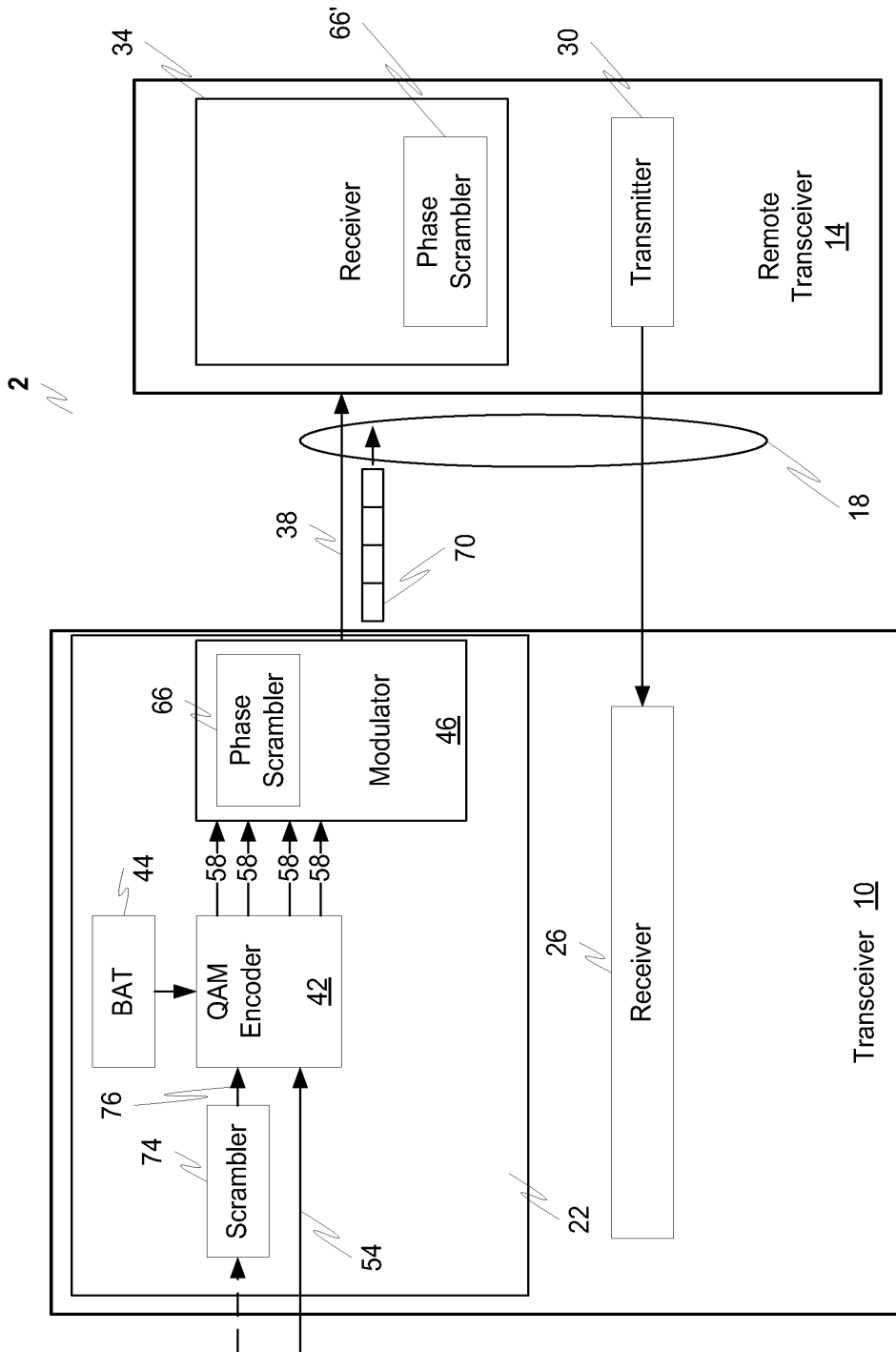


Fig. 1

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	7461412
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Joanne Vos
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	21-APR-2010
Filing Date:	22-OCT-2008
Time Stamp:	17:42:09
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no
------------------------	----

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		AMENDSupp_02.pdf	178660 a4030ca3b376f3fcbaf9e386bd3b2c2698f020ad	yes	7

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description		
Document Description	Start	End
Supplemental Response or Supplemental Amendment	1	1
Specification	2	2
Claims	3	4
Drawings-only black and white line drawings	5	5
Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment	6	6
Drawings-only black and white line drawings	7	7
Warnings:		
Information:		
Total Files Size (in bytes):	178660	
<p>This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.</p> <p><u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.</p> <p><u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.</p> <p><u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.</p>		

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re the Application of: Marcos C. Tzannes)
Application No.: 12/255,713)
Filed: October 22, 2008)
Atty. File No.: 5550-47-CON-3)

Group Art Unit: 2611
Examiner: WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B
Confirmation No.: 3870

For: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN
A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

AMENDMENT AND RESPONSE

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Applicants submit this Amendment and Response to address the Office Action having a mailing date of October 15, 2009. Please credit any overpayment or charge any underpayment to Deposit Account No. 19-1970.

Please amend the above-identified patent application as follows:

Amendments to the Claims are shown in the listing of claims which begins on page 2 of this paper.

Remarks begin on page 4 of this paper.

Amendments to the Claims:

This listing of claims will replace all prior versions, and listings, of claims in the application:

Listing of Claims:

1-39. (Canceled)

40. (New) A method to randomize the phase characteristics of carriers for multicarrier communications comprising:

assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;

modulating, by a modulator, the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal;

determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier wherein the phase shift is determined independently of the QAM signal; and

combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier.

41. (New) The method of claim 40, wherein the phase shift is determined using a function of the carrier number.

42. (New) The method of claim 41, wherein the function of the carrier number comprises at least multiplying the carrier number by a predefined phase value.

43. (New) A multicarrier transceiver capable of randomizing the phase characteristics of carriers comprising:

a transmitter capable of assigning a carrier number to at least one carrier in a multicarrier symbol;

a modulator capable of modulating the at least one carrier with a QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) signal; and

a phase scrambler capable of determining a phase shift for the at least one carrier based on the carrier number assigned to the at least one carrier, wherein the phase shift is determined

independently of the QAM signal, and combining the phase shift with a phase characteristic of the at least one carrier.

44. (New) The transceiver of claim 43, wherein the phase shift is determined using a function of the carrier number.

45. (New) The transceiver of claim 44, wherein the function of the carrier number comprises at least multiplying the carrier number by a predefined phase value.

REMARKS

Applicants respectfully requests reconsideration of this application as amended.

By virtue of the cancellation of claims 1-39, Applicants respectfully submit the objections and rejections thereof are moot.

Regarding paragraph 1 of the Office Action, Applicants respectfully submit that the priority data for the subject application was properly included in an Application Data Sheet filed with the Application on October 22, 2008. Based on the submission of the Application Data Sheet, it is believed that no further action is required. However, the Examiner is respectfully requested to contact the undersigned should he believe anything further is needed.

By this amendment, new claims 40-45 have been added that are directed toward additional aspects of the invention. In that it is believe that the claims are clearly patentably distinguishable from the references of record, a Notice of Allowance is earnestly solicited.

Should the Examiner believe anything further is desirable in order to place the application in even better condition for allowance, the Examiner is encouraged to contact Applicants undersigned representative at the telephone number listed below.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge to deposit account number 19-1970 any fees under 37 CFR § 1.16 and 1.17 that may be required by this paper and to credit any overpayment to that Account. If any extension of time is required in connection with the filing of this paper and has not been separately requested, such extension is hereby petitioned.

Respectfully submitted,

SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

Date: 9 MAR '10

By: _____

Jason H. Vick
Reg. No. 45,285
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202
Telephone: 303-863-9700

Under the paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME UNDER 37 CFR 1.136(a) FY 2009 <i>(Fees pursuant to the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2005 (H.R. 4818).)</i>		Docket Number (Optional) 5550-47-CON-3	
Application Number 12/255,713		Filed October 22, 2008	
For System and Method for Scrambling the Phase of the Carriers in a Multicarrier Communications System			
Art Unit 2611		Examiner WILLIAMS, LAWRENCE B	
This is a request under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) to extend the period for filing a reply in the above identified application. The requested extension and fee are as follows (check time period desired and enter the appropriate fee below):			
		<u>Fee</u>	<u>Small Entity Fee</u>
<input type="checkbox"/>	One month (37 CFR 1.17(a)(1))	\$130	\$65 \$ _____
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Two months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(2))	\$490	\$245 \$ 490
<input type="checkbox"/>	Three months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(3))	\$1110	\$555 \$ _____
<input type="checkbox"/>	Four months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(4))	\$1730	\$865 \$ _____
<input type="checkbox"/>	Five months (37 CFR 1.17(a)(5))	\$2350	\$1175 \$ _____
<input type="checkbox"/> Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27.			
<input type="checkbox"/> A check in the amount of the fee is enclosed.			
<input type="checkbox"/> Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Director has already been authorized to charge fees in this application to a Deposit Account.			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Director is hereby authorized to charge any fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number <u>19-1970</u> .			
WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.			
I am the <input type="checkbox"/> applicant/inventor.			
<input type="checkbox"/> assignee of record of the entire interest. See 37 CFR 3.71. Statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b) is enclosed (Form PTO/SB/96).			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> attorney or agent of record. Registration Number <u>45,285</u>			
<input type="checkbox"/> attorney or agent under 37 CFR 1.34. Registration number if acting under 37 CFR 1.34 _____			
_____ Signature		_____ Date	
Jason H. Vick		8 Mar '10	
_____ Typed or printed name		_____ Telephone Number	
Jason H. Vick		303-863-9700	
NOTE: Signatures of all the inventors or assignees of record of the entire interest or their representative(s) are required. Submit multiple forms if more than one signature is required, see below.			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Total of <u>1</u> forms are submitted.			

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.136(a). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 5 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:	12255713			
Filing Date:	22-Oct-2008			
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM			
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes			
Filer:	Jason Vick/Joanne Vos			
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3			
Filed as Large Entity				
Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees				
Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Extension - 2 months with \$0 paid	1252	1	490	490

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				490

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	7175208
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Joanne Vos
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	09-MAR-2010
Filing Date:	22-OCT-2008
Time Stamp:	18:52:09
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$490
RAM confirmation Number	5502
Deposit Account	191970
Authorized User	

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)
 Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)
 Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		AMEND_01.pdf	169844 2a13c70b7193b2bd7f880acab8b012b11b281f2	yes	5

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description				
	Document Description	Start	End	
	Amendment/Req. Reconsideration-After Non-Final Reject	1	1	
	Claims	2	3	
	Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment	4	4	
	Extension of Time	5	5	

Warnings:

Information:

2	Fee Worksheet (PTO-875)	fee-info.pdf	30797 2f309d43fdd49223cca3e43db8c41554cfd45ee	no	2
---	-------------------------	--------------	--	----	---

Warnings:

Information:

Total Files Size (in bytes):			200641
-------------------------------------	--	--	--------

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875					Application or Docket Number 12/255,713	Filing Date 10/22/2008	<input type="checkbox"/> To be Mailed				
APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I					OTHER THAN						
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		SMALL ENTITY <input type="checkbox"/>		OR		SMALL ENTITY			
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)	OR	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> BASIC FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	330				
<input type="checkbox"/> SEARCH FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(k), (j), or (m))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A					
<input type="checkbox"/> EXAMINATION FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))</small>	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A					
TOTAL CLAIMS <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	minus 20 =	*	X \$ =			X \$ =					
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	minus 3 =	*	X \$ =			X \$ =					
<input type="checkbox"/> APPLICATION SIZE FEE <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$250 (\$125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).										
<input type="checkbox"/> MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>											
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.					TOTAL		TOTAL	330			
APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II					OTHER THAN						
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY		OR		SMALL ENTITY	
AMENDMENT	03/09/2010	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	* 6	Minus	** 20	= 0	X \$ =		OR	X \$52=	0	
	Independent <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	* 2	Minus	***3	= 0	X \$ =		OR	X \$220=	0	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>								OR		
	<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>								OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	0		
AMENDMENT		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total <small>(37 CFR 1.16(i))</small>	*	Minus	**	=	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =		
	Independent <small>(37 CFR 1.16(h))</small>	*	Minus	***	=	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee <small>(37 CFR 1.16(s))</small>								OR		
	<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM <small>(37 CFR 1.16(j))</small>								OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE			
* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.					Legal Instrument Examiner: /GLORIA TRAMMELL/						
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".											
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".											
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.											

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with columns: APPLICATION NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO., CONFIRMATION NO., EXAMINER, ART UNIT, PAPER NUMBER, NOTIFICATION DATE, DELIVERY MODE. Includes application details for 12/255,713 and 62574.

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

Notice of the Office communication was sent electronically on above-indicated "Notification Date" to the following e-mail address(es):

jvick@sheridanross.com

Office Action Summary	Application No. 12/255,713	Applicant(s) TZANNES, MARCOS C.	
	Examiner LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 3 MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

- 1) Responsive to communication(s) filed on 22 October 2008.
- 2a) This action is **FINAL**.
- 2b) This action is non-final.
- 3) Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

- 4) Claim(s) 1-20 is/are pending in the application.
 - 4a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.
- 5) Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.
- 6) Claim(s) 1-20 is/are rejected.
- 7) Claim(s) 20 is/are objected to.
- 8) Claim(s) _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

Application Papers

- 9) The specification is objected to by the Examiner.
- 10) The drawing(s) filed on 22 October 2008 is/are: a) accepted or b) objected to by the Examiner.
 - Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).
 - Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).
- 11) The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

- 12) Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
 - a) All b) Some * c) None of:
 - 1. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
 - 2. Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
 - 3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).
- * See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

- 1) Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
- 2) Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
- 3) Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date 10/22/2008; 11/25/2008.
- 4) Interview Summary (PTO-413)
Paper No(s)/Mail Date: _____.
- 5) Notice of Informal Patent Application
- 6) Other: _____.

DETAILED ACTION

Priority

1. If applicant desires to claim the benefit of a prior-filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, a specific reference to the prior-filed application in compliance with 37 CFR 1.78(a) **must be included in the first sentence(s) of the specification following the title** or in an application data sheet. For benefit claims under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c), the reference must include the relationship (i.e., continuation, divisional, or continuation-in-part) of the applications.

If the instant application is a utility or plant application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) on or after November 29, 2000, the specific reference must be submitted during the pendency of the application and within the later of four months from the actual filing date of the application or sixteen months from the filing date of the prior application. If the application is a utility or plant application which entered the national stage from an international application filed on or after November 29, 2000, after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371, the specific reference must be submitted during the pendency of the application and within the later of four months from the date on which the national stage commenced under 35 U.S.C. 371(b) or (f) or sixteen months from the filing date of the prior application. See 37 CFR 1.78(a)(2)(ii) and (a)(5)(ii). This time period is not extendable and a failure to submit the reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) and/or 120, where applicable, within this time period is considered a waiver of any benefit of such prior application(s) under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121 and 365(c). A benefit claim filed after the required time period may be accepted if it is accompanied by a grantable petition to accept an unintentionally delayed benefit claim under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121 and 365(c). The petition

must be accompanied by (1) the reference required by 35 U.S.C. 120 or 119(e) and 37 CFR 1.78(a)(2) or (a)(5) to the prior application (unless previously submitted), (2) a surcharge under 37 CFR 1.17(t), and (3) a statement that the entire delay between the date the claim was due under 37 CFR 1.78(a)(2) or (a)(5) and the date the claim was filed was unintentional. The Director may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional. The petition should be addressed to: Mail Stop Petition, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

If the reference to the prior application was previously submitted within the time period set forth in 37 CFR 1.78(a), but not in the first sentence(s) of the specification or an application data sheet (ADS) as required by 37 CFR 1.78(a) (e.g., if the reference was submitted in an oath or declaration or the application transmittal letter), and the information concerning the benefit claim was recognized by the Office as shown by its inclusion on the first filing receipt, the petition under 37 CFR 1.78(a) and the surcharge under 37 CFR 1.17(t) are not required. Applicant is still required to submit the reference in compliance with 37 CFR 1.78(a) by filing an amendment to the first sentence(s) of the specification or an ADS. See MPEP § 201.11.

Claim Objections

2. Claim 20 is objected to because of the following informalities: The phrase, “having a phase characteristic with the input bit stream” is ambiguous. The examiner assumes applicant meant, “having a phase characteristic associated with the input bit stream”. Appropriate correction is required.

Double Patenting

3. A rejection based on double patenting of the "same invention" type finds its support in the language of 35 U.S.C. 101 which states that "whoever invents or discovers any new and useful process ... may obtain a patent therefor ..." (Emphasis added). Thus, the term "same invention," in this context, means an invention drawn to identical subject matter. See *Miller v. Eagle Mfg. Co.*, 151 U.S. 186 (1894); *In re Oekert*, 245 F.2d 467, 114 USPQ 330 (CCPA 1957); and *In re Vogel*, 422 F.2d 438, 164 USPQ 619 (CCPA 1970).

A statutory type (35 U.S.C. 101) double patenting rejection can be overcome by canceling or amending the conflicting claims so they are no longer coextensive in scope. The filing of a terminal disclaimer cannot overcome a double patenting rejection based upon 35 U.S.C. 101.

4. Claims 1-5 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 101 as claiming the same invention as that of claims 1-5 of prior U.S. Patent No. 7,471,721 B2. This is a double patenting rejection.

Double Patenting

5. The nonstatutory double patenting rejection is based on a judicially created doctrine grounded in public policy (a policy reflected in the statute) so as to prevent the unjustified or improper timewise extension of the "right to exclude" granted by a patent and to prevent possible harassment by multiple assignees. A nonstatutory obviousness-type double patenting rejection is appropriate where the conflicting claims are not identical, but at least one examined application claim is not patentably distinct from the reference claim(s) because the examined application claim is either anticipated by, or would have been obvious over, the reference claim(s). See, e.g., *In re Berg*, 140 F.3d 1428, 46 USPQ2d 1226 (Fed. Cir. 1998); *In re Goodman*, 11 F.3d 1046, 29 USPQ2d 2010 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *In re Longi*, 759 F.2d 887, 225 USPQ 645 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re Van Ornum*, 686 F.2d 937, 214 USPQ 761 (CCPA 1982); *In re Vogel*, 422 F.2d 438, 164 USPQ 619 (CCPA 1970); and *In re Thorington*, 418 F.2d 528, 163 USPQ 644 (CCPA 1969).

A timely filed terminal disclaimer in compliance with 37 CFR 1.321(c) or 1.321(d) may be used to overcome an actual or provisional rejection based on a nonstatutory double patenting ground provided the conflicting application or patent either is shown to be commonly owned with this application, or claims an invention made as a result of activities undertaken within the scope of a joint research agreement.

Effective January 1, 1994, a registered attorney or agent of record may sign a terminal disclaimer. A terminal disclaimer signed by the assignee must fully comply with 37 CFR 3.73(b).

6. Claims 1-20 are rejected on the ground of nonstatutory obviousness-type double patenting as being unpatentable over claims 1-20 of U.S. Patent No. 7,292,627 B2. Although the conflicting claims are not identical, they are not patentably distinct from each other because the claims disclose the same invention.

Regarding claim 1, claim 1 of the instant application and claim 1 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2 both claim a method for scrambling the phase characteristics of carrier signals including the exact steps of association, computing and combining. Claim 1 of the instant application claims a multicarrier modulation system including a first and second transceiver. Claim 1 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2 does not explicitly disclose a system/second transceiver, but does disclose a multicarrier modulation transceiver. A second multicarrier modulation transceiver/system would be obvious since the claimed multicarrier modulation transceiver would not have a receiver or transmitter to communicate with without at least a second transceiver for communication. Thus claim 1 of the instant application is not patentably distinct from claim 1 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2.

Regarding claims 2 -19, the limitations of claims 2-19 of the instant application are disclosed in claims 2-19 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2.

Regarding claim 20, claim 20 of the instant application and claim 20 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2 both claim a method for scrambling the phase characteristics of carrier signals including the exact steps of association, computing and combining. Claim 20 of the instant application claims a multicarrier modulation system including a first and second transceiver. Claim 20 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2 does not explicitly disclose a second transceiver, but does disclose a multicarrier modulation transceiver. A second multicarrier modulation transceiver

would be obvious since the claimed multicarrier modulation transceiver would not have a receiver or transmitter to communicate with without at least a second transceiver for communication. Thus claim 1 of the instant application is not patentably distinct from claim 1 of US Patent 7,292,627 B2.

Conclusion

7. The prior art made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure.

a.) Tzannes discloses System And Method For Scrambling The Phase of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System in 6,961,369 B1.

b.) Goldenberg et al. discloses Dual Speed Full Duplex Data Transmission in US Patent 4,069,392.

c.) Humphrey discloses applying a predetermined phase shift to symbols transmitted on at least one of the available carrier groups, to mitigate peaks in transmitted instantaneous signal power across all carriers in US Patent 6,967,997 B2.

8. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Lawrence B Williams whose telephone number is 571-272-3037. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday-Friday (8:00-6:00).

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Ghayour Mohammad can be reached on 571-272-3021. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Art Unit: 2611

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see <http://pair-direct.uspto.gov>. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free).

/Tsfaldet Bocure/
Primary Examiner, Art Unit 2611

lbw
October 13, 2009

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. 12/255,713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.	
	Examiner LAWRENCE B. WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
*	A US-6,961,369 B1	11-2005	Tzannes, Marcos C.	375/220
*	B US-4,069,392	01-1978	Goldenberg et al.	370/295
*	C US-6,967,997 B2	11-2005	Humphrey, Les	375/222
	D US-			
	E US-			
	F US-			
	G US-			
	H US-			
	I US-			
	J US-			
	K US-			
	L US-			
	M US-			


FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N				
	O				
	P				
	Q				
	R				
	S				
	T				

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)				
	U				
	V				
	W				
	X				

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.


Search Notes 	Application/Control No. 12255713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.
	Examiner LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611

SEARCHED			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
375	219, 222, 260, 267, 295, 362	10/5/2009	LW
370	57, 69.1, 281, 295, 330, 343, 436, 478, 480-481		

SEARCH NOTES			
Search Notes	Date	Examiner	
EAST, NPL, Inventor	10/5/2009	LW	

INTERFERENCE SEARCH			
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner

--	--

Index of Claims 	Application/Control No. 12255713	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination TZANNES, MARCOS C.
	Examiner LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS	Art Unit 2611

✓	Rejected	-	Cancelled	N	Non-Elected	A	Appeal
=	Allowed	÷	Restricted	I	Interference	O	Objected

<input type="checkbox"/> Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant			<input type="checkbox"/> CPA			<input type="checkbox"/> T.D.			<input type="checkbox"/> R.1.47		
CLAIM			DATE								
Final	Original	10/05/2009									
	1	✓									
	2	✓									
	3	✓									
	4	✓									
	5	✓									
	6	✓									
	7	✓									
	8	✓									
	9	✓									
	10	✓									
	11	✓									
	12	✓									
	13	✓									
	14	✓									
	15	✓									
	16	✓									
	17	✓									
	18	✓									
	19	✓									
	20	✓									



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
 United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
 P.O. Box 1450
 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
 www.uspto.gov

BIB DATA SHEET

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING or 371(c) DATE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	
12/255,713	10/22/2008	375	2611	5550-47-CON-3	
APPLICANTS Marcos C. Tzannes, Orinda, CA;					
** CONTINUING DATA ***** This application is a CON of 11/863,581 09/28/2007 PAT 7,471,721 which is a CON of 11/211,535 08/26/2005 PAT 7,292,627 which is a CON of 09/710,310 11/09/2000 PAT 6,961,369 which claims benefit of 60/164,134 11/09/1999					
** FOREIGN APPLICATIONS *****					
** IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED ** 11/05/2008					
Foreign Priority claimed <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No 35 USC 119(a-d) conditions met <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No Verified and /LAWRENCE B WILLIAMS/ Acknowledged Examiner's Signature	<input type="checkbox"/> Met after Allowance Initials	STATE OR COUNTRY CA	SHEETS DRAWINGS 2	TOTAL CLAIMS 20	INDEPENDENT CLAIMS 2
ADDRESS Jason H. Vick Sheridan Ross, PC Suite # 1200 1560 Broadway Denver, CO 80202 UNITED STATES					
TITLE SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM					
FILING FEE RECEIVED 1090	FEES: Authority has been given in Paper No. _____ to charge/credit DEPOSIT ACCOUNT No. _____ for following:	<input type="checkbox"/> All Fees <input type="checkbox"/> 1.16 Fees (Filing) <input type="checkbox"/> 1.17 Fees (Processing Ext. of time) <input type="checkbox"/> 1.18 Fees (Issue) <input type="checkbox"/> Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Credit			

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	Not yet assigned
				Filing Date	Herewith
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	Not yet assigned
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
				Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3
Sheet	1	of	3		

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number Number-kind Code ^{2 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	
/L.W./	1	3,955,141	05/01/76	Lyon et al.		
	2	4,985,900	01/01/91	Rhind et al.		
	3	5,682,376	10/28/97	Hayashino et al.		
	4	5,748,677	05/01/98	Kumar		
	5	6,256,355	07/03/01	Sakoda et al.		
	6	6,507,585	01/01/03	Dobson		
	7	6,590,860	07/08/03	Sakoda et al.		
	8	6,704,317	03/01/04	Dobson		
	9	6,961,369	11/01/05	Tzannes		
	10	7,292,627	01/05/06	Tzannes		
	11	2005/0141410	06/30/05	Zhang et al.		
	12	2006/0092902	05/04/06	Schmidt		
	13	2006/0140288	06/29/06	Holden		
	14	2008/0069253		Tzannes		
/L.W./	15	11/860080		Tzannes (09-24-2007)		

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document Country Code ³ ; Number ⁴ ; Kind Code ^{5 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
/L.W./	16	EP 0584534	03/02/94	ALCATEL ITALIA		
/L.W./	17	EP 0719004	06/26/96	MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC IND CO LTD		
/L.W./	18	GB 2330491	04/21/99	BRITISH BROADCASTING CORP		

Examiner Signature	/Lawrence Williams/	Date Considered	10/05/2009
--------------------	---------------------	-----------------	------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	Not yet assigned
				Filing Date	Herewith
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	Not yet assigned
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
				Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3
Sheet	2	of	3		

/L.W./	19	JP H10(1998)-084329	03/31/98	NIPPON HOSO KYOKAI		(Translated Abstract and partial translation)
/L.W./	20	JP H08(1996)-321820	12/03/96	MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC IND CO LTD		(Translated Abstract)
/L.W./	21	WO 98/32065	07/23/98	FORTRESS TECHNOLOGIES INC		
/L.W./	22	WO 99/22463	05/06/99	MOTOROLA INC		
/L.W./	23	WO 99/29078	06/10/99	TELIA AB		

OTHER ART (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)		
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	
/L.W./	24	Bauml R. W. et al.: "Reducing The Peak-To-Average Power Ratio Of Multicarrier Modulation By Selected Mapping" Electronics Letters, GB, IEE Stevenage, vol. 32, No. 22, Oct. 24, 1996, pp. 2056-2057, XP000643915 ISSN: 0013-5194
/L.W./	25	Copy of Annex to Form PCT/ISA/206 for PCT/US00/30958, Mar. 23, 2001 (5550-47-PCT)
/L.W./	26	International Search Report for International (PCT) Patent Application No. PCT/US00/30958, completed June 12, 2001 (5550-47-PCT)
/L.W./	27	International Preliminary Examination Report for International (PCT) Patent Application No. PCT/US00/30958, completed March 4, 2002 (5550-47-PCT)
/L.W./	28	Notification of Reasons for Refusal (including translation) for Japanese Patent Application No. 2001-537217, date of dispatch, March 3, 2008 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-PJP)
/L.W./	29	Notice of Preliminary Rejection for Korean Patent Application No. 7005830/2002 dated November 22, 2006 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-PKR)
/L.W./	30	Official Action for U.S. Patent Application No. 11/863,581, mailed February 6, 2008 (Attorney's File No. 5550-47-CON-2)

Examiner Signature	/Lawrence Williams/	Date Considered	10/05/2009
-----------------------	---------------------	--------------------	------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	Not yet assigned
				Filing Date	Herewith
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	Not yet assigned
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
Sheet	3	of	3	Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3

/L.W./	31	Notice of Allowance for U.S. Patent Application No. 11/863,581, mailed October 8, 2008 (Attorney's File No. 5550-47-CON-2)
--------	----	---

Examiner Signature	/Lawrence Williams/	Date Considered	10/05/2009
-----------------------	---------------------	--------------------	------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	12/255,713
				Filing Date	10-22-2008
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	2611
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
Sheet	1	of	1	Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number Number-kind Code ^{2 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document Country Code ³ ; Number ⁴ ; Kind Code ^{5 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶

OTHER ART (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)		
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	
/L.W./	1	Decision of Refusal (including translation) for Japanese Patent Application No. 2001-537217, date of dispatch, November 4, 2008 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-PJP)

Examiner Signature	/Lawrence Williams/	Date Considered	10/05/2009
--------------------	---------------------	-----------------	------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 4 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER (12/255,713), FILING OR 371(C) DATE (10/22/2008), FIRST NAMED APPLICANT (Marcos C. Tzannes), ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE (5550-47-CON-3)

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

PUBLICATION NOTICE



62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Title:SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

Publication No.US-2009-0110105-A1

Publication Date:04/30/2009

NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publicly available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently http://www.uspto.gov/patft/.

The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Office of Public Records. The Office of Public Records can be reached by telephone at (703) 308-9726 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (703) 305-8759, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Office of Public Records, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently http://pair.uspto.gov/. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197.

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
12/255,713	10/22/2008	Marcos C. Tzannes	5550-47-CON-3

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

POA ACCEPTANCE LETTER



OC000000034133965

62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 01/23/2009

NOTICE OF ACCEPTANCE OF POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 01/13/2009.

The Power of Attorney in this application is accepted. Correspondence in this application will be mailed to the above address as provided by 37 CFR 1.33.

/tpnguyen/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 7 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING or 371(c) DATE, GRP ART UNIT, FIL FEE REC'D, ATTY. DOCKET NO, TOT CLAIMS, IND CLAIMS. Values: 12/255,713, 10/22/2008, 2611, 1090, 5550-47-CON-3, 20, 2

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

UPDATED FILING RECEIPT



62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 01/23/2009

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections

Applicant(s)

Marcos C. Tzannes, Orinda, CA;

Assignment For Published Patent Application

Aware, Inc., Bedford, MA

Power of Attorney: The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 62574

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 11/863,581 09/28/2007 PAT 7,471,721
which is a CON of 11/211,535 08/26/2005 PAT 7,292,627
which is a CON of 09/710,310 11/09/2000 PAT 6,961,369
which claims benefit of 60/164,134 11/09/1999

Foreign Applications

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 11/05/2008

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is US 12/255,713

Projected Publication Date: 04/30/2009

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A
MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

Preliminary Class

375

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4158).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where

the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re the Application of:) Group Art Unit: 2611
)
TZANNES) Confirmation No.: 3870
)
Appl. No.: 12/255,713)
)
Filed: 10/22/2008) RESPONSE TO NOTICE TO FILE
) CORRECTED APPLICATION PAPERS
)
Atty. File No.: 5550-47-CON-3)
)
For: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR)
SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE)
CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER)
COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM)

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

In response to the Notice to File Corrected Application Papers mailed November 14, 2008, in connection with the above-identified application, enclosed for filing is a marked-up copy of the specification and a clean copy of the specification. The substitute specification contains no new matter in accordance with 37 CFR § 1.125(b). Please charge any underpayment or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 19-1970.

Respectfully submitted,

SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

By: _____
Jason H. Vick
Registration No. 45,285
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202-5141
(303) 863-9700

Date: 13 Jan '08

modulation of those bits produces a DMT transmission signal with a Gaussian probability distribution.

With an appropriate allocation of transmit power levels to the carriers or sub-channels, such a system provides a desirable performance. Further, generating a transmission signal with a Gaussian probability distribution is important in order to transmit a transmission signal with a low peak-to-average ratio (PAR), or peak-to-average power ratio. The PAR of a transmission signal is the ratio of the instantaneous peak value (i.e., maximum magnitude) of a signal parameter (e.g., voltage, current, phase, frequency, power) to the time-averaged value of the signal parameter. In DMT systems, the PAR of the transmitted signal is determined by the probability of the random transmission signal reaching a certain peak voltage during the time interval required for a certain number of symbols. An example of the PAR of a transmission signal transmitted from a DMT transmitter is 14.5 dB, which is equivalent to having a $1E-7$ probability of clipping. The PAR of a transmission signal transmitted and received in a DMT communication system is an important consideration in the design of the DMT communication system because the PAR of a signal affects the communication system's total power consumption and component linearity requirements of the system.

If the phase of the modulated carriers is not random, then the PAR can increase greatly. Examples of cases where the phases of the modulated carrier signals are not random are when bit scramblers are not used, multiple carrier signals are used to modulate the same input data bits, and the constellation maps, which are mappings of input data bits to the phase of a carrier signal, used for modulation are not random enough (i.e., a zero value for a data bit corresponds to a 90 degree phase characteristic of the DMT carrier signal and a one value for a data bit corresponds to a -90 degree phase characteristic of the DMT carrier signal). An increased PAR can result in a system with high power consumption and/or with high probability of clipping the transmission signal. Thus, there remains a need for a system and method that can effectively scramble the phase of the modulated carrier signals in order to provide a low PAR for the transmission signal.

Summary of the Invention

The present invention features a system and method that scrambles the phase characteristics of the modulated carrier signals in a transmission signal. In one aspect, a value is associated with each carrier signal. A phase shift is computed for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. The phase shift computed for each carrier signal is combined with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier signals.

In one embodiment, the input bit stream is modulated onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristic to produce a transmission signal with a reduced peak-to-average power ratio (PAR). The value is derived from a predetermined parameter, such as a random number generator, a carrier number, a DMT symbol count, a superframe count, and a hyperframe count. In another embodiment, a predetermined transmission signal is transmitted when the amplitude of the transmission signal exceeds a certain level.

In another aspect, the invention features a method wherein a value is associated with each carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. A phase shift for each carrier signal is computed based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The transmission signal is demodulated using the phase shift computed for each carrier signal.

In another aspect, the invention features a system comprising a phase scrambler that computes a phase shift for each carrier signal based on a value associated with that carrier signal. The phase scrambler also combines the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal to substantially scramble the phase characteristic of the carrier signals. In one embodiment, a modulator, in communication with the phase scrambler, modulates bits of an input signal onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristics to produce a transmission signal with a reduced PAR.

30

Description of the Drawings

The invention is pointed out with particularity in the appended claims. The advantages of the invention described above, as well as further advantages of the invention, may be better understood by reference to the following description taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of an embodiment of a digital subscriber line communications system including a DMT (discrete multitone modulation) transceiver, in communication with a remote transceiver, having a phase scrambler for substantially scrambling the phase characteristics of carrier signals; and

FIG. 2 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of a process for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals in a transmission signal.

Detailed Description

FIG. 1 shows a digital subscriber line (DSL) communication system 2 including a discrete multitone (DMT) transceiver 10 in communication with a remote transceiver 14 over a communication channel 18 using a transmission signal 38 having a plurality of carrier signals. The DMT transceiver 10 includes a DMT transmitter 22 and a DMT receiver 26. The remote transceiver 14 includes a transmitter 30 and a receiver 34. Although described with respect to discrete multitone modulation, the principles of the invention apply also to other types of multicarrier modulation, such as, but not limited to, orthogonally multiplexed quadrature amplitude modulation (OQAM), discrete wavelet multitone (DWMT) modulation, and orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM).

The communication channel 18 provides a downstream transmission path from the DMT transmitter 22 to the remote receiver 34, and an upstream transmission path from the remote transmitter 30 to the DMT receiver 26. In one embodiment, the communication channel 18 is a pair of twisted wires of a telephone subscriber line. In other embodiments, the communication channel 18 can be a fiber optic wire, a quad cable, consisting of two pairs of twisted wires, or a quad cable that is one of a star quad cable, a Dieselhorst-Martin quad cable, and the like. In a wireless communication system wherein the transceivers 10, 14 are wireless modems, the communication channel 18 is the air through which the transmission signal 38 travels between the transceivers 10, 14.

By way of example, the DMT transmitter 22 shown in FIG. 1 includes a quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) encoder 42, a modulator 46, a bit allocation table (BAT) 44, and a phase scrambler 66. The DMT transmitter 22 can also include a bit scrambler 74, as described further below. The remote transmitter 30 of the remote transceiver 14 comprises 5 equivalent components as the DMT transmitter 22. Although this embodiment specifies a detailed description of the DMT transmitter 22, the inventive concepts apply also to the receivers 34, 36 which have similar components to that of the DMT transmitter 22, but perform inverse functions in a reverse order.

The QAM encoder 42 has a single input for receiving an input serial data bit stream 10 54 and multiple parallel outputs to transmit QAM symbols 58 generated by the QAM encoder 42 from the bit stream 54. In general, the QAM encoder 42 maps the input serial bit-stream 54 in the time domain into parallel QAM symbols 58 in the frequency domain. In particular, the QAM encoder 42 maps the input serial data bit stream 54 into N parallel quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) constellation points 58, or QAM symbols 58, 15 where N represents the number of carrier signals generated by the modulator 46. The BAT 44 is in communication with the QAM encoder 42 to specify the number of bits carried by each carrier signal. The QAM symbols 58 represent the amplitude and the phase characteristic of each carrier signal.

The modulator 46 provides functionality associated with the DMT modulation and 20 transforms the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70 each comprised of a plurality of time-domain samples. The modulator 46 modulates each carrier signal with a different QAM symbol 58. As a result of this modulation, carrier signals have phase and amplitude characteristics based on the QAM symbol 58 and therefore based on the input-bit stream 54. In particular, the modulator 46 uses an inverse fast Fourier transform (IFFT) to change the 25 QAM symbols 58 into a transmission signal 38 comprised of a sequence of DMT symbols 70. The modulator 46 changes the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70 through modulation of the carrier signals. In another embodiment, the modulator 46 uses the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT) to change the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70. In one embodiment, a pilot tone is included in the transmission signal 38 to provide a reference 30 signal for coherent demodulation of the carrier signals in the remote receiver 34 during reception of the transmission signal 38.

The modulator 46 also includes a phase scrambler 66 that combines a phase shift computed for each QAM-modulated carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal. Combining phase shifts with phase characteristics, in accordance with the principles of the invention, substantially scrambles the phase characteristics of the carrier signals in the transmission signal 38. By scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals, the resulting transmission signal 38 has a substantially minimized peak-to-average (PAR) power ratio. The phase scrambler 66 can be part of or external to the modulator 46. Other embodiments of the phase scrambler 66 include, but are not limited to, a software program that is stored in local memory and is executed on the modulator 46, a digital signal processor (DSP) capable of performing mathematical functions and algorithms, and the like. The remote receiver 34 similarly includes a phase scrambler 66' for use when demodulating carrier signals that have had their phase characteristics adjusted by the phase scrambler 66 of the DMT transceiver 10.

To compute a phase shift for each carrier signal, the phase scrambler 66 associates one or more values with that carrier signal. The phase scrambler 66 determines each value for a carrier signal independently of the QAM symbols 58, and, therefore, independently of the bit value(s) modulated onto the carrier signal. The actual value(s) that the phase scrambler 66 associates with each carrier signal can be derived from one or more predefined parameters, such as a pseudo-random number generator (pseudo-RNG), a DMT carrier number, a DMT symbol count, a DMT superframe count, a DMT hyperframe count, and the like, as described in more detail below. Irrespective of the technique used to produce each value, the same technique is used by the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 so that the value associated with a given carrier signal is known at both ends of the communication channel 18.

The phase scrambler 66 then solves a predetermined equation to compute a phase shift for the carrier signal, using the value(s) associated with that carrier signal as input that effects the output of the equation. Any equation suitable for computing phase shifts can be used to compute the phase shifts. When the equation is independent of the bit values of the input serial bit stream 54, the computed phase shifts are also independent of such bit values.

30

In one embodiment (shown in phantom), the DMT transmitter 22 includes a bit scrambler 74, which receives the input serial bit stream 54 and outputs data bits 76 that are substantially scrambled. The substantially scrambled bits 76 are then passed to the QAM encoder 42. When the bit scrambler 74 is included in the DMT transmitter 22, the operation of the phase scrambler 66 further assures that the transmission signal 38 has a Gaussian probability distribution and, therefore, a substantially minimized PAR.

FIG. 2 shows embodiments of a process used by the DMT transmitter 22 for adjusting the phase characteristic of each carrier signal and combining these carrier signals to produce the transmission signal 38. The DMT transmitter 22 generates (step 100) a value that is associated with a carrier signal. Because the value is being used to alter the phase characteristics of the carrier signal, both the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 must recognize the value as being associated with the carrier signal. Either the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 independently derive the associated value, or one informs the other of the associated value. For example, in one embodiment the DMT transmitter 22 can derive the value from a pseudo-RNG and then transmit the generated value to the remote receiver 34. In another embodiment, the remote receiver 34 similarly derives the value from the same pseudo-RNG and the same seed as used by the transmitter (i.e., the transmitter pseudo-RNG produces the same series of random numbers as the receiver pseudo-RNG).

As another example, the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 can each maintain a symbol counter for counting DMT symbols. The DMT transmitter 22 increments its symbol counter upon transmitting a DMT symbol; the remote receiver 34 upon receipt. Thus, when the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 both use the symbol count as a value for computing phase shifts, both the DMT transmitter 22 and remote receiver 34 "know" that the value is associated with a particular DMT symbol and with each carrier signal of that DMT symbol.

Values can also be derived from other types of predefined parameters. For example, if the predefined parameter is the DMT carrier number, then the value associated with a particular carrier signal is the carrier number of that signal within the DMT symbol. The number of a carrier signal represents the location of the frequency of the carrier signal relative to the frequency of other carrier signals within a DMT symbol. For example, in one

embodiment the DSL communication system 2 provides 256 carrier signals, each separated by a frequency of 4.3125 kHz and spanning the frequency bandwidth from 0 kHz to 1104 kHz. The DMT transmitter 22 numbers the carrier signals from 0 to 255. Therefore, "DMT carrier number 50" represents the 51st DMT carrier signal which is located at the frequency of 215.625 kHz (i.e., 51×4.3125 kHz).

Again, the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 can know the value that is associated with the carrier signal because both the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 use the same predefined parameter (here, the DMT carrier number) to make the value-carrier signal association. In other embodiments (as exemplified above with the transmitter pseudo-RNG), the DMT transmitter 22 can transmit the value to the remote receiver 34 (or vice versa) over the communication channel 18.

In other embodiments, other predefined parameters can be used in conjunction with the symbol count. One example of such a predefined parameter is the superframe count that increments by one every 69 DMT symbols. One exemplary implementation that achieves the superframe counter is to perform a modulo 68 operation on the symbol count. As another example, the DMT transmitter 22 can maintain a hyperframe counter for counting hyperframes. An exemplary implementation of the hyperframe count is to perform a modulo 255 operation on the superframe count. Thus, the hyperframe count increments by one each time the superframe count reaches 255.

Accordingly, it is seen that some predefined parameters produce values that vary from carrier signal to carrier signal. For example, when the predefined parameter is the DMT carrier number, values vary based on the frequency of the carrier signal. As another example, the pseudo-RNG generates a new random value for each carrier signal.

Other predefined parameters produce values that vary from DMT symbol 70 to DMT symbol 70. For example, when the predefined parameter is the symbol count, the superframe count, or hyperframe count, values vary based on the numerical position of the DMT symbol 70 within a sequence of symbols, superframes, or hyperframes. Predefined parameters such as the pseudo-RNG, symbol count, superframe count, and superframe can also be understood to be parameters that vary values over time. Any one or combination of the predefined parameters can provide values for input to the equation that computes a phase shift for a given carrier signal.

In one embodiment, the phase scrambling is used to avoid clipping of the transmission signal 38 on a DMT symbol 70 by DMT symbol 70 basis. In this embodiment, the DMT transmitter 22 uses a value based on a predefined parameter that varies over time, such as the symbol count, to compute the phase shift. It is to be understood that other types of predefined parameters that vary the values associated with carrier signals can be used to practice the principles of the invention. As described above, the transceivers 10, 14 may communicate (step 110) the values to synchronize their use in modulating and demodulating the carrier signals.

The DMT transmitter 22 then computes (step 115) the phase shift that is used to adjust the phase characteristic of each carrier signal. The amount of the phase shift combined with the phase characteristic of each QAM-modulated carrier signal depends upon the equation used and the one or more values associated with that carrier signal.

The DMT transmitter 22 then combines (step 120) the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal. By scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals, the phase scrambler 66 reduces (with respect to unscrambled phase characteristics) the combined PAR of the plurality of carrier signals and, consequently, the transmission signal 38. The following three phase shifting examples, PS #1-PS #3, illustrate methods used by the phase scrambler 66 to combine a computed phase shift to the phase characteristic of each carrier signal.

20 **Phase Shifting Example #1**

Phase shifting example #1 (PS #1) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $N \times \frac{\pi}{3}$ modulo (mod) 2π . In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 50 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $50 \times \frac{\pi}{3} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{2}{3}\pi$.

25 The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 51 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $51 \times \frac{\pi}{3} \pmod{2\pi} = \pi$. The carrier signal with the carrier number N equal to 0 has no phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal.

Phase Shifting Example #2

Phase shifting example #2 (PS #2) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(N + M) \times \frac{\pi}{4}$, mod 2π , where M is the symbol count. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 50 on DMT symbol count M equal to 8 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $(50 + 8) \times \frac{\pi}{4} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{\pi}{2}$. The carrier signal with the same carrier number N equal to 50 on the next DMT symbol count M equal to 9 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $(50 + 9) \times \frac{\pi}{4} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{3\pi}{4}$.

10 **Phase Shifting Example #3**

Phase shifting example #3 (PS #3) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(X_N) \times \frac{\pi}{6}$, mod 2π , where X_N is an array of N pseudo-random numbers. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 5 and X_N equal to [3, 8, 1, 4, 9, 5, . . .] has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal that is equal to

$$(9) \times \frac{\pi}{6} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{\pi}{3} \quad (9) \times \frac{\pi}{6} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{3\pi}{2} \quad \text{-- (Note that 9 is the 5th value in } X_N \text{.)}$$

The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 6 has a phase shift added to the phase

$$(5) \times \frac{\pi}{6} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{5\pi}{6} \quad (5) \times \frac{\pi}{6} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{5\pi}{6}$$

It is to be understood that additional and/or different phase shifting techniques can be used by the phase scrambler 66, and that PS #1, #2, and #3 are merely illustrative examples of the principles of the invention. The DMT transmitter 22 then combines (step 130) the carrier signals to form the transmission signal 38. If the transmission signal is not clipped, as described below, the DMT transmitter 22 consequently transmits (step 160) the transmission signal 38 to the remote receiver 34.

25

Clipping of Transmission Signals

A transmission signal 38 that has high peak values of voltage (i.e., a high PAR) can induce non-linear distortion in the DMT transmitter 22 and the communication channel 18.

5 One form of this non-linear distortion of the transmission signal 38 that may occur is the limitation of the amplitude of the transmission signal 38 (i.e., clipping). For example, a particular DMT symbol 70 clips in the time domain when one or more time domain samples in that DMT symbol 70 are larger than the maximum allowed digital value for the DMT symbols 70. In multicarrier communication systems when clipping occurs, the transmission
10 signal 38 does not accurately represent the input serial data bit signal 54.

In one embodiment, the DSL communication system 2 avoids the clipping of the transmission signal 38 on a DMT symbol 70 by DMT symbol 70 basis. The DMT transmitter 22 detects (step 140) the clipping of the transmission signal 38. If a particular DMT symbol 70 clips in the time domain to produce a clipped transmission signal 38, the DMT transmitter
15 22 substitutes (step 150) a predefined transmission signal 78 for the clipped transmission signal 38.

The predefined transmission signal 78 has the same duration as a DMT symbol 70 (e.g., 250 ms) in order to maintain symbol timing between the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34. The predefined transmission signal 78 is not based on (i.e., independent
20 of) the modulated input data bit stream 54; it is a bit value pattern that is recognized by the remote receiver 34 as a substituted signal. In one embodiment, the predefined transmission signal 78 is a known pseudo-random sequence pattern that is easily detected by the remote receiver 34. In another embodiment, the predefined transmission signal 78 is an "all zeros" signal, which is a zero voltage signal produced at the DMT transmitter 22 output (i.e., zero
25 volts modulated on all the carrier signals). In addition to easy detection by the remote receiver 34, the zero voltage signal reduces the power consumption of the DMT transmitter 22 when delivered by the DMT transmitter 22. Further, a pilot tone is included in the predefined transmission signal 78 to provide a reference signal for coherent demodulation of the carrier signals in the remote receiver 34 during reception of the predefined transmission
30 signal 78.

After the remote receiver 34 receives the transmission signal 38, the remote receiver 34 determines if the transmission signal 38 is equivalent to the predefined transmission signal 78. In one embodiment, when the remote receiver 34 identifies the predefined transmission signal 78, the remote receiver 34 ignores (i.e., discards) the predefined transmission signal 78.

Following the transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78, the phase scrambler 66 shifts (step 120) the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signals (based on one of the predefined parameters that varies over time). For example, consider that a set of QAM symbols 58 produces a DMT symbol 70 comprising a plurality of time domain samples, and that one of the time domain samples is larger than the maximum allowed digital value for the DMT symbol 70. Therefore, because the transmission signal 38 would be clipped when sent to the remote receiver 34, the DMT transmitter 22 sends the predefined transmission signal 78 instead.

After transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78, the DMT transmitter 22 again attempts to send the same bit values that produced the clipped transmission signal 38 in a subsequent DMT symbol 70'. Because the generation of phase shifts in this embodiment is based on values that vary over time, the phase shifts computed for the subsequent DMT symbol 70' are different than those that were previously computed for the DMT symbol 70 with the clipped time domain sample. These different phase shifts are combined to the phase characteristics of the modulated carrier signals to produce carrier signals of the subsequent DMT symbol 70' with different phase characteristics than the carrier signals of the DMT symbol 70 with the clipped time domain sample.

DMT communication systems 2 infrequently produce transmission signals 38 that clip (e.g., approximately one clip every 10^7 time domain samples 70). However, if the subsequent DMT symbol 70' includes a time domain sample that clips, then the predefined transmission signal 78 is again transmitted (step 150) to the remote receiver 34 instead of the clipped transmission signal 38. The clipping time domain sample may be on the same or on a different carrier signal than the previously clipped DMT symbol 70. The DMT transmitter 22 repeats the transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78 until the DMT transmitter 22 produces a subsequent DMT symbol 70' that is not clipped. When the DMT transmitter 22 produces a DMT symbol 70' that is not clipped, the DTM transmitter 22 transmits (step 160)

the transmission signal 38 to the remote receiver 34. The probability of a DMT symbol 70 producing a transmission signal 38 that clips in the time domain depends on the PAR of the transmission signal 38.

For example, the following phase shifting example, PST #4, illustrates the method used by the phase scrambler 66 to combine a different phase shift to the phase characteristic of each carrier signal to avoid the clipping of the transmission signal 38.

Phase Shifting Example #4

Phase shifting example #4 (PS #4) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $\frac{\pi}{3} \times (M + N)$, mod 2π , where M is the DMT symbol count. In this example, if the DMT symbol 70 clips when the DMT symbol count M equals 5, the predefined transmission signal 78 is transmitted instead of the current clipped transmission signal 38. On the following DMT symbol period, the DMT count M equals 6, thereby causing a different set of time domain samples to be generated for the subsequent DMT symbol 70', although the QAM symbols 58 used to produce both DMT symbols 70, 70' are the same.

If this different set of time domain samples (and consequently the transmission signal 38) is not clipped, the DMT transmitter 22 sends the transmission signal 38. If one of the time domain samples in the different set of time domain samples 70 (and consequently the transmission signal 38) is clipped, then the DMT transmitter 22 sends the predefined transmission signal 78 again. The process continues until a DMT symbol 70 is produced without a time domain sample 70 that is clipped. In one embodiment, the transmitter 22 stops attempting to produce a non-clipped DMT symbol 70' for the particular set of QAM symbols 58 after generating a predetermined number of clipped DMT symbols 70'. At that moment, the transmitter 22 can transmit the most recently produced clipped DMT symbol 70' or the predetermined transmission signal 78.

The PAR of the DSL communication system 2 is reduced because the predefined transmission signal 78 is sent instead of the transmission signal 38 when the DMT symbol 70 clips. For example, a DMT communication system 2 that normally has a clipping probability of 10^{-7} for the time domain transmission signal 38 can therefore operate with a 10^{-5} probability of clipping and a lower PAR equal to 12.8 dB (as compared to 14.5 dB). When

operating at a 10^{-5} probability of clipping, assuming a DMT symbol 70 has 512 time-domain samples 70, the DMT transmitter 22 experiences one clipped DMT symbol 70 out of every $\frac{10^5}{512}$, or 195 DMT symbols 70. This results in the predefined (non-data carrying) transmission signal 78 being transmitted, on average, once every 195 DMT symbols.

- 5 Although increasing the probability of clipping to 10^{-5} results in approximately a 0.5% (1/195) decrease in throughput, the PAR of the transmission signal 38 is reduced by 1.7 dB, which reduces transmitter complexity in the form of power consumption and component linearity.

- 10 While the invention has been shown and described with reference to specific preferred embodiments, it should be understood by those skilled in the art that various changes in form and detail may be made therein without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the following claims. For example, although the specification uses DSL to describe the invention, it is to be understood that various form of DSL can be used, e.g., ADSL, VDSL, SDSL, HDSL, HDSL2, or SHDSL. It is also to be understood that
- 15 the principles of the invention apply to various types of applications transported over DSL systems (e.g., telecommuting, video conferencing, high speed Internet access, video-on demand).

Abstract

A system and method that scrambles the phase characteristic of a carrier signal are described. The scrambling of the phase characteristic of each carrier signal includes associating a value with each carrier signal and computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. The phase shift computed for each carrier signal is combined with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristic of the carrier signals. Bits of an input signal are modulated onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristic to produce a transmission signal with a reduced PAR.

A System and Method for Scrambling the Phase of the Carriers in a Multicarrier Communications System

Related Application

5 This application claims the benefit of the filing date of copending U.S. Provisional Application, Serial No. 60/164,134, filed November 9, 1999, entitled "A Method For Randomizing The Phase Of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System To Reduce The Peak To Average Power Ratio Of The Transmitted Signal," the entirety of which provisional application is incorporated by reference herein.

Field of the Invention

10 This invention relates to communications systems using multicarrier modulation. More particularly, the invention relates to multicarrier communications systems that lower the peak-to-average power ratio (PAR) of transmitted signals.

Background of the Invention

15 In a conventional multicarrier communications system, transmitters communicate over a communication channel using multicarrier modulation or Discrete Multitone Modulation (DMT). Carrier signals (carriers) or sub-channels spaced within a usable frequency band of the communication channel are modulated at a symbol (i.e., block) transmission rate of the system. An input signal, which includes input data bits, is sent to a
20 DMT transmitter, such as a DMT modem. The DMT transmitter typically modulates the phase characteristic, or phase, and amplitude of the carrier signals using an Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT) to generate a time domain signal, or transmission signal, that represents the input signal. The DMT transmitter transmits the transmission signal, which is a linear combination of the multiple carriers, to a DMT receiver over the communication
25 channel.

 The phase and amplitude of the carrier signals of DMT transmission signal can be considered random because the phase and amplitude result from the modulation of an arbitrary sequence of input data bits comprising the transmitted information. Therefore, under the condition that the modulated data bit stream is random, the DMT transmission
30 signal can be approximated as having a Gaussian probability distribution. A bit scrambler is often used in the DMT transmitter to scramble the input data bits before the bits are modulated to assure that the transmitted data bits are random and, consequently, that the

modulation of those bits produces a DMT transmission signal with a Gaussian probability distribution.

With an appropriate allocation of transmit power levels to the carriers or sub-channels, such a system provides a desirable performance. Further, generating a transmission signal with a Gaussian probability distribution is important in order to transmit a transmission signal with a low peak-to-average ratio (PAR), or peak-to-average power ratio. The PAR of a transmission signal is the ratio of the instantaneous peak value (i.e., maximum magnitude) of a signal parameter (e.g., voltage, current, phase, frequency, power) to the time-averaged value of the signal parameter. In DMT systems, the PAR of the transmitted signal is determined by the probability of the random transmission signal reaching a certain peak voltage during the time interval required for a certain number of symbols. An example of the PAR of a transmission signal transmitted from a DMT transmitter is 14.5 dB, which is equivalent to having a $1E-7$ probability of clipping. The PAR of a transmission signal transmitted and received in a DMT communication system is an important consideration in the design of the DMT communication system because the PAR of a signal affects the communication system's total power consumption and component linearity requirements of the system.

If the phase of the modulated carriers is not random, then the PAR can increase greatly. Examples of cases where the phases of the modulated carrier signals are not random are when bit scramblers are not used, multiple carrier signals are used to modulate the same input data bits, and the constellation maps, which are mappings of input data bits to the phase of a carrier signal, used for modulation are not random enough (i.e., a zero value for a data bit corresponds to a 90 degree phase characteristic of the DMT carrier signal and a one value for a data bit corresponds to a -90 degree phase characteristic of the DMT carrier signal). An increased PAR can result in a system with high power consumption and/or with high probability of clipping the transmission signal. Thus, there remains a need for a system and method that can effectively scramble the phase of the modulated carrier signals in order to provide a low PAR for the transmission signal.

Summary of the Invention

The present invention features a system and method that scrambles the phase characteristics of the modulated carrier signals in a transmission signal. In one aspect, a value is associated with each carrier signal. A phase shift is computed for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. The phase shift computed for each carrier signal is combined with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the carrier signals.

In one embodiment, the input bit stream is modulated onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristic to produce a transmission signal with a reduced peak-to-average power ratio (PAR). The value is derived from a predetermined parameter, such as a random number generator, a carrier number, a DMT symbol count, a superframe count, and a hyperframe count. In another embodiment, a predetermined transmission signal is transmitted when the amplitude of the transmission signal exceeds a certain level.

In another aspect, the invention features a method wherein a value is associated with each carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. A phase shift for each carrier signal is computed based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The transmission signal is demodulated using the phase shift computed for each carrier signal.

In another aspect, the invention features a system comprising a phase scrambler that computes a phase shift for each carrier signal based on a value associated with that carrier signal. The phase scrambler also combines the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal to substantially scramble the phase characteristic of the carrier signals. In one embodiment, a modulator, in communication with the phase scrambler, modulates bits of an input signal onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristics to produce a transmission signal with a reduced PAR.

30

Description of the Drawings

The invention is pointed out with particularity in the appended claims. The advantages of the invention described above, as well as further advantages of the invention, may be better understood by reference to the following description taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of an embodiment of a digital subscriber line communications system including a DMT (discrete multitone modulation) transceiver, in communication with a remote transceiver, having a phase scrambler for substantially scrambling the phase characteristics of carrier signals; and

FIG. 2 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of a process for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals in a transmission signal.

Detailed Description

FIG. 1 shows a digital subscriber line (DSL) communication system 2 including a discrete multitone (DMT) transceiver 10 in communication with a remote transceiver 14 over a communication channel 18 using a transmission signal 38 having a plurality of carrier signals. The DMT transceiver 10 includes a DMT transmitter 22 and a DMT receiver 26. The remote transceiver 14 includes a transmitter 30 and a receiver 34. Although described with respect to discrete multitone modulation, the principles of the invention apply also to other types of multicarrier modulation, such as, but not limited to, orthogonally multiplexed quadrature amplitude modulation (OQAM), discrete wavelet multitone (DWMT) modulation, and orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM).

The communication channel 18 provides a downstream transmission path from the DMT transmitter 22 to the remote receiver 34, and an upstream transmission path from the remote transmitter 30 to the DMT receiver 26. In one embodiment, the communication channel 18 is a pair of twisted wires of a telephone subscriber line. In other embodiments, the communication channel 18 can be a fiber optic wire, a quad cable, consisting of two pairs of twisted wires, or a quad cable that is one of a star quad cable, a Dieselhorst-Martin quad cable, and the like. In a wireless communication system wherein the transceivers 10, 14 are wireless modems, the communication channel 18 is the air through which the transmission signal 38 travels between the transceivers 10, 14.

By way of example, the DMT transmitter 22 shown in FIG. 1 includes a quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) encoder 42, a modulator 46, a bit allocation table (BAT) 44, and a phase scrambler 66. The DMT transmitter 22 can also include a bit scrambler 74, as described further below. The remote transmitter 30 of the remote transceiver 14 comprises
5 equivalent components as the DMT transmitter 22. Although this embodiment specifies a detailed description of the DMT transmitter 22, the inventive concepts apply also to the receivers 34, 36 which have similar components to that of the DMT transmitter 22, but perform inverse functions in a reverse order.

The QAM encoder 42 has a single input for receiving an input serial data bit stream
10 54 and multiple parallel outputs to transmit QAM symbols 58 generated by the QAM encoder 42 from the bit stream 54. In general, the QAM encoder 42 maps the input serial bit-stream 54 in the time domain into parallel QAM symbols 58 in the frequency domain. In particular, the QAM encoder 42 maps the input serial data bit stream 54 into N parallel quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) constellation points 58, or QAM symbols 58,
15 where N represents the number of carrier signals generated by the modulator 46. The BAT 44 is in communication with the QAM encoder 42 to specify the number of bits carried by each carrier signal. The QAM symbols 58 represent the amplitude and the phase characteristic of each carrier signal.

The modulator 46 provides functionality associated with the DMT modulation and
20 transforms the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70 each comprised of a plurality of time-domain samples. The modulator 46 modulates each carrier signal with a different QAM symbol 58. As a result of this modulation, carrier signals have phase and amplitude characteristics based on the QAM symbol 58 and therefore based on the input-bit stream 54. In particular, the modulator 46 uses an inverse fast Fourier transform (IFFT) to change the
25 QAM symbols 58 into a transmission signal 38 comprised of a sequence of DMT symbols 70. The modulator 46 changes the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70 through modulation of the carrier signals. In another embodiment, the modulator 46 uses the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT) to change the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70. In one embodiment, a pilot tone is included in the transmission signal 38 to provide a reference
30 signal for coherent demodulation of the carrier signals in the remote receiver 34 during reception of the transmission signal 38.

The modulator 46 also includes a phase scrambler 66 that combines a phase shift computed for each QAM-modulated carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal. Combining phase shifts with phase characteristics, in accordance with the principles of the invention, substantially scrambles the phase characteristics of the carrier signals in the transmission signal 38. By scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals, the resulting transmission signal 38 has a substantially minimized peak-to-average (PAR) power ratio. The phase scrambler 66 can be part of or external to the modulator 46. Other embodiments of the phase scrambler 66 include, but are not limited to, a software program that is stored in local memory and is executed on the modulator 46, a digital signal processor (DSP) capable of performing mathematical functions and algorithms, and the like. The remote receiver 34 similarly includes a phase scrambler 66' for use when demodulating carrier signals that have had their phase characteristics adjusted by the phase scrambler 66 of the DMT transceiver 10.

To compute a phase shift for each carrier signal, the phase scrambler 66 associates one or more values with that carrier signal. The phase scrambler 66 determines each value for a carrier signal independently of the QAM symbols 58, and, therefore, independently of the bit value(s) modulated onto the carrier signal. The actual value(s) that the phase scrambler 66 associates with each carrier signal can be derived from one or more predefined parameters, such as a pseudo-random number generator (pseudo-RNG), a DMT carrier number, a DMT symbol count, a DMT superframe count, a DMT hyperframe count, and the like, as described in more detail below. Irrespective of the technique used to produce each value, the same technique is used by the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 so that the value associated with a given carrier signal is known at both ends of the communication channel 18.

The phase scrambler 66 then solves a predetermined equation to compute a phase shift for the carrier signal, using the value(s) associated with that carrier signal as input that effects the output of the equation. Any equation suitable for computing phase shifts can be used to compute the phase shifts. When the equation is independent of the bit values of the input serial bit stream 54, the computed phase shifts are also independent of such bit values.

30

In one embodiment (shown in phantom), the DMT transmitter 22 includes a bit scrambler 74, which receives the input serial bit stream 54 and outputs data bits 76 that are substantially scrambled. The substantially scrambled bits 76 are then passed to the QAM encoder 42. When the bit scrambler 74 is included in the DMT transmitter 22, the operation of the phase scrambler 66 further assures that the transmission signal 38 has a Gaussian probability distribution and, therefore, a substantially minimized PAR.

FIG. 2 shows embodiments of a process used by the DMT transmitter 22 for adjusting the phase characteristic of each carrier signal and combining these carrier signals to produce the transmission signal 38. The DMT transmitter 22 generates (step 100) a value that is associated with a carrier signal. Because the value is being used to alter the phase characteristics of the carrier signal, both the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 must recognize the value as being associated with the carrier signal. Either the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 independently derive the associated value, or one informs the other of the associated value. For example, in one embodiment the DMT transmitter 22 can derive the value from a pseudo-RNG and then transmit the generated value to the remote receiver 34. In another embodiment, the remote receiver 34 similarly derives the value from the same pseudo-RNG and the same seed as used by the transmitter (i.e., the transmitter pseudo-RNG produces the same series of random numbers as the receiver pseudo-RNG).

As another example, the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 can each maintain a symbol counter for counting DMT symbols. The DMT transmitter 22 increments its symbol counter upon transmitting a DMT symbol; the remote receiver 34 upon receipt. Thus, when the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 both use the symbol count as a value for computing phase shifts, both the DMT transmitter 22 and remote receiver 34 "know" that the value is associated with a particular DMT symbol and with each carrier signal of that DMT symbol.

Values can also be derived from other types of predefined parameters. For example, if the predefined parameter is the DMT carrier number, then the value associated with a particular carrier signal is the carrier number of that signal within the DMT symbol. The number of a carrier signal represents the location of the frequency of the carrier signal relative to the frequency of other carrier signals within a DMT symbol. For example, in one

embodiment the DSL communication system 2 provides 256 carrier signals, each separated by a frequency of 4.3125 kHz and spanning the frequency bandwidth from 0 kHz to 1104 kHz. The DMT transmitter 22 numbers the carrier signals from 0 to 255. Therefore, "DMT carrier number 50" represents the 51st DMT carrier signal which is located at the frequency of 215.625 kHz (i.e., 51×4.3125 kHz).

Again, the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 can know the value that is associated with the carrier signal because both the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 use the same predefined parameter (here, the DMT carrier number) to make the value-carrier signal association. In other embodiments (as exemplified above with the transmitter pseudo-RNG), the DMT transmitter 22 can transmit the value to the remote receiver 34 (or vice versa) over the communication channel 18.

In other embodiments, other predefined parameters can be used in conjunction with the symbol count. One example of such a predefined parameter is the superframe count that increments by one every 69 DMT symbols. One exemplary implementation that achieves the superframe counter is to perform a modulo 68 operation on the symbol count. As another example, the DMT transmitter 22 can maintain a hyperframe counter for counting hyperframes. An exemplary implementation of the hyperframe count is to perform a modulo 255 operation on the superframe count. Thus, the hyperframe count increments by one each time the superframe count reaches 255.

Accordingly, it is seen that some predefined parameters produce values that vary from carrier signal to carrier signal. For example, when the predefined parameter is the DMT carrier number, values vary based on the frequency of the carrier signal. As another example, the pseudo-RNG generates a new random value for each carrier signal.

Other predefined parameters produce values that vary from DMT symbol 70 to DMT symbol 70. For example, when the predefined parameter is the symbol count, the superframe count, or hyperframe count, values vary based on the numerical position of the DMT symbol 70 within a sequence of symbols, superframes, or hyperframes. Predefined parameters such as the pseudo-RNG, symbol count, superframe count, and superframe can also be understood to be parameters that vary values over time. Any one or combination of the predefined parameters can provide values for input to the equation that computes a phase shift for a given carrier signal.

In one embodiment, the phase scrambling is used to avoid clipping of the transmission signal 38 on a DMT symbol 70 by DMT symbol 70 basis. In this embodiment, the DMT transmitter 22 uses a value based on a predefined parameter that varies over time, such as the symbol count, to compute the phase shift. It is to be understood that other types of predefined parameters that vary the values associated with carrier signals can be used to practice the principles of the invention. As described above, the transceivers 10, 14 may communicate (step 110) the values to synchronize their use in modulating and demodulating the carrier signals.

The DMT transmitter 22 then computes (step 115) the phase shift that is used to adjust the phase characteristic of each carrier signal. The amount of the phase shift combined with the phase characteristic of each QAM-modulated carrier signal depends upon the equation used and the one or more values associated with that carrier signal.

The DMT transmitter 22 then combines (step 120) the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal. By scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals, the phase scrambler 66 reduces (with respect to unscrambled phase characteristics) the combined PAR of the plurality of carrier signals and, consequently, the transmission signal 38. The following three phase shifting examples, PS #1-PS #3, illustrate methods used by the phase scrambler 66 to combine a computed phase shift to the phase characteristic of each carrier signal.

20 **Phase Shifting Example #1**

Phase shifting example #1 (PS #1) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $N \times \frac{\pi}{3}$ modulo (mod) 2π . In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 50 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $50 \times \frac{\pi}{3} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{2}{3}\pi$.

25 The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 51 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $51 \times \frac{\pi}{3} \pmod{2\pi} = \pi$. The carrier signal with the carrier number N equal to 0 has no phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal.

Phase Shifting Example #2

Phase shifting example #2 (PS #2) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(N + M) \times \frac{\pi}{4}$, mod 2π , where M is the symbol count. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 50 on DMT symbol count M equal to 8 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $(50 + 8) \times \frac{\pi}{4} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{\pi}{2}$. The carrier signal with the same carrier number N equal to 50 on the next DMT symbol count M equal to 9 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $(50 + 9) \times \frac{\pi}{4} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{3\pi}{4}$.

10 **Phase Shifting Example #3**

Phase shifting example #3 (PS #3) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(X_N) \times \frac{\pi}{6}$, mod 2π , where X_N is an array of N pseudo-random numbers. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 5 and X_N equal to [3, 8, 1, 4, 9, 5, . . .] has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal that is equal to $(9) \times \frac{\pi}{6} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{3\pi}{2}$ (Note that 9 is the 5th value in X_N .) The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 6 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal equal to $(5) \times \frac{\pi}{6} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{5\pi}{6}$.

It is to be understood that additional and/or different phase shifting techniques can be used by the phase scrambler 66, and that PS #1, #2, and #3 are merely illustrative examples of the principles of the invention. The DMT transmitter 22 then combines (step 130) the carrier signals to form the transmission signal 38. If the transmission signal is not clipped, as described below, the DMT transmitter 22 consequently transmits (step 160) the transmission signal 38 to the remote receiver 34.

25

Clipping of Transmission Signals

A transmission signal 38 that has high peak values of voltage (i.e., a high PAR) can induce non-linear distortion in the DMT transmitter 22 and the communication channel 18. One form of this non-linear distortion of the transmission signal 38 that may occur is the limitation of the amplitude of the transmission signal 38 (i.e., clipping). For example, a particular DMT symbol 70 clips in the time domain when one or more time domain samples in that DMT symbol 70 are larger than the maximum allowed digital value for the DMT symbols 70. In multicarrier communication systems when clipping occurs, the transmission signal 38 does not accurately represent the input serial data bit signal 54.

10 In one embodiment, the DSL communication system 2 avoids the clipping of the transmission signal 38 on a DMT symbol 70 by DMT symbol 70 basis. The DMT transmitter 22 detects (step 140) the clipping of the transmission signal 38. If a particular DMT symbol 70 clips in the time domain to produce a clipped transmission signal 38, the DMT transmitter 22 substitutes (step 150) a predefined transmission signal 78 for the clipped transmission
15 signal 38.

The predefined transmission signal 78 has the same duration as a DMT symbol 70 (e.g., 250 ms) in order to maintain symbol timing between the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34. The predefined transmission signal 78 is not based on (i.e., independent of) the modulated input data bit stream 54; it is a bit value pattern that is recognized by the remote receiver 34 as a substituted signal. In one embodiment, the predefined transmission signal 78 is a known pseudo-random sequence pattern that is easily detected by the remote receiver 34. In another embodiment, the predefined transmission signal 78 is an "all zeros" signal, which is a zero voltage signal produced at the DMT transmitter 22 output (i.e., zero volts modulated on all the carrier signals). In addition to easy detection by the remote
20 receiver 34, the zero voltage signal reduces the power consumption of the DMT transmitter 22 when delivered by the DMT transmitter 22. Further, a pilot tone is included in the predefined transmission signal 78 to provide a reference signal for coherent demodulation of the carrier signals in the remote receiver 34 during reception of the predefined transmission
25 signal 78.

30

After the remote receiver 34 receives the transmission signal 38, the remote receiver 34 determines if the transmission signal 38 is equivalent to the predefined transmission signal 78. In one embodiment, when the remote receiver 34 identifies the predefined transmission signal 78, the remote receiver 34 ignores (i.e., discards) the predefined transmission signal 78.

Following the transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78, the phase scrambler 66 shifts (step 120) the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signals (based on one of the predefined parameters that varies over time). For example, consider that a set of QAM symbols 58 produces a DMT symbol 70 comprising a plurality of time domain samples, and that one of the time domain samples is larger than the maximum allowed digital value for the DMT symbol 70. Therefore, because the transmission signal 38 would be clipped when sent to the remote receiver 34, the DMT transmitter 22 sends the predefined transmission signal 78 instead.

After transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78, the DMT transmitter 22 again attempts to send the same bit values that produced the clipped transmission signal 38 in a subsequent DMT symbol 70'. Because the generation of phase shifts in this embodiment is based on values that vary over time, the phase shifts computed for the subsequent DMT symbol 70' are different than those that were previously computed for the DMT symbol 70 with the clipped time domain sample. These different phase shifts are combined to the phase characteristics of the modulated carrier signals to produce carrier signals of the subsequent DMT symbol 70' with different phase characteristics than the carrier signals of the DMT symbol 70 with the clipped time domain sample.

DMT communication systems 2 infrequently produce transmission signals 38 that clip (e.g., approximately one clip every 10^7 time domain samples 70). However, if the subsequent DMT symbol 70' includes a time domain sample that clips, then the predefined transmission signal 78 is again transmitted (step 150) to the remote receiver 34 instead of the clipped transmission signal 38. The clipping time domain sample may be on the same or on a different carrier signal than the previously clipped DMT symbol 70. The DMT transmitter 22 repeats the transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78 until the DMT transmitter 22 produces a subsequent DMT symbol 70' that is not clipped. When the DMT transmitter 22 produces a DMT symbol 70' that is not clipped, the DTM transmitter 22 transmits (step 160)

the transmission signal 38 to the remote receiver 34. The probability of a DMT symbol 70 producing a transmission signal 38 that clips in the time domain depends on the PAR of the transmission signal 38.

For example, the following phase shifting example, PST #4, illustrates the method used by the phase scrambler 66 to combine a different phase shift to the phase characteristic of each carrier signal to avoid the clipping of the transmission signal 38.

Phase Shifting Example #4

Phase shifting example #4 (PS #4) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $\frac{\pi}{3} \times (M + N)$, mod 2π , where M is the DMT symbol count. In this example, if the DMT symbol 70 clips when the DMT symbol count M equals 5, the predefined transmission signal 78 is transmitted instead of the current clipped transmission signal 38. On the following DMT symbol period, the DMT count M equals 6, thereby causing a different set of time domain samples to be generated for the subsequent DMT symbol 70', although the QAM symbols 58 used to produce both DMT symbols 70, 70' are the same.

If this different set of time domain samples (and consequently the transmission signal 38) is not clipped, the DMT transmitter 22 sends the transmission signal 38. If one of the time domain samples in the different set of time domain samples 70 (and consequently the transmission signal 38) is clipped, then the DMT transmitter 22 sends the predefined transmission signal 78 again. The process continues until a DMT symbol 70 is produced without a time domain sample 70 that is clipped. In one embodiment, the transmitter 22 stops attempting to produce a non-clipped DMT symbol 70' for the particular set of QAM symbols 58 after generating a predetermined number of clipped DMT symbols 70'. At that moment, the transmitter 22 can transmit the most recently produced clipped DMT symbol 70' or the predetermined transmission signal 78.

The PAR of the DSL communication system 2 is reduced because the predefined transmission signal 78 is sent instead of the transmission signal 38 when the DMT symbol 70 clips. For example, a DMT communication system 2 that normally has a clipping probability of 10^{-7} for the time domain transmission signal 38 can therefore operate with a 10^{-5} probability of clipping and a lower PAR equal to 12.8 dB (as compared to 14.5 dB). When

operating at a 10^{-5} probability of clipping, assuming a DMT symbol 70 has 512 time-domain samples 70, the DMT transmitter 22 experiences one clipped DMT symbol 70 out of every $\frac{10^5}{512}$, or 195 DMT symbols 70. This results in the predefined (non-data carrying) transmission signal 78 being transmitted, on average, once every 195 DMT symbols.

- 5 Although increasing the probability of clipping to 10^{-5} results in approximately a 0.5% (1/195) decrease in throughput, the PAR of the transmission signal 38 is reduced by 1.7 dB, which reduces transmitter complexity in the form of power consumption and component linearity.

- 10 While the invention has been shown and described with reference to specific preferred embodiments, it should be understood by those skilled in the art that various changes in form and detail may be made therein without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the following claims. For example, although the specification uses DSL to describe the invention, it is to be understood that various form of DSL can be used, e.g., ADSL, VDSL, SDSL, HDSL, HDSL2, or SHDSL. It is also to be understood that
- 15 the principles of the invention apply to various types of applications transported over DSL systems (e.g., telecommuting, video conferencing, high speed Internet access, video-on demand).

Abstract

A system and method that scrambles the phase characteristic of a carrier signal are described. The scrambling of the phase characteristic of each carrier signal includes associating a value with each carrier signal and computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. The phase shift computed for each carrier signal is combined with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristic of the carrier signals. Bits of an input signal are modulated onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristic to produce a transmission signal with a reduced PAR.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

POWER OF ATTORNEY TO PROSECUTE APPLICATIONS BEFORE THE USPTO

I hereby revoke all previous powers of attorney given in the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b).

I hereby appoint:

Practitioners associated with the Customer Number: 62574

OR

Practitioner(s) named below (if more than ten patent practitioners are to be named, then a customer number must be used):

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number

as attorney(s) or agent(s) to represent the undersigned before the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) in connection with any and all patent applications assigned only to the undersigned according to the USPTO assignment records or assignment documents attached to this form in accordance with 37 CFR 3.73(b).

Please change the correspondence address for the application identified in the attached statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b) to:

The address associated with Customer Number: 62574

OR

<input type="checkbox"/> Firm or Individual Name			
Address			
City	State	Zip	
Country			
Telephone	Email		

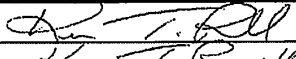
Assignee Name and Address:

AWARE, INC.
 40 Middlesex Turnpike
 Bedford, MA 01730-1432

A copy of this form, together with a statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b) (Form PTO/SB/96 or equivalent) is required to be filed in each application in which this form is used. The statement under 37 CFR 3.73(b) may be completed by one of the practitioners appointed in this form if the appointed practitioner is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee, and must identify the application in which this Power of Attorney is to be filed.

SIGNATURE of Assignee of Record

The individual whose signature and title is supplied below is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee

Signature		Date	1/13/09
Name	Kevin T. Russell	Telephone	781-657-0335
Title	IP General Counsel		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.31, 1.32 and 1.33. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 3 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

STATEMENT UNDER 37 CFR 3.73(b)

Applicant/Patent Owner: Marcos C. Tzannes

Application No./Patent No.: 12/255,713 Filed/Issue Date: 10/22/2008

Entitled: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

AWARE, INC., a corporation
(Name of Assignee) (Type of Assignee, e.g., corporation, partnership, university, government agency, etc.)

states that it is:

- the assignee of the entire right, title, and interest; or
- an assignee of less than the entire right, title and interest
(The extent (by percentage) of its ownership interest is _____ %)

in the patent application/patent identified above by virtue of either:

A. An assignment from the inventor(s) of the patent application/patent identified above. The assignment was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at Reel 010877, Frame 0307, or for which a copy therefore is attached.

OR

B. A chain of title from the inventor(s), of the patent application/patent identified above, to the current assignee as follows:

1. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

2. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

3. From: _____ To: _____

The document was recorded in the United States Patent and Trademark Office at
Reel _____, Frame _____, or for which a copy thereof is attached.

Additional documents in the chain of title are listed on a supplemental sheet.

As required by 37 CFR 3.73(b)(1)(i), the documentary evidence of the chain of title from the original owner to the assignee was, or concurrently is being, submitted for recordation pursuant to 37 CFR 3.11.

[NOTE: A separate copy (i.e., a true copy of the original assignment document(s)) must be submitted to Assignment Division in accordance with 37 CFR Part 3, to record the assignment in the records of the USPTO. See MPEP 302.08]

The undersigned (whose title is supplied below) is authorized to act on behalf of the assignee.

[Signature]
Signature

Kevin T. Russell
Printed or Typed Name

VP General Counsel
Title

1/13/09
Date

781-687-0335
Telephone Number

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 3.73(b). The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.



UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

AUGUST 17, 2000

PTAS

TESTA, HURWITZ & THIBEAULT, LLP
JOSEPH B. MILLSTEIN
125 HIGH STREET
HIGH STREET TOWER
BOSTON, MA 02110



101391997A

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
NOTICE OF RECORDATION OF ASSIGNMENT DOCUMENT

THE ENCLOSED DOCUMENT HAS BEEN RECORDED BY THE ASSIGNMENT DIVISION OF THE U.S. PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE. A COMPLETE MICROFILM COPY IS AVAILABLE AT THE ASSIGNMENT SEARCH ROOM ON THE REEL AND FRAME NUMBER REFERENCED BELOW.

PLEASE REVIEW ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THIS NOTICE. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THIS RECORDATION NOTICE REFLECTS THE DATA PRESENT IN THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK ASSIGNMENT SYSTEM. IF YOU SHOULD FIND ANY ERRORS OR HAVE QUESTIONS CONCERNING THIS NOTICE, YOU MAY CONTACT THE EMPLOYEE WHOSE NAME APPEARS ON THIS NOTICE AT 703-308-9723. PLEASE SEND REQUEST FOR CORRECTION TO: U.S. PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, ASSIGNMENT DIVISION, BOX ASSIGNMENTS, CG-4, 1213 JEFFERSON DAVIS HWY, SUITE 320, WASHINGTON, D.C. 20231.

RECORDATION DATE: 06/05/2000

REEL/FRAME: 010877/0307
NUMBER OF PAGES: 4

BRIEF: ASSIGNMENT OF ASSIGNOR'S INTEREST (SEE DOCUMENT FOR DETAILS).

ASSIGNOR:

TZANNES, MARCOS C.

DOC DATE: 05/23/2000

ASSIGNEE:

AWARE, INC.
40 MIDDLESEX TURNPIKE
BEDFORD, MASSACHUSETTS 01730

SERIAL NUMBER: 60164134
PATENT NUMBER:

FILING DATE: 11/09/1999
ISSUE DATE:

RECEIVED

JOANN STEWART, EXAMINER
ASSIGNMENT DIVISION
OFFICE OF PUBLIC RECORDS.

AUG 22 2000

**PATENT DEPARTMENT
TESTA, HURWITZ & THIBEAULT, LLP**

06-29-2000

PATENT



JUN 5

REC

101391997

EET

6-5-00

PATENTS ONLY

TO: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks: Please record the attached original document(s) or copy(ies).

Submission Type

- New
- Resubmission (Non-Recordation)

Document ID#:

Correction of PTO Error
Reel #: Frame #

Corrective Document
Reel #: Frame #

Conveyance Type

- Assignment
- License
- Merger
- Security Agreement
- Change of Name
- Other

U.S. Government

(For use ONLY by U.S. Government Agencies)

- Departmental File
- Secret File

Conveying Party(ies)

Mark if additional names of conveying parties attached

Name	Execution Date		
	Month	Day	Year
Marcos C. Tzannes	5	23	00
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Receiving Party

Mark if additional names of receiving parties attached

Name (line 1)

Name (line 2)

Address (line 1)

Address (line 2)

Address (line 3)

City State/Country Zip Code

If document to be recorded is an assignment and the receiving party is not domiciled in the United States, an appointment of a domestic representative is attached. (Designation must be a separate document from Assignment)

Domestic Representative Name and Address

Enter for the first Receiving Party only.

Name

Address (line 1)

Address (line 2)

Address (line 3)

Address (line 4)

06/29/2000 ASCD TT 00000064 60164124

FOR OFFICE USE ONLY

FC:561

40.00 00

Mail documents to be recorded with required cover sheet(s) information to:
Box Assignment, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231

Correspondent Name and Address

Area Code and Telephone Number (617) 248-7000

Name Patent Administrator

Address (line 1) Testa, Hurwitz & Thibault, LLP

Address (line 2) High Street Tower

Address (line 3) 125 High Street

Address (line 4) Boston, MA 02110

Pages Enter the total number of pages of the attached conveyance document including any attachments. 2

Application Number(s) or Patent Number(s) Mark if additional numbers attached Enter either the Patent Application Number or the Patent Number (DO NOT ENTER BOTH numbers for the same property).

Table with 2 columns: Patent Application Number(s) and Patent Number(s). Includes entry 60/164,134.

Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) Enter PCT application number only if a U.S. Application Number has not been assigned. PCT [] PCT [] PCT []

Number of Properties Enter the total number of properties involved. # 1

Fee Amount Fee Amount for Properties Listed (37 CFR 3.41): \$ 40.00 Method of Payment: Enclosed [X] Deposit Account [] Deposit Account Number # 20-0531 Authorization to charge additional fees: Yes [X] No []

Statement and Signature To the best of my knowledge and belief, the foregoing information is true and correct and any attached copy is a true copy of the original document. Charges to deposit account are authorized, as indicated herein.

Joseph B. Milstein Name of Person Signing [Signature] Signature June 1, 2000 Date

1005832-1

Mail documents to be recorded with required cover sheet(s) information to: Box Assignment, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231

ASSIGNMENT

WHEREAS, I, **Marcos C. Tzannes**, have invented one or more improvements in

**A METHOD FOR RANDOMIZING THE PHASE OF THE
CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS TO
REDUCE THE PEAK TO AVERAGE POWER RATIO OF THE TRANSMITTED SIGNAL**

described in an application (or provisional application) for Letters Patent of the United States:

identified by Attorney Docket No. _____, and/or executed by me of even date herewith and about to be filed in the United States Patent Office;

Serial No. **60/164,134** filed in the United States Patent Office on **November 9, 1999**; and

WHEREAS, Aware, Inc. (hereinafter "ASSIGNEE"), a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, and having a usual place of business at 40 Middlesex Turnpike, Bedford, Massachusetts 01730 desires to acquire an interest therein, in accordance with agreements duly entered into with me;

NOW, THEREFORE, to all whom it may concern be it known that for and in consideration of said agreements and of other good and valuable consideration, the receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, I have sold, assigned and transferred and by these presents do hereby sell, assign and transfer unto said ASSIGNEE, its successors, assigns, and legal representatives, my entire right, title and interest in and throughout the United States of America, its territories and all foreign countries, in and to the inventions described in said application, together with my entire right, title and interest in and to said application and such Letters Patent as may issue thereon or claim priority under international convention, including but not limited to continuations, divisionals, reissues, and reexaminations of said application of such Letters Patent; said inventions, applications and Letters Patent to be held and enjoyed by said ASSIGNEE for its own use and behalf and for its successors, assigns and legal representatives, to the full end of the term for which said Letters Patent may be granted as fully and entirely as the same would have been held by me had this assignment and sale not been made; I hereby convey all of my rights arising under or pursuant to any and all international agreements, treaties or laws relating to the protection of industrial property by filing any such applications for Letters Patent. I hereby acknowledge that this assignment, being of my entire right, title and interest in and to said invention, carries with it the right in ASSIGNEE to apply for and obtain from competent authorities in all countries of the world any and all Letters Patent by attorneys and agents of ASSIGNEE's selection and the right to procure the grant of all Letters Patent to ASSIGNEE for its own name as assignee of my entire right, title and interest therein.


AND, I hereby further agree for myself and my executors and administrators to execute upon request any other lawful documents and likewise to perform any other lawful acts which may be deemed necessary to secure fully the aforesaid invention to said ASSIGNEE, its successors, assigns, and legal representatives, but at its or their expense and charges, including: the execution of applications for patents in foreign countries; the execution of substitution, reissue, divisional or continuation applications; and preliminary or other statements or the giving of testimony in any interference or other proceeding in which said invention or any application or patent directed thereto may be involved; and I

further hereby authorize ASSIGNEE or its attorneys or agents to insert the correct serial number and filing date into this assignment if none is indicated on that date of my execution of this assignment;

AND, I do hereby authorize and request the Commissioner of Patents of the United States to issue such Letters Patent as shall be granted upon said application or applications based thereon to said ASSIGNEE, its successors, assigns, and legal representatives.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, I have hereunto set my hand and affixed my seal the date set forth below.

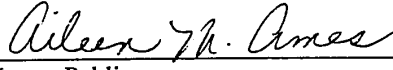
Inventor:



Marcos C. Tzannes

State of California)
~~Commonwealth of Massachusetts~~)
County of *Contra Costa*) ss

Subscribed and sworn to before me, by the above-named Marcos C. Tzannes this 23rd day of May, 2000.



Notary Public
My Commission Expires: 11-20-2001

570MAR457/19.976292-1



Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	4606308
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Christine Jacquet
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	13-JAN-2009
Filing Date:	22-OCT-2008
Time Stamp:	17:39:10
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no
------------------------	----

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Applicant Response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice	RESP_CORRECTED_APP_PAPER S.pdf	71919 a862516397757dfa7274833891852f2f087b82e3	no	1

Warnings:

Information:

2	Specification	MARKED_UP_SPEC.pdf	1668353 9007ea42bc8d2bf3523803397ad62138982614dd	no	15
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Specification	CLEAN_COPY_SPEC.pdf	1659094 889390d47ef278d9a4c77671b87a2a1da44de36	no	15
Warnings:					
Information:					
4		POA_373B_AND_COPY_OF_RECORDED_ASSIGN.pdf	770761 a03c62fca3c7bc6491b0b5af33d33d02ac60de1b	yes	7
Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description					
Document Description		Start	End		
Power of Attorney		1	1		
Assignee showing of ownership per 37 CFR 3.73(b).		2	2		
Examination support document		3	7		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):				4170127	
<p>This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.</p> <p><u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.</p> <p><u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.</p> <p><u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.</p>					

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	12/255,713
				Filing Date	10-22-2008
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	2611
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
Sheet	1	of	1	Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number Number-kind Code ^{2 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document Country Code ³ ; Number ⁴ ; Kind Code ^{5 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶

OTHER ART (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)		
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	
	1	Decision of Refusal (including translation) for Japanese Patent Application No. 2001-537217, date of dispatch, November 4, 2008 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-PJP)

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
--------------------	--	-----------------	--

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	4353505
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Debra Kesner
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	25-NOV-2008
Filing Date:	22-OCT-2008
Time Stamp:	15:38:07
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	no
------------------------	----

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1		IDS_02.pdf	321762 <small>290008b1d8068a91c84f14a48edc501cbeb0d9a1</small>	yes	4

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description					
Document Description			Start	End	
Information Disclosure Statement Letter			1	3	
Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed (SB/08)			4	4	
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	NPL Documents	5550-47-PJP_OA_11-4-08.pdf	137000	no	3
			46159ab02ab5c03caf5c5b33b9a18e570e17f14f		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			458762		
<p>This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.</p> <p><u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.</p> <p><u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.</p> <p><u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.</p>					

Examiner's attention is drawn to the following co-pending application:

Other: _____

Submission of the above information is not intended as an admission that any item is citable under the statutes or rules to support a rejection, that any item disclosed represents analogous art, or that those skilled in the art would refer to or recognize the pertinence of any reference without the benefit of hindsight, nor should an inference be drawn as to the pertinence of the references based on the order in which they are presented. Submission of this statement should not be taken as an indication that a search has been conducted, or that no better art exists.

It is respectfully requested that the cited information be expressly considered during the prosecution of this application and the references made of record therein.

FEES

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<p>37 CFR 1.97(b): No fee is believed due in connection with this submission, because the information disclosure statement submitted herewith is satisfies one of the following conditions ("X" indicates satisfaction):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Within three months of the filing date of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under 37 CFR 1.53(d), or<input type="checkbox"/> Within three months of the date of entry into the national stage of an international application as set forth in 37 CFR 1.491 or<input type="checkbox"/> Before the mailing date of a first Office Action on the merits, or<input type="checkbox"/> Before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under 37 CFR 1.114. <p>Although no fee is believed due, if any fee is deemed due in connection with this submission, please charge such fee to Deposit Account 19-1970.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>37 CFR 1.97(c): The information disclosure statement transmitted herewith is being filed after all the above conditions (37 CFR 1.97(b)), but before the mailing date of one of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) a final action under 37 C.F.R. 1.113 or(2) a notice of allowance under 37 C.F.R. 1.311, or(3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application. <p>This Information Disclosure Statement is accompanied by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> A Certification (below) as specified by 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e). Although no fee is believed due, if any fee is deemed due in connection with this submission, please charge such fee to Deposit Account 19-1970. <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Please charge Deposit Account 19-1970 in the amount of \$180.00 for the fee set forth in 37 C.F.R. 1.17(p) for submission of an information disclosure statement. Please credit any overpayment or charge any underpayment to Deposit Account 19-1970.
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>37 CFR 1.97(d): This Information Disclosure Statement is being submitted after the period specified in 37 CFR 1.97(c).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> This information Disclosure Statement includes a Certification (below) as specified by 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e) <p style="text-align: center;">AND</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><input type="checkbox"/> Applicants hereby requests consideration of the reference(s) disclosed herein. Please charge Deposit Account 19-1970 in the amount of \$180.00 under 37 C.F.R. 1.17(p). Please credit any overpayment or charge any underpayment to Deposit Account 19-1970. Election to pay the fee should not be taken as an indication that applicant(s) cannot execute a certification.

Certification (37 C.F.R. 1.97(e))
(Applicable only if checked)

- The undersigned certifies that:
- Each item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this statement. 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e)(1).
 - A copy of the communication from the foreign patent office is enclosed.

OR

- No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in this Information Disclosure Statement was known to any individual designated in 37 C.F.R. 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this statement. 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e)(2).

Respectfully submitted,

SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

By: _____

Jason H. Vick
Registration No. 45285
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202-5141
(303) 863-9700

Date: 25 Mar 04



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 4 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER (12/255,713), FILING OR 371(C) DATE (10/22/2008), FIRST NAMED APPLICANT (Marcos C. Tzannes), ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE (5550-47-CON-3)

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

FORMALITIES LETTER



62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 11/14/2008

NOTICE TO FILE CORRECTED APPLICATION PAPERS

Filing Date Granted

An application number and filing date have been accorded to this application. The application is informal since it does not comply with the regulations for the reason(s) indicated below. Applicant is given TWO MONTHS from the date of this Notice within which to correct the informalities indicated below. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- A substitute specification excluding claims in compliance with 37 CFR 1.52, 1.121(b)(3), and 1.125 is required. The substitute specification must be submitted with markings and be accompanied by a clean version (without markings) as set forth in 37 CFR 1.125(c) and a statement that the substitute specification contains no new matter (see 37 CFR 1.125(b)). Since a preliminary amendment was present on the filing date of the application and such amendment is part of the original disclosure of the application, the substitute specification must include all of the desired changes made in the preliminary amendment. See 37 CFR 1.115 and 1.215.

Applicant is cautioned that correction of the above items may cause the specification and drawings page count to exceed 100 pages. If the specification and drawings exceed 100 pages, applicant will need to submit the required application size fee.

Replies should be mailed to:

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Registered users of EFS-Web may alternatively submit their reply to this notice via EFS-Web.
<https://portal.uspto.gov/authenticate/AuthenticateUserLocalEPF.html>

For more information about EFS-Web please call the USPTO Electronic Business Center at **1-866-217-9197** or visit our website at <http://www.uspto.gov/ebc>.

If you are not using EFS-Web to submit your reply, you must include a copy of this notice.

/evorachack/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Table with 7 columns: APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING or 371(c) DATE, GRP ART UNIT, FIL FEE REC'D, ATTY. DOCKET NO, TOT CLAIMS, IND CLAIMS. Values: 12/255,713, 10/22/2008, 2611, 1090, 5550-47-CON-3, 20, 2

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

FILING RECEIPT



62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 11/14/2008

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections

Applicant(s)

Marcos C. Tzannes, Orinda, CA;

Assignment For Published Patent Application

Aware, Inc., Bedford, MA

Power of Attorney: None

Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant

This application is a CON of 11/863,581 09/28/2007
which is a CON of 11/211,535 08/26/2005 PAT 7,292,627
which is a CON of 09/710,310 11/09/2000 PAT 6,961,369
which claims benefit of 60/164,134 11/09/1999

Foreign Applications

If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted: 11/05/2008

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is US 12/255,713

Projected Publication Date: To Be Determined - pending completion of Corrected Papers

Non-Publication Request: No

Early Publication Request: No

Title

SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A
MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

Preliminary Class

375

PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at <http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html>.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, <http://www.stopfakes.gov>. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4158).

LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

GRANTED

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where

the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

NOT GRANTED

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371(C) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE
12/255,713	10/22/2008	Marcos C. Tzannes	5550-47-CON-3

CONFIRMATION NO. 3870

IMPROPER CPOA LETTER



OC000000032971359

62574
Jason H. Vick
Sheridan Ross, PC
Suite # 1200
1560 Broadway
Denver, CO 80202

Date Mailed: 11/14/2008

NOTICE REGARDING POWER OF ATTORNEY

This is in response to the Power of Attorney filed 10/22/2008. The Power of Attorney in this application is not accepted for the reason(s) listed below:

- The Power of Attorney you provided did not comply with the new Power of Attorney rules that became effective on June 25, 2004. See 37 CFR 1.32.

/mnguyen/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re Patent Application for:

First Named Inventor: Marcos C. Tzannes

Art Unit:

Appln. No.:

Examiner:

For: A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR
SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS
IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS
SYSTEM

Confirmation No.:

* * *

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Prior to the initial review of the above-identified patent application by the Examiner, please enter the following Preliminary Amendment. Please charge any fees to Deposit Account 19-1970.

Please amend the above-identified patent application as follows:

Amendments to the Specification begin on page 2

Amendments to the Claims are reflected in the listing of claims which begins on page 3 of this paper.

Remarks begin on page 6 of this paper.

Amendments to the Specification:

Please amend the paragraph at page 13, line 2 as follows:

Phase shifting example #3 (PS #3) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(X_N) \times \frac{\pi}{6}, \text{mod } 2\pi$, where X_N is an array of N pseudo-random numbers. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 5 and X_N equal to [3, 8, 1, 4, 9, 5, . . .] has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal that is equal to $(9) \times \frac{\pi}{6} (\text{mod } 2\pi) = \frac{\pi}{3} (9) \times \frac{\pi}{6} (\text{mod } 2\pi) = \frac{3\pi}{2}$.-. (Note that 9 is the 5th value in X_N .) The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 6 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal equal to (5)

$$\times \frac{\pi}{6} (\text{mod } 2\pi) = \frac{5\pi}{3} (5) \times \frac{\pi}{6} (\text{mod } 2\pi) = \frac{5\pi}{6} .$$

Amendments to the Claims:

This listing of claims will replace all prior versions, and listings, of claims in the application:

Listing of Claims:

1. (Original) In a multicarrier modulation system including a first transceiver in communication with a second transceiver using a transmission signal having a plurality of carrier signals for modulating an input bit stream, each carrier signal having a phase characteristic associated with the input bit stream, a method for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals comprising:
 - associating each carrier signal with a value determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal;
 - computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that carrier signal; and
 - combining the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics of the plurality of carrier signals.
2. (Original) The method of claim 1 further comprising modulating bits of the input bit stream onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristics to produce a transmission signal with a reduced peak-to-average power ratio (PAR).
3. (Original) The method of claim 1 further comprising independently deriving the value associated with each carrier signal at each transceiver.
4. (Original) The method of claim 1 further comprising transmitting the value associated with each carrier signal from one transceiver to the other transceiver.
5. (Original) The method of claim 1 further comprising maintaining synchronization between the transceivers using the value associated with each carrier signal.
6. (Original) The method of claim 1 wherein the value varies with each carrier signal.
7. (Original) The method of claim 1 wherein the value varies with each DMT symbol.

8. (Original) The method of claim 1 wherein the value is derived from a predetermined parameter.
9. (Original) The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a carrier number.
10. (Original) The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a symbol count.
11. (Original) The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a hyperframe count.
12. (Original) The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a superframe count.
13. (Original) The method of claim 1 further comprising scrambling the bits of the input bit stream.
14. (Original) The method of claim 1 further comprising transmitting a predetermined transmission signal when the amplitude of the transmission signal exceeds a certain level.
15. (Original) The method of claim 14 wherein the predetermined transmission signal comprises a predetermined pattern of bits.
16. (Original) The method of claim 14 wherein the predetermined transmission signal comprises a pilot tone.
17. (Original) The method of claim 16 wherein the pilot tone is used to maintain timing synchronization between the first transceiver and the second transceiver.
18. (Original) The method of claim 15 wherein each bit value in the predetermined pattern of bits is a zero value.
19. (Original) The method of claim 15 wherein the predetermined pattern of bits is a pseudo-random sequence pattern.
20. (Original) In a multicarrier modulation system including a first transceiver in communication with a second transceiver using a transmission signal having a plurality of carrier signals for modulating an input bit stream, each carrier signal having a phase characteristic with the input bit stream, a method for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals comprising:
 - associating each carrier signal with a value determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal;
 - computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated

with that carrier signal; and

demodulating the transmission signal using the phase shift computed for each carrier signal.

21-39. (Canceled)

REMARKS

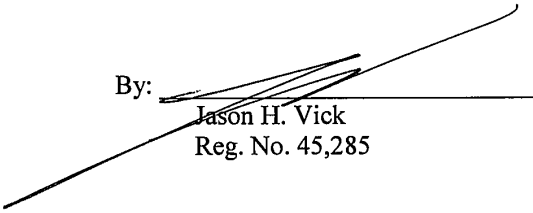
By this Amendment, Claims 21-39 are cancelled without prejudice or disclaimer and a typographic error has been corrected.

Applicant believes that the pending claims are in condition for allowance and such disposition is respectfully requested. In the event that a telephone conversation would further prosecution and/or expedite allowance, the Examiner is invited to contact the undersigned.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: 21 Oct 20

By:


Jason H. Vick
Reg. No. 45,285

Sheridan Ross P. C.
1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
Denver, Colorado 80202
Telephone: 303-863-9700
Fax: 303-863-0223

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	Not yet assigned
				Filing Date	Herewith
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	Not yet assigned
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
				Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3
Sheet	1	of	3		

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Document Number Number-kind Code ^{2 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee of Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	
	1	3,955,141	05/01/76	Lyon et al.		
	2	4,985,900	01/01/91	Rhind et al.		
	3	5,682,376	10/28/97	Hayashino et al.		
	4	5,748,677	05/01/98	Kumar		
	5	6,256,355	07/03/01	Sakoda et al.		
	6	6,507,585	01/01/03	Dobson		
	7	6,590,860	07/08/03	Sakoda et al.		
	8	6,704,317	03/01/04	Dobson		
	9	6,961,369	11/01/05	Tzannes		
	10	7,292,627	01/05/06	Tzannes		
	11	2005/0141410	06/30/05	Zhang et al.		
	12	2006/0092902	05/04/06	Schmidt		
	13	2006/0140288	06/29/06	Holden		
	14	2008/0069253		Tzannes		
	15	11/860080		Tzannes (09-24-2007)		

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	Foreign Patent Document Country Code ³ ; Number ⁴ ; Kind Code ^{5 (if known)}	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	T ⁶
	16	EP 0584534	03/02/94	ALCATEL ITALIA		
	17	EP 0719004	06/26/96	MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC IND CO LTD		
	18	GB 2330491	04/21/99	BRITISH BROADCASTING CORP		

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
--------------------	--	-----------------	--

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	Not yet assigned
				Filing Date	Herewith
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	Not yet assigned
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
Sheet	2	of	3	Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3

	19	JP H10(1998)-084329	03/31/98	NIPPON HOSO KYOKAI		(Translated Abstract and partial translation)
	20	JP H08(1996)-321820	12/03/96	MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC IND CO LTD		(Translated Abstract)
	21	WO 98/32065	07/23/98	FORTRESS TECHNOLOGIES INC		
	22	WO 99/22463	05/06/99	MOTOROLA INC		
	23	WO 99/29078	06/10/99	TELIA AB		

OTHER ART (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, etc.)		
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	
	24	Bauml R. W. et al.: "Reducing The Peak-To-Average Power Ratio Of Multicarrier Modulation By Selected Mapping" Electronics Letters, GB, IEE Stevenage, vol. 32, No. 22, Oct. 24, 1996, pp. 2056-2057, XP000643915 ISSN: 0013-5194
	25	Copy of Annex to Form PCT/ISA/206 for PCT/US00/30958, Mar. 23, 2001 (5550-47-PCT)
	26	International Search Report for International (PCT) Patent Application No. PCT/US00/30958, completed June 12, 2001 (5550-47-PCT)
	27	International Preliminary Examination Report for International (PCT) Patent Application No. PCT/US00/30958, completed March 4, 2002 (5550-47-PCT)
	28	Notification of Reasons for Refusal (including translation) for Japanese Patent Application No. 2001-537217, date of dispatch, March 3, 2008 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-PJP)
	29	Notice of Preliminary Rejection for Korean Patent Application No. 7005830/2002 dated November 22, 2006 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-PKR)
	30	Official Action for U.S. Patent Application No. 11/863,581, mailed February 6, 2008 (Attorney's File No. 5550-47-CON-2)

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
-----------------------	--	--------------------	--

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Substitute for form 1449A/PTO				Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT				Application Number	Not yet assigned
				Filing Date	Herewith
				First Named Inventor	Tzannes
				Art Unit	Not yet assigned
				Examiner Name	Not yet assigned
Sheet	3	of	3	Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3

	31	Notice of Allowance for U.S. Patent Application No. 11/863,581, mailed October 8, 2008 (Attorney's File No. 5550-47-CON-2)
--	----	---

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	
-----------------------	--	--------------------	--

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference is considered, whether or not citation is in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN

(11)Publication number : 10-084329

(43)Date of publication of application : 31.03.1998

(51)Int.Cl. H04J 11/00

(21)Application number : 08-238917

(71)Applicant : NIPPON HOSO KYOKAI <NHK>

(22)Date of filing : 10.09.1996

(72)Inventor : SATO SHOE
SAITO TOMOHIRO
MORIYAMA SHIGEKI

(54) TRANSMISSION METHOD FOR OFDM MODULATION SIGNAL, OFDM TRANSMITTER AND RECEIVER

(57)Abstract:

PROBLEM TO BE SOLVED: To prevent production of distortion by spreading a reference phase of each carrier of the frequency orthogonal division multiplex (OFDM) system and changing the amplitude of each carrier of the OFDM without giving effect on transmitted information so as to suppress a peak level of signals.

SOLUTION: After multiplying a complex code series e^{jksk} ($S_k = pk^2$, p is an optional real number not being zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, N is a total carrier number) with an input coded signal, inverse FFT is applied to the product to generate an OFDM modulation signal and it is transmitted. At a receiver side, a complex code series e^{jksk} (S_k is the same as above) is multiplied with a signal resulting from FFT processing to a received signal and an OFDM demodulation signal is obtained. The information relating to the e^{jksk} required for demodulation is included in the input coded information, or sent in advance from the transmitter side to the receiver side through other transmission line. Thus, the reference phases of each carrier of the OFDM are hardly arranged and the level of transmission signals is suppressed and the resulting signal is sent, then an operating point of amplifiers is set higher.

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

CLAIMS

[Claim(s)]

[Claim 1]In the transmitting side, it is a complex code sequence to an input encoded signal.

[External Character 1]

$e^{j S_k}$

(— the signal which they generated the OFDM modulation signal here and transmitted to it as reverse FFT of $S_k = pk^2$, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and the N was carried out after they carried out the multiplication of total number of careers) here, and carried out FFT of the input signal in the receiver — a complex code sequence [External Character 2]

$e^{-j S_k}$

A transmission method of an OFDM modulation signal carrying out the multiplication of (S_k is the same here to said S_k), and acquiring an OFDM demodulation signal.

[Claim 2]Said complex code sequence required for an OFDM recovery [in / on a transmission method of the OFDM signal according to claim 1, and / a receiver] [External Character 3]

$e^{-j S_k}$

the arbitrary real numbers $S_k = pk^2$ and whose p are not zero here. A transmission method of an OFDM modulation signal, wherein $0 \leq k \leq N$ and N include the information about the total number of careers in said input encoded signal or transmit it to a receiver beforehand from the transmitting side in transmission lines other than the transmission line for OFDM transmission concerned.

[Claim 3]It is a complex code sequence to an input encoded signal at least. [External Character 4]

$e^{j S_k}$

(— the OFDM sending set which $S_k = pk^2$, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and N are provided with the means which carries out the multiplication of total number of careers) here, and is characterized by things.

[Claim 4]It is a complex code sequence to a signal which carried out FFT of the input signal at least. [External Character 5]

$e^{-j S_k}$

(— the OFDM receiving set which $S_k = pk^2$, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and N are provided with the means which carries out the multiplication of total number of careers) here, and is characterized by things.

[Claim 5]In a transmission method of an OFDM modulation signal which generates a modulating signal of either BPSKOFDM and a QPSKOFDM modulating signal, and is transmitted, After carrying out the multiplication of two or more constants which make equal amplitude of positive [of a phase which said one of modulating signals can take], and a negative ingredient in an

amplitude peak period of one of said modulating signals according to a value of an input encoded signal, respectively, A transmission method of an OFDM modulation signal characterized by carrying out reverse FFT, generating an OFDM modulation signal, and making it transmit.

[Claim 6]In an OFDM sending set which generates a modulating signal of either BPSKOFDM and a QPSKOFDM modulating signal, and transmits, An OFDM sending set which is provided with a means which carries out the multiplication of two or more constants which make equal amplitude of positive [of a phase which said one of modulating signals can take at least], and a negative ingredient in an amplitude peak period of one of said modulating signals according to a value of an input encoded signal, respectively, and is characterized by things.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any damages caused by the use of this translation.

- 1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
- 2.*** shows the word which can not be translated.
- 3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[Detailed Description of the Invention]

[0001]

[Field of the Invention]In a broadcasting satellite, in order to use the generating electric power by a solar cell, the output of a relay amplifier has restriction, but. This invention, A transmission method and an OFDM sending set of a frequency rectangular cross division multiplex (OFDM:Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing) modulating signal suitable for using it for digital broadcasting in such a satellite system (as opposed to a ground system), etc., It is related with a receiving set.

[0002]

[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]Conventionally, there are phase modulations, such as BPSK and QPSK, in the modulation method of each career of OFDM. In these modulation methods, the reference phase of each career by which multiplex was carried out is constant, and, in the case of BPSK, in the case of a binary and QPSK, the phase which each modulating signal can take is restricted with four value. Therefore, in the phase of each career, by this method, the peak of amplitude may occur on a set or the OFDM time base signal which becomes empty.

[0003]For example, in the relay amplifier for broadcast, while generating electric power and amplifier efficiency have restriction, in order to secure the rate of a service period, and the rate of a place, it is used near the saturation region. In order to secure the rate of a service period, and the rate of a place also in digital broadcasting using an OFDM modulation method, to take the high operating point of an amplifier is desired. However, it is one side, and if the high operating point is taken in this way, in the amplitude peak of an OFDM modulation signal, it will become easy to generate distortion.

[0004]In the situation which has restriction in the above generating electric power and amplifier efficiency, the purpose of this invention is to suppress the amplitude peak of an OFDM signal and to perform little transmission in the high operating point.

[0005]

[Means for Solving the Problem]It is going to control an amplitude peak of a signal by diffusing a reference phase of OFDM each career, or changing amplitude of OFDM each career, without affecting information which should be transmitted in this invention, in order to attain the above-mentioned purpose. In order to make diffusion of these reference phases thru/or change of amplitude perform, in this invention, the multiplication of the specific signal (S) is carried out so that an input encoded signal may not be affected at transmitted data (a case where it amends by a receiver so that it may not be affected is included), OFDM modulation is performed based on it, and each career is transmitted.

[0006]When carrying out signal (S) multiplication and diffusing a reference phase of each career now, a phase of each career becomes difficult to gather and can be transmitted by suppressing a peak of amplitude. In this case, in a receiver, the multiplication of the signal (S*) corresponding to a signal (S) which carried out multiplication at the above-mentioned transmitting side is carried out to an OFDM demodulation signal, and right information is restored.

[0007]When each career does not have information in amplitude directions, such as BPSK and QPSK, in carrying out the multiplication of the signal (S) at the transmitting side, transmission

which suppressed a signal peak is performed by choosing a signal (S) which carries out multiplication so that amplitude of a carrier with which phases produce an amplitude peak together, and a carrier with an ingredient of an opposite phase may be enlarged -- things can be carried out. Here, since multiplication of a signal (S) can be performed only by calculation by a discrete time, it can respond flexibly with software.

[0008]That is, a transmission method of this invention OFDM modulation signal is a complex code sequence to an input encoded signal in the transmitting side. [External Character 6]

$$e^{i S_k}$$

(-- a signal which they generated an OFDM modulation signal here and transmitted to it as reverse FFT of $S_k = pk^2$, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and the N was carried out after they carried out the multiplication of total number of carriers) here, and carried out FFT of the input signal in a receiver -- a complex code sequence [External Character 7]

$$e^{-i S_k}$$

The multiplication of (S_k is the same here to said S_k) is carried out, and the OFDM demodulation signal was acquired.

[0009]Said complex code sequence which needs the transmission method of this invention OFDM modulation signal for the OFDM recovery in a receiver [External Character 8]

$$e^{-i S_k}$$

the arbitrary real numbers $S_k = pk^2$ and whose p are not zero here. $0 \leq k \leq N$ and N include the information about the total number of carriers in said input encoded signal, or transmitted it to the receiver beforehand from the transmitting side in transmission lines other than the transmission line for OFDM transmission concerned.

[0010]this invention OFDM sending set is a complex code sequence to an input encoded signal at least. [External Character 9]

$$e^{i S_k}$$

($S_k = pk^2$, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and N are provided with the means which carries out the multiplication of total number of carriers) here

[0011]this invention OFDM receiving set is a complex code sequence to the signal which carried out FFT of the input signal at least. [External Character 10]

$$e^{-i S_k}$$

($S_k = pk^2$, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and N are provided with the means which carries out the multiplication of total number of carriers) here

[0012]A transmission method of this invention OFDM modulation signal, In a transmission method of an OFDM modulation signal which generates a modulating signal of either BPSKOFDM and a QPSKOFDM modulating signal, and is transmitted, After carrying out the multiplication of two or more constants which make equal amplitude of positive [of a phase which said one of modulating signals can take], and a negative ingredient in an amplitude peak period of one of said modulating signals according to a value of an input encoded signal, respectively, Reverse FFT is carried out, an OFDM modulation signal is generated, and it was made to transmit.

[0013]In an OFDM sending set which this invention OFDM sending set generates a modulating signal of either BPSKOFDM and a QPSKOFDM modulating signal, and transmits, It has a means which carries out the multiplication of two or more constants which make equal amplitude of positive [of a phase which said one of modulating signals can take at least], and a negative ingredient in an amplitude peak period of one of said modulating signals according to a value of an input encoded signal, respectively.

[0014]

[Embodiment of the Invention]With reference to an accompanying drawing, this invention is explained in detail based on an embodiment of the invention below. Drawing 1 is a transmission

code series (input encoded signal).
[External Character 11]

X_k

*** – To the signal which carried out the parallel conversion, it is an example of a numerals system. [External Character 12]

S_k

(book specification preceding paragraph shows one embodiment of the OFDM sending set by this invention which only carries out the multiplication of (having expressed with S)), and is transmitted. This embodiment is an embodiment which diffuses a phase to BPSKOFDM and controls a signal peak.

[0015]In drawing 1, it is a code sequence as an input encoded signal. [External Character 13]

X_k

Direct in the serial/parallel conversion machine 1 – Carry out a parallel conversion and it is made a parallel signal, Furthermore, an OFDM modulation signal is acquired from an output terminal of the converter 3 via reverse FFT circuit (Invers Fast Fourier Transform circuit) 2 and the parallel serial change machine 3. It is a process of the usual OFDM modulation signal generation so far (however, when there is no multiplier 4 in drawing 1).

[0016]On the other hand, a code sequence which the multiplier 4 is inserted, respectively between each parallel line between the serial/parallel conversion machine 1 and the reverse FFT (IFFT) circuit 2, and is an input encoded signal as this invention is shown in drawing 1 [External Character 14]

X_k

Code sequence [External Character 15]

S_k

Multiplication is performed in between and the multiplication result is supplied to reverse FFT circuit 2. The composition of drawing 1 is [in / are an example and / this invention] a code sequence. [External Character 16]

X_k

It is alike and a code sequence. [External Character 17]

S_k

What is necessary is just the composition by which multiplication is carried out to *****, and it is not necessary to follow circuit arrangement shown in drawing 1.

[0017]Here, it is an input code sequence. [External Character 18]

X_k

It is a code sequence of ** and the binary (–either 1 or 1 is taken) of N pieces, and is a code sequence. [External Character 19]

S_k

***** [External Character 20]

X_k

A complex code sequence at least for ** to diffuse a phase [External Character 21]

$e^{i S_k}$

It comes out. S_k is a known series beforehand in a receiver, for example, the time delay of each career is proportional to frequency -- as [Equation 1]
 $S_k = p k^2$

However, the arbitrary real numbers whose p is not zero, $0 \leq k \leq N$, and N are the total numbers of careers.

In this way, the input code sequence of a binary [External Character 22]

X_k

A compound code sequence for ** and phase diffusion [External Character 23]

$e^{j S_k}$

Multiplication is mutually carried out by the multiplier 4. The OFDM modulation signal by which phase diffusion was carried out as a result of multiplication

[External Character 24]

T_k

It is obtained by the output terminal of the ** parallel serial converter 3.

[0018] Drawing 2 (a) and (b) is a code sequence (complex code sequence) to the BPSKOFDM modulating-signal generate time mentioned above.

[External Character 25]

S_k

An example of a constellation of each career of a modulating signal a time (the usual BPSKOFDM) of not carrying out multiplication and when multiplication is carried out by this invention is shown, respectively. Drawing 3 (a) and (b) shows an example of a signal wave form of an OFDM modulation signal corresponding to them, respectively. It turns out that it is transmitted as a signal (drawing 3 (b)) with which a phase of each career becomes difficult to gather compared with a case where phase diffusion of the time base waveform of a signal by which phase diffusion was carried out is not carried out (drawing 2 (b)), and a peak of amplitude was suppressed from drawing 2 and drawing 3.

[0019] A signal which carried out FFT of the input signal with which drawing 4 received a signal (that is, phase diffusion was carried out and transmitted) transmitted by an above-mentioned method

[External Character 26]

R_k

It is alike and is a complex code sequence. [External Character 27]

S_k^*

(-- this specification preceding paragraph -- only (S_k^*) -- a table -- the bottom --) -- carrying out multiplication -- a right received code series [External Character 28]

X_k

One embodiment of an OFDM receiving set by this invention to restore is shown.

[0020] In drawing 4, it is an input signal.

[External Character 29]

R_k

Direct in the serial/parallel conversion machine 5 - A parallel conversion is carried out, it is made a parallel signal, and an OFDM recovery is further carried out in FFT circuit 6. It is a complex code sequence to this OFDM demodulation signal to which it restored. [External

Character 30]

S_k^*

Each multiplier 7 for carrying out multiplication is arranged between FFT circuit (fast Fourier Transform circuit) 6 and the parallel serial conversion circuit 8.

[0021]Complex code sequence [External Character 31]

S_k^*

It is a complex code sequence at ** and the transmitting side at the time of OFDM modulation.

[External Character 32]

$e^{j S_k}$

The signal with which phase diffusion also of the receiver was carried out since multiplication was carried out and phase diffusion of the modulated wave was carried out will be received, and it is a right received code series as it is. [External Character 33]

X_k

Specifically at the code sequence for carrying out reverse correction of it becoming impossible to restore, it is a complex code sequence. [External Character 34]

$e^{-j S_k}$

(S_k is a known series beforehand in a receiver, for example, is $S_k=k^2$;; however $0<K<N$ (N: total number of careers)). A code sequence restored eventually [External Character 35]

X_k

It is a code sequence of 1 or 1 [-] of k **.

[0022]Thereby, it is an input signal.

[External Character 36]

R_k

FFT is carried out by FFT6 through the ** serial/parallel conversion 5, and it is inputted into the multiplication terminal of the multiplier 7. On the other hand, it is a code sequence of a reverse correction sake about phase diffusion. [External Character 37]

S_k^*

In *****, it is known beforehand and is inputted into a multiplication terminal of the multiplier 7. In an output multiplier, it is a received code series of a binary (-1, 1). [External Character 38]

X_k

It ***** and is taken out via the parallel serial converter 8.

[0023]The complex code sequence which is needed above by a receiver for a right OFDM recovery [External Character 39]

$e^{-j S_k}$

It must be transmitted to a receiver in ** and a certain form. This is a complex code sequence.

[External Character 40]

$e^{-j S_k}$

The very thing is not transmitted but information which it can reproduce by a receiver should just be sent. As a transmission method, it is made to contain in an input encoded signal at the transmitting side, and transmits in a transmitted symbol, or may transmit in a transmission line different from it.

[0024]A code sequence used in this invention when performing OFDM modulation and a recovery

by drawing 1 and drawing 4, respectively [External Character 41]

S_k

[External Character 42]

S_k

** -- a transmission code series a peak is still more apt to break off even if this changes a transmission code series for every symbol by a known method at the transmitting side, and transmits by performing phase diffusion and it is made to carry out reverse correction by a receiver, although it was considered as a regularity (it does not change) thing in time [External Character 43]

X_k

Being spread is possible.

[0025] In consideration of the case where the amplitude of each career of an OFDM signal has information in the above-mentioned example (actually, in BPSKOFDM of the above-mentioned example, it does not have, but in the case of the multiple value QAMOFDM, it has information), it is the transmitting side and is a complex code sequence. [External Character 44]

S_k

Since multiplication is carried out, and the topology will be lost if phase diffusion is carried out, in order to recover this, it is a receiver, and it is a complex code sequence. [External Character 45]

S_k

Multiplication was carried out.

[0026] On the other hand, in BPSKOFDM and QPSKOFDM, there is information only in the phase of each career and it does not have information in the amplitude direction of each career. Then, in BPSKOFDM, it is drawing 1, for example. [External Character 46]

S_k

It carries out and is a transmission code series. [External Character 47]

X_k

case $N/(2N_1)$ of ** 1, and a case of $1 [-] - N/(2N_2)$ -- the multiplication of the constant shall be carried out to a transmission code series (equivalent to an input encoded signal), respectively It is here, and N is symbol length and N_1 and N_2 is in a symbol, respectively.

[External Character 48]

X_k

It is the number of ** 1 and -1. By carrying out like this, it is a transmission signal.

[External Character 49]

T_k

Since a size of an ingredient 1, -1 or positive, and negative becomes equal at a ***** peak period, a peak of amplitude can be suppressed and transmitted like the above-mentioned example. In this case, in a receiver, since it does not have information in an amplitude direction of each career, reverse correction of career diffusion for right decoding is not needed.

[0027]

[Effect of the Invention] According to this invention, as explained above, also in the amplifier which has restriction in generating electric power, such as satellite broadcasting, it has the purpose of securing a hour rate and the rate of a place, and even if it makes it operate in the

higher operating point, it becomes possible to carry out little distorted OFDM transmission.

[Translation done.]

(19) 日本国特許庁 (J P)

(12) 公開特許公報 (A)

(11) 特許出願公開番号

特開平10-84329

(43) 公開日 平成10年(1998) 3月31日

(51) Int.Cl. ⁶	識別記号	庁内整理番号	F I	技術表示箇所
H 0 4 J 11/00			H 0 4 J 11/00	Z

審査請求 未請求 請求項の数 6 O L (全 7 頁)

(21) 出願番号	特願平8-238917	(71) 出願人	000004352 日本放送協会 東京都渋谷区神南2丁目2番1号
(22) 出願日	平成8年(1996) 9月10日	(72) 発明者	佐藤 庄衛 東京都世田谷区砧1丁目10番11号 日本放送協会 放送技術研究所内
		(72) 発明者	斉藤 知弘 東京都世田谷区砧1丁目10番11号 日本放送協会 放送技術研究所内
		(72) 発明者	森山 繁樹 東京都世田谷区砧1丁目10番11号 日本放送協会 放送技術研究所内
		(74) 代理人	弁理士 杉村 暁秀 (外3名)

(54) 【発明の名称】 OFDM変調信号の伝送方法およびOFDM送信装置、受信装置

(57) 【要約】 (修正有)

【課題】 OFDM変調方式を用いたデジタル放送において、サービス時間率、場所率を確保するためには増幅器の動作点を高くすると、OFDM変調信号のピークにおいて歪みを発生し易くなる。

【解決手段】 送信側においては、入力符号化信号

$$X_k$$

に複素符号系列

$$e^{j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、 p はゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、 N は総キャリア数)を乗算(4)した後逆FFT(2)するようにしてOFDM変調信号

$$T_k$$

を生成して送信し、受信側においては、受信信号をFFTした信号に複素符号系列

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

(ここに、 S_k は上記 S_k に同じ)を乗算してOFDM復調出力信号を得るようにした。

【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項1】 送信側においては、入力符号化信号に複素符号系列

【外1】

$$e^{j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、 p はゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、 N は総キャリア数)を乗算した後逆FFTするようにしてOFDM変調信号を生成して送信し、受信側においては、受信信号をFFTした信号に複素符号系列

【外2】

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

(ここに、 S_k は前記 S_k に同じ)を乗算してOFDM復調信号を得るようにしたことを特徴とするOFDM変調信号の伝送方法。

【請求項2】 請求項1記載のOFDM信号の伝送方法において、受信側におけるOFDM復調のために必要な前記複素符号系列

【外3】

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、 p はゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、 N は総キャリア数)に関する情報を、前記入力符号化信号に含ませ、または当該OFDM伝送用伝送路以外の伝送路にて送信側から受信側に予め伝送するようにしたことを特徴とするOFDM変調信号の伝送方法。

【請求項3】 少なくとも入力符号化信号に複素符号系列

【外4】

$$e^{j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、 p はゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、 N は総キャリア数)を乗算する手段を具えてなることを特徴とするOFDM送信装置。

【請求項4】 少なくとも受信信号をFFTした信号に複素符号系列

【外5】

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、 p はゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、 N は総キャリア数)を乗算する手段を具えてなることを特徴とするOFDM受信装置。

【請求項5】 BPSKOFDMおよびQPSKOFDM変調信号のいずれかの変調信号を生成して送信するOFDM変調信号の伝送方法において、前記いずれかの変調信号がとりうる位相の正と負の成分の振幅を、前記いずれかの変調信号の振幅ピーク時において等しくするような複数の定数を入力符号化信号の値に応じてそれぞれ乗算した後、逆FFTしてOFDM変調信号を生成して送信するようにしたことを特徴とするOFDM変調信号の伝送方法。

【請求項6】 BPSKOFDMおよびQPSKOFD

10

20

30

40

50

M変調信号のいずれかの変調信号を生成して送信するOFDM送信装置において、少なくとも前記いずれかの変調信号がとりうる位相の正と負の成分の振幅を、前記いずれかの変調信号の振幅ピーク時において等しくするような複数の定数を入力符号化信号の値に応じてそれぞれ乗算する手段を具えてなることを特徴とするOFDM送信装置。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【0001】

【発明の属する技術分野】 放送衛星においては、太陽電池による発生電力を使用するため、中継増幅器の出力に制限があるが、本発明は、そのような衛星系(地上系に対して)でのデジタル放送等に使用するのに適している周波数直交分割多重(OFDM: Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing)変調信号の伝送方法およびOFDM送信装置、受信装置に関する。

【0002】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】 従来、OFDMの各キャリアの変調方式には、BPSK、QPSKなどの位相変調がある。これらの変調方式では多重された各キャリアの基準位相は一定であり、各変調信号のとりうる位相はBPSKの場合2値、QPSKの場合4値と限られている。従って、この方式では各キャリアの位相がそろいやすく、OFDM時間軸信号上に振幅のピークが発生する可能性がある。

【0003】 例えば、放送用中継増幅器においては、発生電力、増幅器効率に制限があるなかでサービス時間率、場所率を確保するために飽和領域付近で使用されている。また、OFDM変調方式を用いたデジタル放送においてもサービス時間率、場所率を確保するためには増幅器の動作点を高くとることが望まれる。しかし一方で、このように動作点を高くすると、OFDM変調信号の振幅ピークにおいて歪みを発生し易くなる。

【0004】 本発明の目的は、上記のような発生電力、増幅器効率に制限がある状況において、OFDM信号の振幅ピークを抑え高い動作点で歪みの少ない伝送を行うことにある。

【0005】

【課題を解決するための手段】 上記目的を達成するため、本発明においては、伝送すべき情報に影響を与えることなく、OFDM各キャリアの基準位相を拡散させ、または、OFDM各キャリアの振幅を変化させることによって信号の振幅ピークを抑制しようとするものである。これら基準位相の拡散、ないし振幅の変化を行わせるために、本発明では、入力符号化信号に伝送情報に影響を与えないように(受信側で、影響を与えないように補正する場合を含む)特定の信号(S)を乗算し、それをもとにOFDM変調を行い、各キャリアの伝送を行う。

【0006】 いま、信号(S)乗算して各キャリアの基

3

準位相を拡散させる場合、各キャリアの位相はそろいにくくなり、振幅のピークを抑えて伝送を行うことができる。この場合、受信側において、上記送信側で乗算した信号(S)に対応した信号(S*)をOFDM復調信号に乗算して正しい情報を復元するようになる。

【0007】また、各キャリアがBPSK、QPSKなど振幅方向に情報を持たない場合、送信側で信号(S)を乗算するにあたり、位相がそろって振幅ピークを生じるキャリアと逆位相の成分を持つキャリアの振幅を大きくするように乗算する信号(S)を選ぶことによって、信号ピークを抑えた伝送を行うことができる。ここで、信号(S)の乗算は離散時間での計算だけで行うことができるため、ソフトウェアによって柔軟に対応することができる。

【0008】すなわち、本発明OFDM変調信号の伝送方法は、送信側においては、入力符号化信号に複素符号系列

【外6】

$$e^{j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、pはゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、Nは総キャリア数)を乗算した後逆FFTするようにしてOFDM変調信号を生成して送信し、受信側においては、受信信号をFFTした信号に複素符号系列

【外7】

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

(ここに、 S_k は前記 S_k に同じ)を乗算してOFDM復調信号を得るようにしたことを特徴とするものである。

【0009】また、本発明OFDM変調信号の伝送方法は、受信側におけるOFDM復調のために必要な前記複素符号系列

【外8】

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、pはゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、Nは総キャリア数)に関する情報を、前記入力符号化信号に含ませ、または当該OFDM伝送用伝送路以外の伝送路にて送信側から受信側に予め伝送するようにしたことを特徴とするものである。

【0010】また、本発明OFDM送信装置は、少なくとも入力符号化信号に複素符号系列

【外9】

$$e^{j S_k}$$

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、pはゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、Nは総キャリア数)を乗算する手段を具備することを特徴とするものである。

【0011】また、本発明OFDM受信装置は、少なくとも受信信号をFFTした信号に複素符号系列

【外10】

$$e^{-j S_k}$$

4

(ここに、 $S_k = p k^2$ 、pはゼロでない任意の実数、 $0 \leq k \leq N$ 、Nは総キャリア数)を乗算する手段を具備することを特徴とするものである。

【0012】また、本発明OFDM変調信号の伝送方法は、BPSKOFDMおよびQPSKOFDM変調信号のいずれかの変調信号を生成して送信するOFDM変調信号の伝送方法において、前記いずれかの変調信号がとりうる位相の正と負の成分の振幅を、前記いずれかの変調信号の振幅ピーク時において等しくするような複数の定数を入力符号化信号の値に応じてそれぞれ乗算した後、逆FFTしてOFDM変調信号を生成して送信するようにしたことを特徴とするものである。

【0013】また、本発明OFDM送信装置は、BPSKOFDMおよびQPSKOFDM変調信号のいずれかの変調信号を生成して送信するOFDM送信装置において、少なくとも前記いずれかの変調信号がとりうる位相の正と負の成分の振幅を、前記いずれかの変調信号の振幅ピーク時において等しくするような複数の定数を入力符号化信号の値に応じてそれぞれ乗算する手段を具備することを特徴とするものである。

【0014】

【発明の実施の形態】以下に添付図面を参照し、発明の実施の形態に基づいて本発明を詳細に説明する。図1は、送信符号系列(入力符号化信号)

【外11】

$$\begin{matrix} \cdot \\ X_k \end{matrix}$$

を直-並列変換した信号に、符号系列

【外12】

$$\begin{matrix} \cdot \\ S_k \end{matrix}$$

(本明細書前段では、単に(S)にて表した)を乗算して伝送する本発明によるOFDM送信装置の一実施形態を示している。なお、本実施形態は、BPSKOFDMに位相の拡散を行って信号ピークを抑制する実施形態である。

【0015】図1において、入力符号化信号としての符号系列

【外13】

$$\begin{matrix} \cdot \\ X_k \end{matrix}$$

をシリアル-パラレル変換器1において直-並列変換して並列信号にし、さらに逆FFT回路(Invers Fast Fourier Transform circuit)2およびパラレル-シリアル変換器3を介して変換器3の出力端子からOFDM変調信号が得られる。ここまでは通常のOFDM変調信号発生のプロセスである(但し、図1において乗算器4がない場合)。

【0016】これに対し、本発明においては、図1に示すように、シリアル-パラレル変換器1と逆FFT(I

(4)

特開平10-84329

FFT)回路2との間の各並列線の間それぞれ乗算器4を介挿し、入力符号化信号である符号系列

【外14】

$$\overset{5}{\dot{X}_k}$$

と符号系列
【外15】

$$\dot{S}_k$$

との間で乗算を行い、その乗算結果が逆FFT回路2に供給されるようにする。なお、図1の構成は一例であり、本発明においては、符号系列

【外16】

$$\dot{X}_k$$

に符号系列
【外17】

$$\dot{S}_k$$

が相互に乗算されるような構成であればよく、図1に示す回路配置に従う必要はない。

【0017】ここで、入力符号系列

【外18】

$$\dot{X}_k$$

は、N個の2値(1, -1のいずれかをとり)の符号系列であり、符号系列

【外19】

$$\dot{S}_k$$

は符号系列
【外20】

$$\dot{X}_k$$

の位相を拡散するための複素符号系列

【外21】

$$e^{j S_k}$$

である。(S_kは受信側で予め既知の系列であり、例えば、各キャリアの遅れ時間が周波数に比例するように、

【数1】

$$S_k = p k^2$$

ただし、pはゼロでない任意の実数、0 ≤ K ≤ N, Nは総キャリア数である。)

こうして、2値の入力符号系列

【外22】

$$\dot{X}_k$$

は、位相拡散のための複合符号系列

【外23】

$$e^{j S_k}$$

と乗算器4によって相互に乗算される。乗算の結果、位相拡散されたOFDM変調信号

【外24】

$$\dot{T}_k$$

がパラレル-シリアル変換器3の出力端子に得られる。

【0018】図2(a), (b)は、上述したBPSK OFDM変調信号生成時に符号系列(複素符号系列)

【外25】

$$\dot{S}_k$$

を乗算しない(通常のBPSK OFDM)ときと、本発明によって乗算したときの変調信号の各キャリアのコンスタレーションの一例をそれぞれ示している。また、図3(a), (b)は、それらに対応したOFDM変調信号の信号波形の一例をそれぞれ示している。図2および図3から、位相拡散された信号の時間軸波形は、位相拡散されない場合に比べ各キャリアの位相がそろいにくくなり(図2(b))、振幅のピークが抑えられた信号(図3(b))として伝送されることが分かる。

【0019】図4は、上述の方法で送信された(すなわち、位相拡散して送信された)信号を受信した受信信号をFFTした信号

【外26】

$$\dot{R}_k$$

に複素符号系列

【外27】

$$\dot{S}_k^*$$

(本明細書前段では、単に(S^{*})で表した)を乗算して正しい受信符号系列

【外28】

$$\dot{X}_k$$

を復元する本発明によるOFDM受信装置の一実施形態を示している。

【0020】図4において、受信信号

【外29】

$$\dot{R}_k$$

をシリアル-パラレル変換器5において直-並列変換して並列信号にし、さらにFFT回路6においてOFDM復調する。この復調されたOFDM復調信号に複素符号系列

【外30】

$$\dot{S}_k^*$$

を乗算するための各乗算器7がFFT回路(fast Fourier Transform circuit)6とパラレル-シリアル変換回

路8との間に配置される。

【0021】複素符号系列
【外31】

$$S_k$$

は、送信側でOFDM変調時に複素符号系列
【外32】

$$e^{j} S_k$$

を乗算し、変調波を位相拡散させたため、受信側でも位相拡散された信号が受信されてしまい、そのままでは正しい受信符号系列

【外33】

$$X_k$$

を復元できなくなるのを逆補正するための符号系列で、具体的には、複素符号系列

【外34】

$$e^{-j} S_k$$

(S_k は受信側で予め既知の系列であり、例えば、 $S_k = k^2$;ただし $0 \leq k \leq N$ (N :総キャリア数))である。また、最終的に復元される符号系列

【外35】

$$X_k$$

はk個の1または-1の符号系列である。

【0022】これにより、受信信号

【外36】

$$R_k$$

はシリアル-パラレル変換5を経てFFT6によりFFTされ乗算器7の被乗算端子に入力される。一方、位相拡散を逆補正ための符号系列

【外37】

$$S_k$$

は受信側において予め既知であり、乗算器7の乗算端子に入力される。乗算器出力には2値(-1, 1)の受信符号系列

【外38】

$$X_k$$

が復元され、パラレル-シリアル変換器8を介して取り出される。

【0023】以上において、正しいOFDM復調のために受信側で必要となる複素符号系列

【外39】

$$e^{-j} S_k$$

は、何らかのかたちで受信側に伝送されなければならない。これは複素符号系列

【外40】

そのものを伝送するのではなく、それが受信側で再現できる情報が送られればよい。伝送方法としては、送信側で入力符号化信号に含ませ、伝送済みのシンボルの中で伝送しておくか、それとは別の伝送路で伝送してもよい。

【0024】また、図1、図4でそれぞれOFDM変調および復調を行う際に本発明において使用する符号系列

【外41】

$$S_k$$

【外42】

$$S_k$$

【外43】

$$X_k$$

は時間的に一定(変化しない)ものとしたが、これは、送信符号系列を送信側で既知の方法でシンボルごとに変化させ位相拡散を行って伝送し、受信側で逆補正するようにしても、なおピークのたぢやすい送信符号系列

【外43】

$$X_k$$

を拡散することが可能である。

【0025】上述例においては、OFDM信号の各キャリアの振幅が情報をもつ場合を考慮して(実際には、上述例のBPSKOFDMの場合には情報をもたないが、多値QAMOFDMの場合には情報をもつ)、送信側で複素符号系列

【外44】

$$S_k$$

を乗算して位相拡散させると、その位相情報が失われるため、これを回復させるために受信側で複素符号系列

【外45】

$$S_k$$

を乗算した。

【0026】これに対し、BPSKOFDM、QPSKOFDMなどでは各キャリアの位相のみに情報があり、各キャリアの振幅方向には情報をもたない。そこで、例えばBPSKOFDMの場合、図1の

【外46】

$$S_k$$

として、送信符号系列

【外47】

$$X_k$$

が1の場合 $N/(2N_1)$ 、また、-1の場合 $N/(2N_2)$ なる定数をそれぞれ送信符号系列(入力符号化信号に相当)に乗算するものとする。ここで、Nはシンボル長、 N_1 、 N_2 はそれぞれシンボル中の

【外48】

$$\dot{X}_k$$

の1, -1の個数である。こうすることにより、伝送信号

【外49】

$$\dot{T}_k$$

の振幅ピーク時には1と-1あるいは正と負の成分の大きさが等しくなるため、前述例と同様に振幅のピークを抑えて伝送することができる。この場合、受信側では、各キャリアの振幅方向には情報をもたないため、正しい符号復元のためのキャリア拡散の逆補正を必要としない。

【0027】

【発明の効果】以上説明したように、本発明によれば、衛星放送などの発生電力に制限のある増幅器においても、時間率、場所率を確保する目的をもって、より高い*

*動作点で動作させても歪の少ないOFDM伝送をすることが可能となる。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図1】本発明によるOFDM送信装置の一実施形態を示している。

【図2】従来および本発明によるOFDM変調信号の各キャリアのコンスタレーションの一例を示している。

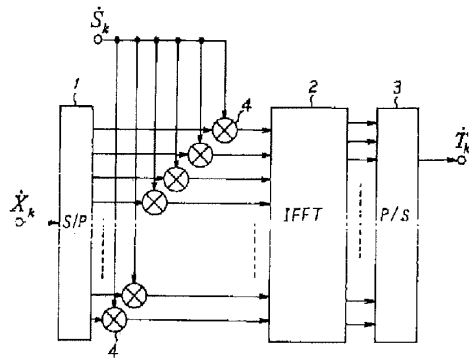
【図3】従来および本発明によるOFDM変調信号の信号波形の一例を示している。

【図4】本発明によるOFDM受信装置の一実施形態を示している。

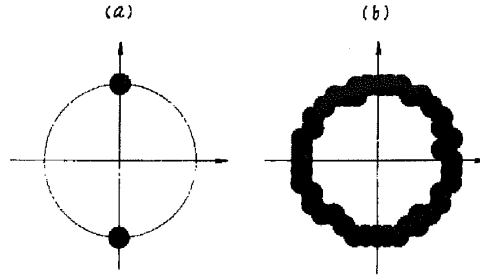
【符号の説明】

- 1, 5 シリアル-パラレル変換器
- 2 逆FFT回路
- 3, 8 パラレル-シリアル変換器
- 4, 7 乗算器
- 6 FFT回路

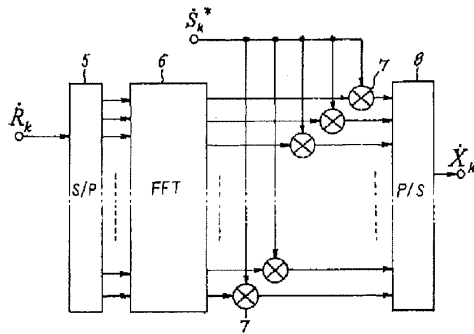
【図1】



【図2】



【図4】

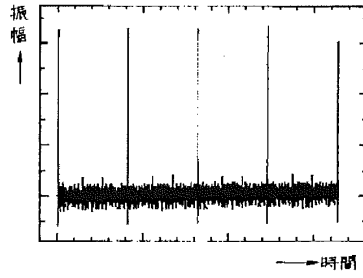


(7)

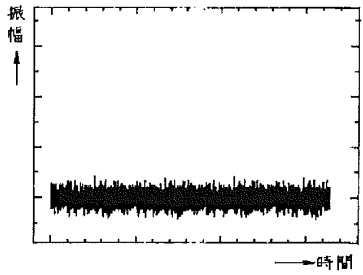
特開平10-84329

【圖3】

(a)



(b)



(19)



JAPANESE PATENT OFFICE

PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN

(11) Publication number: 08321820 A
(43) Date of publication of application: 03.12.1996

(51) Int. Cl H04J 11/00
H04J 1/00

(21) Application number: 07325996
(22) Date of filing: 14.12.1995
(30) Priority: 20.12.1994 JP 06316900
20.03.1995 JP 07 60732

(71) Applicant: MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC IND CO LTD
(72) Inventor: HAYASHINO YUJI
UNO YASUHIRO
HARADA YASUO
KIMURA TOMOHIRO
OUE YUJI

(54) TRANSMISSION METHOD FOR ORTHOGONAL FREQUENCY DIVISION/MULTIPLEX SIGNAL AND ITS TRANSMITTER AND/RECEIVER

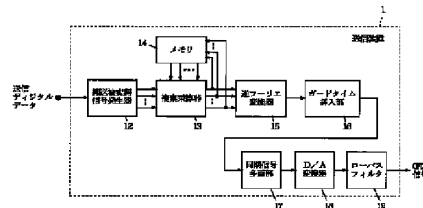
(57) Abstract:

PURPOSE: To effectively remove waveform distortion occurred in a data component on the frequency axis of respective symbols by means of a multipath and the like at the time of transmitting an OFDM signals.

CONSTITUTION: In a transmission device 1, a complex multiplier 13 complex-multiplies a carrier modulation signal group by a complex number signal group which has a previously decided special pattern and in which the phase changes at random. An inverse Fourier transformer 15 executes inverse Fourier transform against the output of the complex multiplier 13, and transforms a digital signal multiplexed on the frequency axis into the OFDM signal of a time axis. A guard time insertion part 16 adds front guard time to

the front parts of the respective symbols of the OFDM signal and rear guard time to rear parts. Data similar to the trailing end part of the corresponding symbol is included in front guard time, and data similar to the front end part of the corresponding symbol is included in rear guard time. The OFDM signals to which front guard time and rear guard time are added are transformed into analog signals and are transmitted to a reception-side. The reception-side executes a processing inverse to a transmission-side and therefore distortion owing to time delay is removed.

COPYRIGHT: (C)1996,JPO



(19) 日本国特許庁 (J P)

(12) 公開特許公報 (A)

(11) 特許出願公開番号

特開平8-321820

(43) 公開日 平成8年(1996)12月3日

(51) Int.Cl. ⁶	識別記号	庁内整理番号	F I	技術表示箇所
H 0 4 J 11/00			H 0 4 J 11/00	Z
1/00			1/00	

審査請求 未請求 請求項の数12 O L (全 14 頁)

(21) 出願番号	特願平7-325996	(71) 出願人	000005821 松下電器産業株式会社 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地
(22) 出願日	平成7年(1995)12月14日	(72) 発明者	林野 裕司 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器産業株式会社内
(31) 優先権主張番号	特願平6-316900	(72) 発明者	宇野 矢壽弘 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器産業株式会社内
(32) 優先日	平6(1994)12月20日	(72) 発明者	原田 泰男 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器産業株式会社内
(33) 優先権主張国	日本 (J P)	(74) 代理人	弁理士 小笠原 史朗
(31) 優先権主張番号	特願平7-60732		
(32) 優先日	平7(1995)3月20日		
(33) 優先権主張国	日本 (J P)		

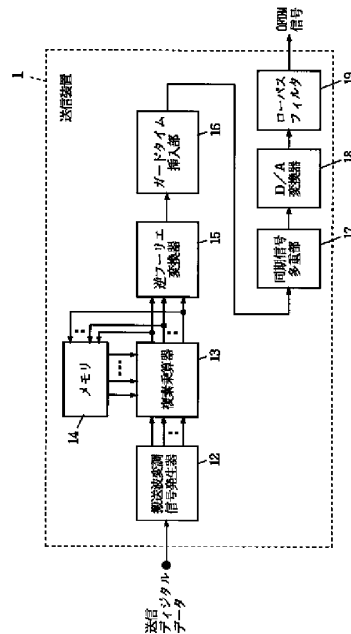
最終頁に続く

(54) 【発明の名称】 直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法ならびにその送信装置および受信装置

(57) 【要約】

【課題】 OFDM信号を伝送する際に、マルチパス等によって各シンボルの周波数軸上のデータ成分に生じる波形歪みを効果的に除去することである。

【解決手段】 送信装置において、複素乗算器13は、搬送波変調信号群と、予め定められた特定パターンを有しかつその位相がランダムに変化している複素数信号群とを複素乗算する。逆フーリエ変換器15は、複素乗算器13の出力に対して逆フーリエ変換を施し、周波数軸上で多重されたデジタル信号を、時間軸上のOFDM信号に変換する。ガードタイム挿入部16は、OFDM信号の各シンボルの前部に前部ガードタイムを、後部に後部ガードタイムを付加する。前部ガードタイムには対応するシンボルの後端部と同じデータが含まれ、後部ガードタイムには対応するシンボルの前端部と同じデータが含まれる。前部ガードタイムおよび後部ガードタイムが付加されたOFDM信号は、アナログ信号に変換された後、受信側に伝送される。受信側で送信側と逆の処理を行うことにより、時間遅延による歪みが除去される。



1

2

【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項1】 有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側から受信側に対して、所定長のシンボル毎に直交周波数分割多重信号を送信する方法であって、周波数軸上で互いに直交する複数のキャリアの位相と振幅とを決定する搬送波変調信号群をシンボル毎に逆フーリエ変換することにより、時間軸上の前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する第1のステップと、前記直交周波数分割多重信号の各シンボルに対し、その前部にその後部部と同じデータを含む前部ガードタイムを付加するとともに、その後部にその前部部と同じデータを含む後部ガードタイムを付加して、前記受信側に送信する第2のステップとを備える、直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法。

【請求項2】 前記搬送波変調信号群と、基準複素数信号群とを周波数軸上で複素乗算する第3のステップをさらに備え、前記第1のステップは、前記第3のステップで得られた複素乗算結果を、前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する、請求項1に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法。

【請求項3】 前記第3のステップは、前記搬送波変調信号群の各シンボルについて、その一定シンボル前に複素乗算した結果を、前記基準複素数信号群として各前記搬送波変調信号群に複素乗算する、請求項2に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法。

【請求項4】 予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつ各信号の位相がランダムに変化している複素数信号群をシンボル毎に発生する第4のステップをさらに備え、前記第3のステップは、前記搬送波変調信号群の各シンボルについて、前記第4のステップで得られた複素数信号群を、前記基準複素数信号群として使用し、前記第1のステップは、常時は前記第3のステップで得られた複素乗算結果を前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、定期的に前記基準複素数信号群を前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する、請求項2に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法。

【請求項5】 所定長のシンボル毎に前記送信側から送信されてきた前記直交周波数分割多重信号を、前記搬送波変調信号群に対応する受信搬送波変調信号群に変換する第5のステップと、前記第5のステップで得られた受信信号群を、所定の基準複素数信号群により、周波数軸上で複素除算する第6のステップとを備える、請求項2に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法。

【請求項6】 有線または無線の伝送路を介し、受信側に、所定長のシンボル毎に直交周波数分割多重信号を送信する装置であって、基準複素数信号群を記憶するメモリ手段と、周波数軸上で互いに直交する複数のキャリアの位相と振

幅とを決定する搬送波変調信号群と、前記メモリ手段に記憶された前記基準複素数信号群とを周波数軸上で複素乗算し、送信搬送波変調信号群を出力する複素乗算手段と、前記複素乗算手段から出力される送信搬送波変調信号群に対して、各シンボル毎に逆フーリエ演算を施すことにより、当該送信搬送波変調信号群を、時間軸上の前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する逆フーリエ変換手段と、前記逆フーリエ変換手段から出力される前記直交周波数分割多重信号の各シンボルに対し、その前部にその後部部と同じデータを含む前部ガードタイムを付加するとともに、その後部にその前部部と同じデータを含む後部ガードタイムを付加するガードタイム付加手段と、前記前部ガードタイムおよび前記後部ガードタイムの付加された前記直交周波数分割多重信号を、各シンボル毎に前記受信側に送信する送信手段とを備える、直交周波数分割多重信号の送信装置。

【請求項7】 前記メモリ手段は、前記複素乗算手段の一定シンボル前の複素乗算結果を、前記基準複素数信号群として記憶する、請求項6に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の送信装置。

【請求項8】 前記メモリ手段は、予め定められた複素数信号群を、前記基準複素数信号群として記憶し、前記複素乗算手段は、前記搬送波変調信号群と、前記メモリ手段に記憶された前記基準複素数信号群とを周波数軸上で複素乗算して出力し、前記逆フーリエ変換手段は、常時はシンボル毎に前記複素乗算手段から出力された複素乗算結果を前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、定期的に前記メモリ手段から出力された前記基準複素数信号群を前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する、請求項6に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の送信装置。

【請求項9】 前記メモリ手段は、前記基準複素数信号群として疑似雑音信号を発生する疑似雑音信号発生手段の出力を保持していることを特徴とする、請求項8に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の送信装置。

【請求項10】 前記メモリ手段は、前記基準複素数信号群として周波数掃引信号を発生する周波数掃引信号発生手段の出力を保持していることを特徴とする、請求項8に記載の直交周波数分割多重信号の送信装置。

【請求項11】 有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側から所定長のシンボル毎に送信されてくる直交周波数分割多重信号を受信する装置であって、時間軸上の前記直交周波数分割多重信号に対して、シンボル毎にフーリエ変換演算を施すことにより、当該直交周波数分割多重信号を、周波数軸上の受信搬送波変調信号群に変換するフーリエ変換手段と、前記フーリエ変換手段から一定シンボル毎に出力された受信搬送波変調信号群を、受信基準複素数信号群として

記憶するメモリ手段と、

前記フーリエ変換手段から出力された受信搬送波変調信号群を、前記メモリ手段に記憶された受信基準複素数信号群により、周波数軸上で複素除算する複素除算手段とを備える、直交周波数分割多重信号の受信装置。

【請求項12】 有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側から受信側に対して、所定長のシンボル毎に直交周波数分割多重信号を送信する方法であって、

周波数軸上で互いに直交する複数のキャリアの位相と振幅とを決定するための搬送波変調信号群をシンボル毎に生成する第1のステップと、

予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつ各信号の位相がランダムに変化している複素数信号群を発生する第2のステップと、

前記搬送波変調信号群と前記複素数信号群とをシンボル毎に周波数軸上で複素乗算することにより、当該搬送波変調信号群の各信号の位相をランダム化する第3のステップと、

常時は前記第3のステップで各信号の位相がランダム化された搬送波変調信号群をシンボル毎に逆フーリエ変換して時間軸上の前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、定期的に前記複素数信号群を逆フーリエ変換して前記直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、それぞれを前記受信側に送信する第4のステップとを備える、直交周波数分割多重信号の伝送方法。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【0001】

【発明の属する技術分野】本発明は、直交周波数分割多重(Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing;以下、OFDMと称す)伝送方法に関し、より特定的には、有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側と受信側との間で、所定長のシンボルと当該シンボル間に配置された所定長のガードタイムとを含む直交周波数分割多重信号を用いてデータを伝送する方法に関する。

【0002】

【従来の技術】周知のごとく、OFDM伝送方式は、符号化したデータを分割して、数百以上の搬送波に振り分け、これを多重して伝送する方式である。近年、移動体向けデジタル音声放送や、地上デジタルテレビ放送等において、OFDM信号を用いた通信が着目されている。なぜならば、OFDM信号は、多量のデータの高速度伝送が可能で、波形等価器なしでも反射波による特性劣化が少なく、その信号波形がランダム雑音に近い形となるので、他のサービスに混信妨害を与えにくい等の特質を有しているからである。

【0003】このようなOFDM信号を用いた伝送方式は、1993年10月1日付け発行のNIKKI ELECTRONICS BOOKS「データ圧縮とデジタル変調」の第207～222頁において、郵政省、

通信総合研究所の福地一により書かれた「数百以上の搬送波を使うOFDMデジタル放送の移動受信に向く」に開示されている。

【0004】図13は上記先行文献に開示された従来のOFDM信号の送信装置の構成を示すブロック回路図であり、図14は図13の送信装置から送信されるOFDM信号の構成を示す図である。図13において、送信装置5は、直並列変換器52と、逆フーリエ変換器53と、並直列変換器54と、D/A変換器55と、ローパスフィルタ56とを備える。なお、図14において、

(a)はOFDM信号の直接波を示し、(b)はOFDM信号の反射波を示し、(c)はOFDM信号の合成波を示し、(d)は時間窓Wを示している。

【0005】送信装置5の直並列変換器52には、入力シンボル列が供給されている。入力シンボル列は、デジタル変調された送信データであり、1伝送シンボル中には複数のデータ値が含まれている。なお、デジタル変調方式としては、QPSK(quadrature phase shift keying)変調や、16QAM(quadrature amplitude modulation)等が採用される。直並列変換器52は、入力シンボル列を、1シンボル毎に、直並列変換して、より低速な複数のシンボル列にする。ここでの並列度は、逆フーリエ変換回路53で使用する複数の搬送波(相互に位相が直交している)の数(数十～数千、たとえば512)と同じになる。このような操作により、直並列変換器52は、逆フーリエ変換回路53で使用する複数の搬送波のそれぞれの振幅および位相を決定するための搬送波変調信号群を出力する。

【0006】逆フーリエ変換回路53は、搬送波変調信号群を、1シンボル毎に、周波数軸上に並ぶ各搬送波に割り当て(これによって、1シンボル分のデータが周波数軸上で多重された信号となる)、これらに対して一括的に逆フーリエ変換を施すことにより、時間軸上の多重信号(この段階では、並列のデジタル信号である)に変換する。

【0007】並直列変換器54は、時間軸上の多重信号を並直列変換することにより、離散的なOFDM信号を生成する。D/A変換回路55は、離散的なOFDM信号を、アナログのOFDMベースバンド信号に変換する。ローパスフィルタ56は、エイリアシングによるチャネル間干渉が生じないようにするため、OFDMベースバンド信号に帯域制限をかける。

【0008】上記のような一連の操作の結果、送信装置5は、伝送路に対し、図14に示すようなガードタイム G_m とシンボル S_m とを含むOFDM信号を出力する。図示しない復調装置は、伝送路を介して受信したOFDM信号に対して変調装置5と逆の信号処理を行い、入力シンボル列と同じ出力シンボル列を再生する。

【0009】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】ところで、伝送路上では、いわゆるマルチパスが発生する。このため、受信装置側では、送信装置から送信されてきたOFDM信号の直接波と、直接波から時間遅延した反射波とを重ねて受信する。シンボル S_m を例にとると、直接波(図14(a)参照)にマルチパスによる反射波(図14(b)参照)が重なった場合、合成波(図14(c)参照)のシンボル S_m の前端部に反射波のガードタイム G_m との干渉部 α_m が生じ、ガードタイム G_m の前端部に反射波のシンボル S_{m-1} との干渉部 β_m が生じる。このとき、干渉部 β_m は、時間窓 W からはずれているため、シンボル S_m のフーリエ変換には影響を及ぼさない。しかしながら、干渉部 α_m は、時間窓 W 内に生じ、かつガードタイム G_m のデータ成分が「0」であるため、フーリエ変換後の各シンボル S_m の周波数軸上のデータ成分に波形歪みを生じるという第1の問題点があった。

【0010】また、伝送路の遅延特性や、送信側のD/A変換器および受信側のA/D変換器のクロックが一致していないことに起因してサンプリングのタイミングにずれが生じる等の理由から、送信装置から受信装置に到達するまでの間に、OFDM信号に時間遅延が発生する。このため、受信装置では、時間窓 W を時間軸上で調整する必要があるという第2の問題点もあった。

【0011】また、直並列変換器52から出力される搬送波変調信号群は、その位相が相互に異なっているだけでなく、その位相がすべて同一の場合もありうる。例えば、デジタル音声放送では無音状態を1シンボル期間を超えて送信する場合に、地上デジタルテレビ放送では一色の映像を1シンボル期間を超えて送信する場合に、搬送波変調信号群の位相がすべて同一になる。また、有音状態を送信する場合や、多色の映像を送信する場合においても、QPSK変調や、16QAMのようなデジタル変調方式では、位相の異なる信号点の配点数が限られるため、搬送波変調信号群の位相がすべて同一になりやすい。

【0012】このように、搬送波変調信号群の位相がすべて同一になった場合、この搬送波変調信号群を逆フーリエ変換すると、時間軸上で各搬送波の節が一致し、加算増加箇所が時間軸上で一箇所に集中するため、時間軸上のOFDM信号の信号波形がインパルス状になり、電力集中が生じる。この様子を図15に示す。

【0013】図15(a)は、相互に直交する n 本の搬送波をそれぞれ変調する n 個の搬送波変調信号群の複素平面上での位相がすべて同一の場合を示している。図15(b)は、図15(a)の n 個の搬送波変調信号群で変調された n 本の搬送波を時間軸上で多重した状態を示している。このように搬送波変調信号群の位相がすべて同一の場合には、OFDM信号は、インパルス状の波形信号になる。なお、図15(c)は、相互に直交する n 本の搬送波をそれぞれ変調する n 個の搬送波変調信号群

の複素平面上での位相がランダムな場合を示している。また、図15(d)は、図15(c)の n 個の搬送波変調信号群で変調された n 本の搬送波を時間軸上で多重した状態を示している。このように、搬送波変調信号群の位相がすべて異なる場合には、OFDM信号は、時間軸上に平均的に拡散され、ランダム状の波形信号になる。

【0014】上記のように、搬送波変調信号群の位相がすべて同一になった場合、OFDM信号がインパルス状になり、最大電力が極端に大きくなるため、OFDM信号は、送受信装置や伝送路に含まれる中継増幅器(衛星やCATVなど)等の非線形性の影響を受けやすくなるという第3の問題点もあった。この場合、OFDM信号がインパルス状になっても、非線形性の影響を与えないように、送受信装置や中継増幅器等のダイナミックレンジを大きくすることも考えられるが、送受信装置や中継増幅器等が高価になるという別の問題が発生する。

【0015】それ故に、本発明の目的は、マルチパスにより反射波が直接波に重なった場合でも、フーリエ変換後の各シンボルの周波数軸上のデータ成分に波形歪みを生じないOFDM信号の伝送方法ならびにその送信装置および受信装置を提供することである。本発明の他の目的は、送信側から受信側に到達するまでの間に、OFDM信号に時間遅延が発生しても、時間窓の時間軸上での調整が容易なOFDM信号の伝送方法ならびにその送信装置および受信装置を提供することである。本発明のさらに他の目的は、安価な構成で、OFDM信号に対する非線形性の影響を軽減したOFDM信号の伝送方法ならびにその送信装置および受信装置を提供することである。

【0016】

【課題を解決するための手段および発明の効果】本発明の第1の局面は、有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側から受信側に対して、所定長のシンボル毎に直交周波数分割多重信号を送信する方法に向けられており、周波数軸上で互いに直交する複数のキャリアの位相と振幅とを決定する搬送波変調信号群をシンボル毎に逆フーリエ変換することにより、時間軸上の直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する第1のステップと、直交周波数分割多重信号の各シンボルに対し、その前部にその後部部と同じデータを含む前部ガードタイムを付加するとともに、その後部にその前部部と同じデータを含む後部ガードタイムを付加して、受信側に送信する第2のステップとを備えている。

【0017】上記のように、第1の局面では、OFDM信号の各シンボルを送信する際に、各シンボルの前部および後部に、そのシンボルの一部と同じデータを含む前部ガードタイムおよび後部ガードタイムを付加するようにしているので、受信側では、フーリエ変換時における時間窓が受信信号のシンボル区間から多少ずれても、時間軸上に並ぶ1シンボル区間内のすべてのデータ成分を

再生することができる。従って、送信側から受信側に到達するまでの間に、OFDM信号に時間遅延が発生しても、時間窓をシンボル区間に正確に一致させる必要がなくなり、時間窓の時間軸上での調整が容易になる。また、マルチパスにより直接波のシンボル区間と反射波のガードタイムとが重なっても、受信側でフーリエ変換後の周波数軸上に現れる各データ成分の振幅位相歪みは、各シンボル間ですべて一様なものとなる。したがって、簡単な演算処理（乗算、加算等）によって、受信側での1シンボル区間の周波数軸上のデータ成分から、容易にそれらの波形歪みを除去することが可能となる。

【0018】上記第1の局面において、好ましい実施形態では、搬送波変調信号群と基準複素数信号群とを周波数軸上で複素乗算し、この複素乗算結果をOFDM信号に変換して、受信側に伝送するようにしている。また、受信側では、送信側から送信されてきたOFDM信号を受信搬送波変調信号群に変換し、この受信搬送波変調信号群を、基準複素数信号群により、周波数軸上で複素除算するようにしている。これによって、送信側と受信側との間でOFDM信号に時間遅延が発生しても、受信側で時間遅延の影響のない復調データを得ることができる。

【0019】なお、搬送波変調信号群に複素乗算される基準複素数信号群としては、搬送波変調信号群の各シンボルについて、その一定シンボル前に複素乗算した結果を用いても良い。

【0020】また、予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつ各信号の位相がランダムに変化している複素数信号群を、基準複素数信号群として用いても良い。ただし、この場合、常時は第3のステップで得られた複素乗算結果がOFDM信号に変換され、定期的に基準複素数信号群がOFDM信号に変換される。これによって、搬送波変調信号群の各信号の絶対基準位相がランダムな値になり、逆フーリエ変換によって得られたOFDM信号に電力の時間集中がおこるのを抑制できる。従って、送信装置、受信装置および伝送路のダイナミックレンジを大きくする必要がなく、安価な構成で、送受信器や中継増幅器等の非線形性がOFDM信号に与える影響を軽減することができる。

【0021】本発明の第2の局面は、有線または無線の伝送路を介し、受信側に、所定長のシンボル毎に直交周波数分割多重信号を送信する装置に向けられており、基準複素数信号群を記憶するメモリ手段と、周波数軸上で互いに直交する複数のキャリアの位相と振幅とを決定する搬送波変調信号群と、メモリ手段に記憶された基準複素数信号群とを周波数軸上で複素乗算し、送信搬送波変調信号群を出力する複素乗算手段と、複素乗算手段から出力される送信搬送波変調信号群に対して、各シンボル毎に逆フーリエ変換を施すことにより、当該送信搬送波変調信号群を、時間軸上の直交周波数分割多重信号に変

換する逆フーリエ変換手段と、逆フーリエ変換手段から出力される直交周波数分割多重信号の各シンボルに対し、その前部にその後端部と同じデータを含む前部ガードタイムを付加するとともに、その後部にその前部部と同じデータを含む後部ガードタイムを付加するガードタイム付加手段と、前部ガードタイムおよび後部ガードタイムの付加された直交周波数分割多重信号を、各シンボル毎に受信側に送信する送信手段とを備えている。

【0022】上記第2の局面において、好ましい実施形態では、メモリ手段は、複素乗算手段の一定シンボル前の複素乗算結果を、基準複素数信号群として記憶している。

【0023】上記第2の局面において、他の好ましい実施形態では、メモリ手段は、予め定められた複素数信号群を、基準複素数信号群として記憶する。また、複素乗算手段は、搬送波変調信号群と、メモリ手段に記憶された基準複素数信号群とを周波数軸上で複素乗算して出力する。さらに、逆フーリエ変換手段は、常時はシンボル毎に複素乗算手段から出力された複素乗算結果を直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、定期的にメモリ手段から出力された基準複素数信号群を直交周波数分割多重信号に変換する。

【0024】上記第2の局面において、メモリ手段は、基準複素数信号群として、疑似雑音信号を発生する疑似雑音信号発生手段の出力を保持しても良いし、周波数掃引信号を発生する周波数掃引信号発生手段の出力を保持しても良い。

【0025】本発明の第3の局面は、有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側から所定長のシンボル毎に送信されてくる直交周波数分割多重信号を受信する装置に向けられており、時間軸上の直交周波数分割多重信号に対して、シンボル毎にフーリエ変換演算を施すことにより、当該直交周波数分割多重信号を、周波数軸上の受信搬送波変調信号群に変換するフーリエ変換手段と、フーリエ変換手段から一定シンボル毎に出力された受信搬送波変調信号群を、受信基準複素数信号群として記憶するメモリ手段と、フーリエ変換手段から出力された受信搬送波変調信号群を、メモリ手段に記憶された受信基準複素数信号群により、周波数軸上で複素除算する複素除算手段とを備えている。

【0026】本発明の第4の局面は、有線または無線の伝送路を介し、送信側から受信側に対して、所定長のシンボル毎に直交周波数分割多重信号を伝送する方法に向けられており、周波数軸上で互いに直交する複数のキャリアの位相と振幅とを決定するための搬送波変調信号群をシンボル毎に生成する第1のステップと、予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつ各信号の位相がランダムに変化している複素数信号群を発生する第2のステップと、搬送波変調信号群と複素数信号群とをシンボル毎に周波数軸上で複素乗算することにより、当該搬送波変調

信号群の各信号の位相をランダム化する第3のステップと、常時は第3のステップで各信号の位相がランダム化された搬送波変調信号群をシンボル毎に逆フーリエ変換して時間軸上の直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、定期的に複素数信号群を逆フーリエ変換して直交周波数分割多重信号に変換し、それぞれを受信側に送信する第4のステップとを備えている。

【0027】

【発明の実施の形態】以下、本発明の実施形態に係るOFDM信号の伝送方法ならびその送信装置および受信装置について、図面を参照しながら説明する。

【0028】図1は本発明の第1の実施形態の送信装置を示すブロック図であり、図2は本発明の第1の実施形態の受信装置の構成を示すブロック図であり、図3は本発明で用いるOFDM信号の構成の一例を示す図である。なお、図3において、(a)はOFDM信号の直接波を示し、(b)はOFDM信号の反射波を示し、(c)は時間遅延が生じた場合のOFDM信号の直接波を示し、(d)は時間遅延が生じた場合のOFDM信号の反射波を示し、(e)は時間窓Wを示している。

【0029】図1の送信装置1と、図2の受信装置2とは、同軸ケーブルや、光ファイバケーブル等の伝送路(図示せず)で接続されている。このような送信装置1および受信装置2は、たとえばデジタルCATVシステムにおいて用いられる。送信装置1は、OFDM信号を用い、受信装置2に対して、たとえばテレビの多チャンネル分の映像データを伝送するように構成されている。

【0030】図1において、送信装置1は、搬送波変調信号発生器12と、複素乗算器13と、メモリ14と、逆フーリエ変換器15と、ガードタイム挿入部16と、同期信号多重部17と、D/A変換器18と、ローパスフィルタ19とを備えている。

【0031】送信装置1の搬送波変調信号発生器12には、受信装置2に送信すべき送信デジタルデータ(ビットストリーム信号)が入力されている。搬送波変調信号発生器12は、入力された送信デジタルデータを、デジタル変調すると共に、1シンボル区間毎に直並列変換し、相互に直交するn本(n=数十~数千、たとえば512)の搬送波を変調するためのn個の搬送波変調信号を含む搬送波変調信号群に変換する。なお、デジタル変調方式としては、QPSK変調や、16QAM等が採用される。この段階での搬送波変調信号群は、従来の直並列変換器52(図13参照)から出力される搬送波変調信号群と同様である。搬送波変調信号発生器12から出力される搬送波変調信号群は、複素乗算器13に与えられる。メモリ14は、複素乗算器13から出力される搬送波変調信号群 D'_m を1シンボル分記憶することができる。また、メモリ14は、複素乗算器13に搬送波変調信号群 D_m が入力されたときに、内部に記憶し

ている1シンボル前の搬送波変調信号群 D'_{m-1} を、所定の基準複素数信号群として、複素乗算器13に出力する。複素乗算器13は、入力された送信信号群 D_m と、1シンボル前の基準複素数信号群 D'_{m-1} とを、周波数軸上で、複素乗算することにより、搬送波変調信号群 D'_m ($D'_m = D_m \times D'_{m-1}$)を作成する。

【0032】より具体的に説明すると、複素乗算器13に入力された搬送波変調信号群(n個の搬送波変調信号を含む)のうち、k(k=1, 2, ..., n)番目の搬送波変調信号の実数部を $D_m[k] \text{ real}$ とし、その虚数部を $D_m[k] \text{ imag}$ とし、メモリ14に記憶したk番目の搬送波変調信号の実数部を $D'_{m-1}[k] \text{ real}$ とし、その虚数部を $D'_{m-1}[k] \text{ imag}$ とした場合、複素乗算器13は、各搬送波変調信号の実数部および虚数部それぞれについて、乗算処理を行い、

$$D'_m[k] \text{ real} = D_m[k] \text{ real} \times D'_{m-1}[k] \text{ real}$$

$$D'_m[k] \text{ imag} = D_m[k] \text{ imag} \times D'_{m-1}[k] \text{ imag}$$

を出力する。メモリ14は、複素乗算器13から出力された実数および虚数の搬送波変調信号 D'_m ($D'_m[k] \text{ real}$ および $D'_m[k] \text{ imag}$ を含む)を記憶保持する。図4に示すように、メモリ14および複素乗算器13は、上記のような動作を繰り返し実行する。

【0033】逆フーリエ変換器15は、複素乗算器13から出力される搬送波変調信号群 D'_m 中のそれぞれの搬送波変調信号を、シンボル区間毎に、順次周波数軸上に並ぶ各搬送波に割り当て、これらに対して一括的に逆フーリエ変換を施し、さらに並直列変換を行うことにより、周波数軸上で各データ成分が多重された搬送波変調信号群を、時間軸上で各データ成分が多重されたOFDM信号 D'_m に変換する。

【0034】ガードタイム挿入部16は、逆フーリエ変換器15から出力されるデジタルのOFDM信号 D'_m を、各シンボル区間毎に、一旦、内部のバッファに蓄える。次に、ガードタイム挿入回路16は、各シンボル S_m に対して、その前部に前部ガードタイム G_{hm} を、その後部に後部ガードタイム G_{em} を、それぞれ付加する(図3参照)。なお、前部ガードタイム G_{hm} の時間長 t_{g1} および後部ガードタイム G_{em} の時間長 t_{g2} は、それぞれ伝送路で発生するマルチパスによる直接波と間接波との時間差および送信装置1のD/A変換器18と受信装置2のA/D変換器22との間のサンプリングのずれによる時間遅延を考慮して定められる。また、前部ガードタイム G_{hm} には、対応するシンボル S_m の後端部 S_{em} と同じデータ D'_{emt} が含まれ、後部ガードタイム G_{em} には、対応するシンボル S_m の前端部 S_{hm} と同じデータ D'_{hmt} が含まれる。これにより、実質的なシン

ボル長が、 $t_{g1} + t_s + t_{g2}$ に延長されることになる。ガードタイム挿入部16は、前部ガードタイム G_{hm} 、シンボル S_m 、後部ガードタイム G_{em} を使用して、データ D'_{emt} 、 D'_m 、 D'_{hmt} を順次出力する。

【0035】同期信号多重部17は、シンボルの区切りを示すため、シンボル毎に、同期信号を、ガードタイムの付加されたOFDM信号に時間軸上で多重し、D/A変換器18に出力する。同期信号は、たとえば、図5(a)に示すようにOFDM信号に対し、周期的に既知の無変調搬送波と抑圧信号等とから構成する。

【0036】D/A変換器18は、同期信号多重部17から出力される、ガードタイムおよび同期信号が付加されたデジタルデータのOFDM信号を、アナログのOFDMベースバンド信号に変換する。ローパスフィルタ19は、エイリアシングによるチャネル間干渉が生じないようにするため、OFDMベースバンド信号に帯域制限をかける。

【0037】上記のような一連の操作の結果、送信装置1は、伝送路に対して、ガードタイムおよび同期信号を含むOFDM信号を出力する。

【0038】図2において、受信装置2は、ローパスフィルタ21と、A/D変換器22と、エンベロープ検波器23と、同期再生部24と、フーリエ変換器25と、メモリ26と、複素除算器27と、送信データ再生器28とを備えている。

【0039】ローパスフィルタ21は、伝送路を介して受信したOFDM信号から、不要な高周波域のスペクトル成分を除去する。

【0040】ここで、マルチパスや伝送路の遅延特性等による時間遅延 Δt を考慮し、受信装置2において受信したOFDM信号を ZD'_{mt} とする。なお、 Z は、 $Z = \exp j 2\pi f c \Delta t$ であり、信号の遅延分を表している。

【0041】A/D変換器22は、アナログのOFDM信号の前部ガードタイム G_{hm} 、シンボル S_m 、後部ガードタイム G_{em} にそれぞれ含まれるデータ ZD'_{emt} 、 ZD'_{mt} 、 ZD'_{hmt} を、デジタルのOFDM信号に変換する。

【0042】エンベロープ検波器23は、OFDM信号をエンベロープ検波することにより、図5(b)に示すエンベロープ検波信号を、シンボル毎に出力する。同期再生部24は、エンベロープ検波器23から出力されたエンベロープ検波信号に基づいて、図5(c)に示す基準タイミング信号を、シンボル毎に出力する。この基準タイミング信号は、フーリエ変換器25およびメモリ26に入力される。

【0043】フーリエ変換器25は、基準タイミング信号に同期して、A/D変換器22から出力されるOFDM信号を、シンボル長 t_s と同じ長さの時間窓 W (図3(e)参照)を介して覗くことにより、各シンボルの必

要なデータ部分だけを抽出する。また、フーリエ変換器25は、この抽出されたデータ部分に対して、フーリエ変換演算を施すことにより、時間軸上のOFDM信号を、周波数軸上の受信搬送波変調信号群に変換する。

【0044】メモリ26は、フーリエ変換器25から出力される受信搬送波変調信号群を、1シンボル分記憶する。ここで、送信装置1からデータ D'_m が送られてきた場合、メモリ26には、それに対応するデータとして、データ ZD'_m が格納されることになる。データ ZD'_m は、データ D'_m にマルチパスや伝送路等によって生じた時間遅延 Z を加えたものである。すなわち、 $ZD'_m = D'_m \times \exp j 2\pi f c \Delta t$ となる。メモリ26は、基準タイミング信号に同期して、データ ZD'_m を複素除算器27に出力する。複素除算器27は、同期を確立した上で、フーリエ変換器25から出力されるシンボル S_{m+1} のデータ ZD'_{m+1} を、メモリ26に保持されているデータ ZD'_m によって複素除算する。すなわち、複素除算器27は、 $ZD'_{m+1} / ZD'_m = D'_{m+1} / D'_m = D_{m+1}$ の演算を行う。図6に示すように、フーリエ変換器25、メモリ26および複素除算器27は、上記のような動作を繰り返し実行する。

【0045】前述したように、マルチパスに起因して、図3(a)に示す直接波と図3(b)に示す反射波との間に、相対的な時間遅延が生じる。また、送信装置1のD/A変換器18と受信装置2のA/D変換器22とにおけるサンプリングタイミングが異なることに起因して、直接波および反射波にそれぞれ固有の時間遅延が発生する(図3(c)および図3(d)参照)。フーリエ変換器25において、基準タイミング信号は、これらの時間遅延を考慮していないため、図3(e)に示すように、時間軸上における受信側の時間窓 W の位置は、受信信号のシンボル区間からずれている。

【0046】しかしながら、受信側のフーリエ変換器25で、時間窓 W が正確なシンボル区間からずれていても、前部ガードタイム G_{hm} および後部ガードタイム G_{em} には、それぞれデータ ZD'_{emt} および ZD'_{hmt} が含まれているため、時間窓 W を介して覗いたデータには、1シンボル区間に本来含まれるべき時間軸上のすべてのデータ ZD'_{mt} が含まれていることになる。このため、この時間遅延および反射波の重なりは、周波数軸上において各データ成分毎に一樣な振幅位相歪みとなって現れる。また、時間遅延および反射波の特性が一樣であれば、各シンボル区間毎に振幅位相歪みの大きさは等しくなる。本実施形態では、複素除算器27は、フーリエ変換器25から出力されたシンボル S_{m+1} のデータ ZD'_{m+1} を、メモリ26に保持されているデータ ZD'_m で複素除算することにより、データの遅延分 Z をキャンセルし、遅延の無い元の搬送波変調信号群 D_{m+1} を得ている。すなわち、複素除算器27が、

$ZD'_{m+1} / ZD'_m = D'_{m+1} / D'_m = D_{m+1}$
 の演算を行うことにより、振幅位相歪みは打ち消されることとなり、各シンボルについて、位相・振幅歪みのないデータ D_m が得られる。

【0047】以上のように、上記実施形態では、各シンボルの前後にそのシンボルの後端部および前端部と同じデータを含むガードタイムを付加して送信しているため、受信側では、時間窓 W 内に直接波および反射波の両方について、時間軸上に並ぶ1シンボル区間のすべてのデータ成分を再生することができる。このため、マルチパスにより反射波が直接波に重なり、直接波のシンボル区間と反射波のガードタイムとが重なっても、フーリエ変換後に周波数軸上に現れる各データ成分の振幅位相歪みは、すべて一様なものとなる。したがって、送信側および受信側で適当な演算処理(乗算、除算)を実行することで、1シンボル区間の周波数軸上の受信搬送波変調信号群から、容易に波形歪みを除去することができる。

【0048】また、上記実施形態では、送信側と受信側との間で、OFDM信号に時間遅延が発生しても、周波数軸上で受信搬送波変調信号群を所定の基準複素数信号群で複素乗算、複素除算することにより、時間遅延のない復調データを得ることができる。その結果、時間窓をシンボル区間に正確に一致させる必要がなくなる。

【0049】送信データ再生器28は、複素除算器27から出力された受信搬送波変調信号群 D_m の信号点を複素平面上にマッピングし、信号点を判定することにより、送信装置1の送信デジタル信号群と同値の受信デジタル信号群を得る。前述したように、受信搬送波変調信号群 D_m からは、位相歪みや振幅歪みが除去されている。したがって、送信データ再生器28は、複素平面上へのマッピング位置から、正確かつ容易に元のデータを判定することができる。

【0050】なお、本願発明者は、計算機を使用して、マルチパスによる遅延波の影響と、時間軸遅延の影響とについて、従来のシステムと本実施形態のシステムとを比較するシミュレーションを行った。なお、このシミュレーションは、キャリア数が512本、256番目のキャリアのデータだけが振幅「1」、位相「0」、他のキャリアのデータはすべて「0」を条件として実施された。

【0051】図7は、マルチパスによる遅延波の影響について、従来のシステムと本実施形態のシステムとを比較したシミュレーション結果を示す図である。なお、図7において、(a)、(b)、(c)、(d)は、それぞれ、従来のシステムにおける直接波、間接波、合成波、合成波をフーリエ演算することにより周波数軸上の信号に変換した場合のデータ歪みを示している。また、図7において、(e)、(f)、(g)、(h)は、それぞれ、本実施形態のシステムにおける直接波、間接

波、合成波、合成波をフーリエ演算することにより周波数軸上の信号に変換した場合のデータ歪みを示している。

【0052】従来のシステムでは、ガードタイムにいかなるデータも挿入されていないため(図7(b)の $\alpha 1$ 参照)、合成波の時間窓 W 中に干渉部 $\alpha 2$ が発生している(図7(c)参照)。したがって、合成波を時間窓 W でフーリエ演算することにより周波数軸上の信号に変換すると、図7(d)に示すように、256番目のキャリアのデータのスペクトルが拡がるとともに、他のキャリアの本来「0」であったはずのデータに歪みが生じる。したがって、送信データ再生器28で誤判定が起き易くなる。さらに、他のキャリアについても、送信データ再生器28で誤判定が起き易くなる。一方、本実施形態のシステムでは、ガードタイムにデータが挿入されているため、他のキャリアのデータに影響を及ぼさない。

【0053】図8は、伝送路等による時間遅延の影響について、従来のシステムと本実施形態のシステムとを比較したシミュレーション結果を示す図である。図8において、(a)は256番目のキャリアのデータだけが振幅「1」、位相「0」の場合のスペクトルを示し、

(b)は(a)のデータを逆フーリエ演算することにより時間軸上の信号に変換した場合の信号波形を示している。また、図8において、(c)、(d)は、それぞれ、従来のシステムにおける時間遅延を生じた合成波、合成波をフーリエ演算することにより周波数軸上の信号に変換した場合のデータ歪みを示している。また、図8において、(e)、(f)は、それぞれ、本実施形態のシステムにおける時間遅延を生じた合成波、合成波をフーリエ演算することにより周波数軸上の信号に変換した場合のデータ歪みを示している。

【0054】従来のシステムでは、ガードタイムにいかなるデータも挿入されていないため(図8(c)の $\alpha 1$ 参照)、図7(c)の場合と同様に、合成波の時間窓 W 中に干渉部 $\alpha 2$ が発生する。したがって、図8(d)に示すように、合成波を時間窓 W でフーリエ演算することにより周波数軸上の信号に変換すると、256番目のキャリアのデータのスペクトルが拡がるとともに、他のキャリアの本来「0」であったはずのデータに歪みが生じる。したがって、他のキャリアについても、送信データ再生器28で誤判定が起り易くなる。一方、本実施形態では、ガードタイムにデータが挿入されているため、他のキャリアのデータに影響を及ぼさない。

【0055】図9は、本発明の第2の実施形態の送信装置の構成を示すブロック図である。なお、図9の送信装置3において、図1の送信装置1の構成と対応する部分には、同一の参照番号を付し、その説明を省略する。図9の実施形態で注目すべき点は、メモリ14が、特定パターン発生器31の出力、すなわち、予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつ各信号の位相が相互にランダム

に変化している複素数信号群D0を保持していることである。このような複素数信号群D0は、たとえば0~1の間のレベルの疑似ランダム信号を発生するPN系列疑似ランダム信号発生器と、この疑似ランダム信号と 2π とを乗算する乗算器とを備え、位相が0から 2π 間でランダムな値を持ち、かつ振幅が1の単位ベクトル信号を生成する疑似雑音信号発生器により形成することができる。また、このような複素数信号群は、位相が0から 2π までのランダムな値を持った既知の周波数掃引信号を発生する、周波数掃引信号発生器により形成することもできる。

【0056】複素乗算器13は、各シンボル区間のデータDmが入力される毎に、データDmとデータD0とを周波数軸上で複素乗算して、データD'm ($D'm = Dm \times D0$)を作成し、搬送波変調信号群中の各搬送波変調信号の相互の位相を特定パターンにランダム化する。

【0057】図10は、複素乗算器13における複素乗算の動作を示す図である。特に、図10(a)は変調方式に16値QAMを用いた場合の搬送波変調信号の取り得る信号点配置を示し、図10(b)は位相がランダムに変化する単位ベクトルiを示し、図10(c)は位相を特定パターンにランダム化された搬送波変調信号を示している。

【0058】図10(a)において、今、一つの搬送波に割り当てられる搬送波変調信号群中の一つの搬送波変調信号が、複素平面上の信号点Aに配点されたと仮定する。信号点Aは、その実数部が3、その虚数部が1の大きさを持つ。また、単位ベクトルiは、この時、位相角 $3\pi/4$ を持ったと仮定する。複素乗算の結果、図10(c)に示す搬送波変調信号A'が得られる。搬送波変調信号A'は、実数部が-2.8、虚数部が1.4となり、16値QAMの配置にはない信号点をとることになる。このように、単位ベクトルiの位相がランダムに変化するため、搬送波変調信号発生器12から出力された搬送波変調信号群中の各搬送波変調信号の位相が、たとえ同一であっても、複素乗算器13は、位相が相互にランダム化された搬送波変調信号群を、逆フーリエ変換器15に出力する。

【0059】複素乗算器13は、このような動作を所定の期間繰り返す。また、複素乗算器13は、定期的にデータD0だけを出力する。この時の一連の動作を、図11に示す。すなわち、データD0が挿入されるシンボルをS0とすると、送信装置3は、図12に示すように、定期的にシンボルS0のデータD0を、その他の場合はシンボルSmのデータD'mを出力することになる。逆フーリエ変換器15は、搬送波変調信号群D'mを、シンボル毎に、周波数軸上に並ぶ各搬送波に割り当て、これらに対して一括的に逆フーリエ変換および並列変換を施すことにより、デジタルのOFDM信号に変換する。この結果、搬送波変調信号群の絶対基準位相が、0

から 2π までのランダムな値になり、逆フーリエ変換器15から出力されたOFDM信号に電力集中が起こるのを抑制できる。したがって、送信装置、受信装置のダイナミックレンジを大きくする必要がなく、安価な構成で、OFDM信号への送受信器や中継増幅器等の非線形性からの影響を軽減することができる。送信装置3における他の回路ブロック、すなわちガードタイム挿入部16~ローパスフィルタ19は、送信装置1の場合と同様に動作する。

10 【0060】なお、ガードタイム挿入部16は、シンボルSmの場合と同様に、シンボルS0の後端部と同じデータ成分D0を対応する前部ガードタイムに挿入するとともに、シンボルS0の前端部と同じデータ成分を対応する後部ガードタイムに挿入している。

【0061】図9に示す送信装置3を用いた場合、基本的には、図2に示す受信装置2と同じ構成の受信装置を用いることができる。ただし、受信装置のメモリ26には、送信装置3のメモリ14に記憶される基準複素数信号群D0の受信データZD0を記憶させることになる。

20 【0062】上記した図9の実施形態においても、前述した第1の実施形態と同様の効果が得られる。すなわち、マルチパスにより反射波が直接波に重なり、直接波のシンボル区間と反射波のガードタイムとが重なっても、フーリエ変換後に周波数軸上に現れる受信搬送波変調信号群の振幅位相歪みがすべて一様なものとなり、その除去を簡単な演算処理(乗算、除算)で行える。また、送信側と受信側との間でOFDM信号に時間遅延が発生しても、時間遅延の影響のない復調データを得ることができ、時間窓の時間軸上の調整が容易になる。

30 【0063】なお、上述の各実施形態は、有線の伝送路を介してデータを伝送するようにしているが、本発明はこれに限定されることなく、無線の伝送路を介してデータを伝送するようにしてもよい。また、上述の各実施形態では、多チャンネル分のテレビの映像データを各搬送波に乗せるようにしたが、1チャンネル分の映像データを時間分割して並列に並び替え、各搬送波に割り当てるようにしてもよい。さらに、映像データに替えて、音声データ、テキストデータ等を各搬送波にのせるようにしてもよい。さらに、CATVに替えて、LAN、WAN等の他のシステムにおいて本発明を実施してもよい。

40 【0064】さらに、図9の送信装置3では、メモリ14から出力された基準複素数信号群を、定期的に、複素乗算器13を介して逆フーリエ変換器15に入力するようにしたが、基準複素数信号群を、逆フーリエ変換器15に直接入力してもよい。

50 【0065】さらに、図9の送信装置3では、搬送波変調信号群に含める基準複素数信号群として、予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつその位相が相互にランダムに変化している複素数信号群D0を使用した、OFDM信号に生じる電力集中が生じないような状況下で

は、搬送波変調信号群に含める基準複素数信号群として、予め定められた特定パターンを有し、かつ各信号の位相が相互に同一の複素数信号群を使用しても良い。この場合でも、第1の実施形態と同様、簡単な演算処理（乗算、除算）を行うことで、振幅位相歪みを除去できる。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図1】本発明の第1の実施形態の送信装置の構成を示すブロック図である。

【図2】本発明の第1の実施形態の受信装置の構成を示すブロック図である。

【図3】図1の送信装置1から送信されるOFDM信号の構成を示す図である。

【図4】図1のメモリ14と、複素乗算器13との動作を示す図である。

【図5】図1の送信装置1から出力されたOFDM信号に対する受信装置2のエンベロープ検波器23と同期再生部24との動作を示す図である。

【図6】図2のメモリ26と、複素除算器27との動作を示す図である。

【図7】マルチパスによる遅延波の影響について、従来のシステムと第1の実施形態のシステムとを比較したシミュレーション結果を示す図である。

【図8】伝送路等による時間遅延の影響について、従来のシステムと第1の実施形態のシステムとを比較したシミュレーション結果を示す図である。

【図9】本発明の第2の実施形態の送信装置の構成を示すブロック図である。

【図10】図9の複素乗算器13における搬送波変調信号群と複素数信号群との複素乗算の様子を示す図である。

【図11】図9のメモリ14と複素乗算器13との動作を示す図である。

【図12】図9のOFDM信号の送信装置から送信されるOFDM信号の構成を示す信号構成図である。

【図13】従来のOFDM信号の送信装置の構成を示すブロック図である。

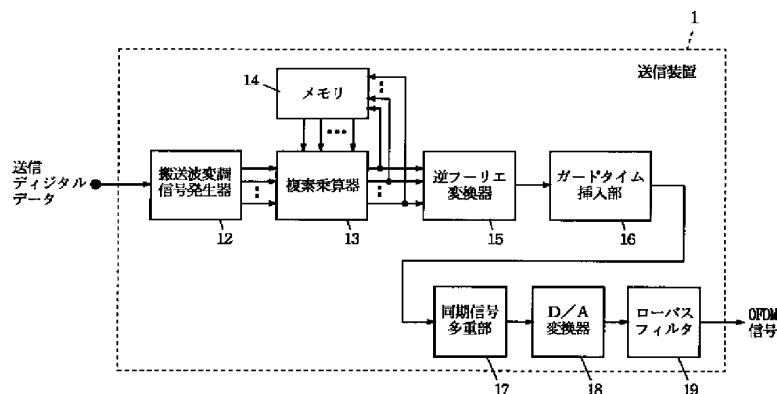
【図14】図13の送信装置5から送信されるOFDM信号の構成を示す図である。

【図15】相互に直交する搬送波に割り当てられた搬送波変調信号群の位相状態とOFDM信号との関係を示す信号波形図である。

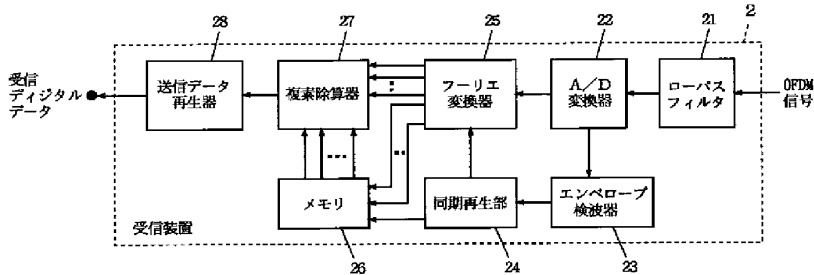
【符号の説明】

- 1, 3…送信装置
- 12…搬送波変調信号発生器
- 13…複素乗算器
- 14…メモリ
- 15…逆フーリエ変換器
- 16…ガードタイム挿入部
- 17…同期信号多重部
- 18…D/A変換器
- 19…ローパスフィルタ
- 31…特定パターン発生器
- 2…受信装置
- 21…ローパスフィルタ
- 22…A/D変換器
- 23…エンベロープ検波器
- 24…同期再生部
- 25…フーリエ変換器
- 26…メモリ
- 27…複素除算器
- 28…送信データ再生器

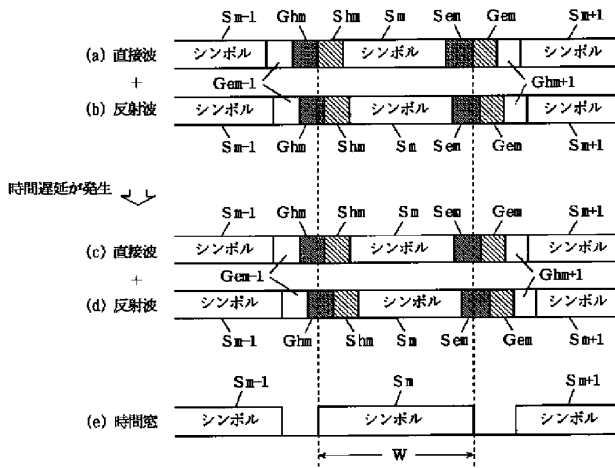
【図1】



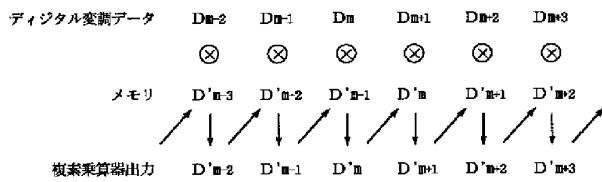
【図2】



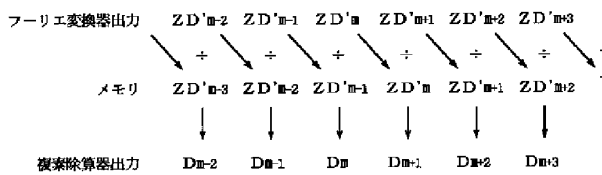
【図3】



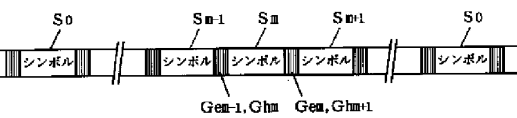
【図4】



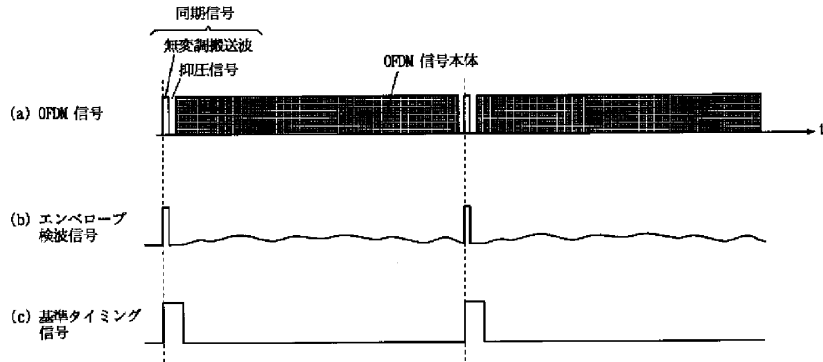
【図6】



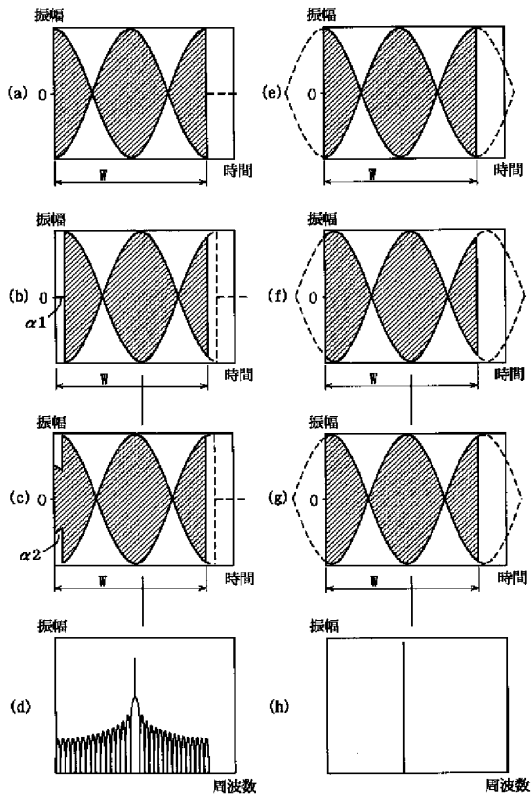
【図12】



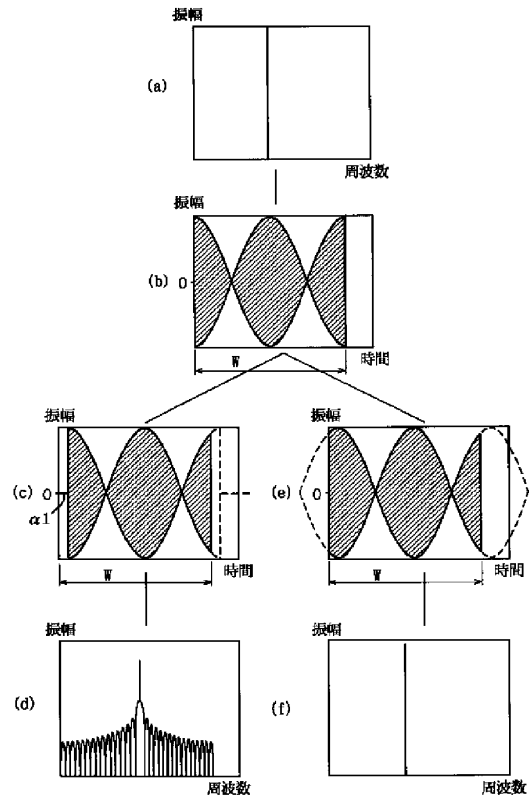
【図 5】



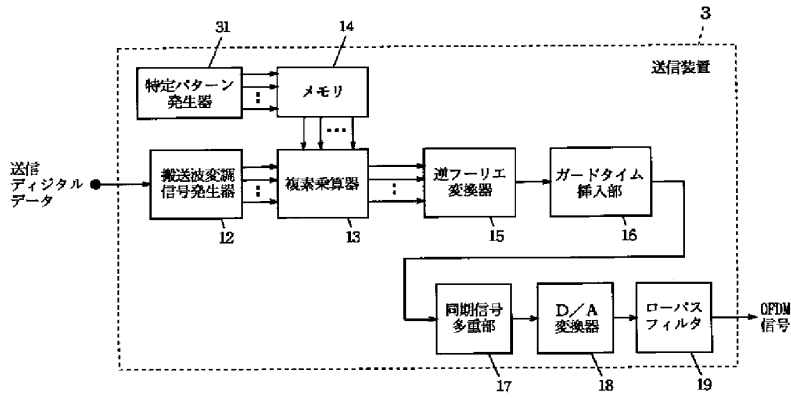
【図 7】



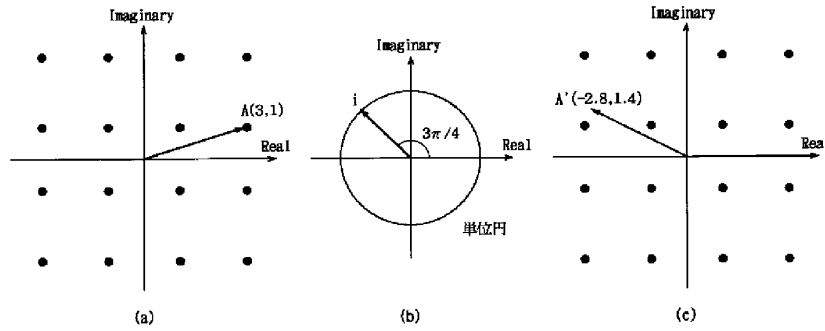
【図 8】



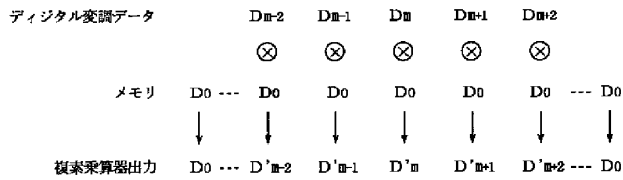
【図9】



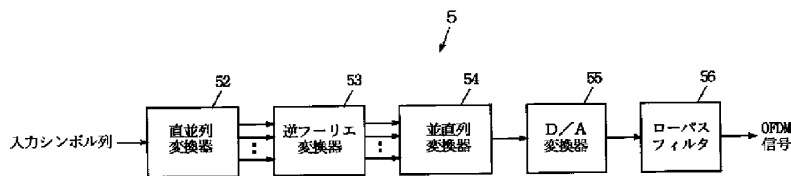
【図10】



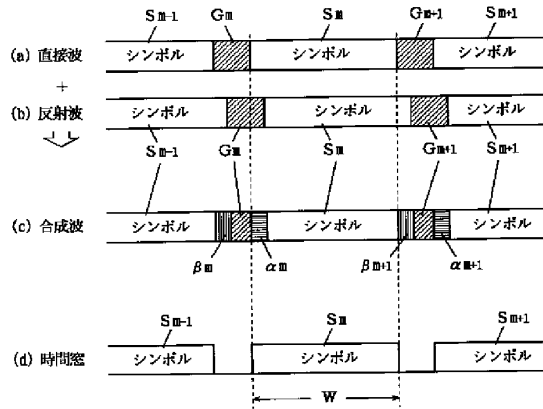
【図11】



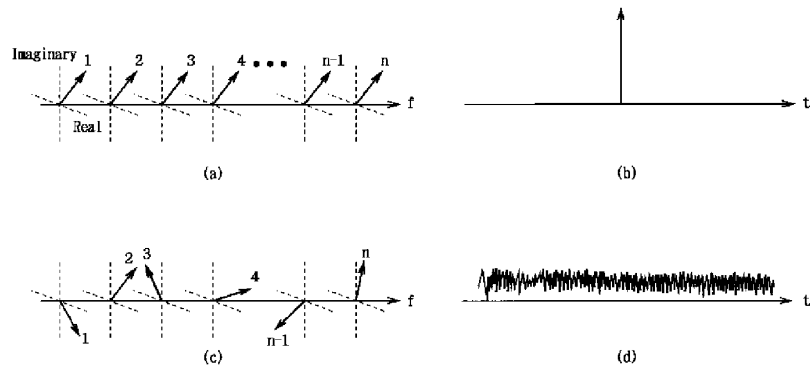
【図13】



【図14】



【図15】



フロントページの続き

(72)発明者 木村 知弘
 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器
 産業株式会社内

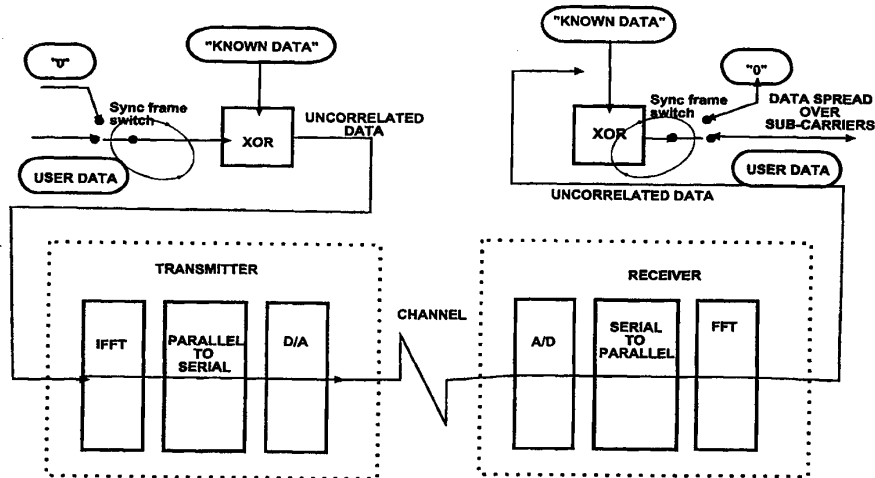
(72)発明者 大植 裕司
 大阪府門真市大字門真1006番地 松下電器
 産業株式会社内



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : H04L 27/26</p>	<p>A2</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/29078 (43) International Publication Date: 10 June 1999 (10.06.99)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/SE98/02193 (22) International Filing Date: 1 December 1998 (01.12.98) (30) Priority Data: 9704497-8 3 December 1997 (03.12.97) SE (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): TELIA AB (publ) [SE/SE]; Mårbackagatan 11, S-123 86 Farsta (SE). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): NORDSTRÖM, Tomas [SE/SE]; Praktikantvägen 8, S-977 53 Luleå (SE). BAHLENBERG, Gunnar [SE/SE]; Blidvägen 234, S-976 32 Luleå (SE). BENGTTSSON, Daniel [SE/SE]; Forskarvägen 36 A, S-977 53 Luleå (SE). HÅKANSSON, Siwert [SE/SE]; Aprilvägen 10, S-177 61 Järfälla (SE). ISAKSSON, Anders [SE/SE]; Elefvägen 1, S-977 25 Luleå (SE). ISAKSSON, Mikael [SE/SE]; Borgmästarevägen 7, S-973 42 Luleå (SE). JOHANSSON, Magnus [SE/SE]; Timmermansgatan 34, S-972 41 Luleå (SE). LJUNGGREN, Lis-Marie [SE/SE]; Praktikantvägen 31, S-977 53 Luleå (SE). LUNDBERG, Hans [SE/SE]; Västra Solgatan 8, S-972 53 Luleå (SE). OLOFSSON, Sven-Rune [SE/SE]; Malmuddsvägen 9, S-972 45 Luleå (SE). OLSSON, Lennart [SE/SE]; Majvägen 39, S-973 31 Luleå (SE).</p>	<p>STEFANSSON, Tomas [SE/SE]; Lulavan 773, S-961 93 Boden (SE). ÖHMAN, Hans [SE/SE]; Fältspatstigen 21, S-977 53 Luleå (SE). ÖKVIST, Göran [SE/SE]; Hagaplan 7, S-974 41 Luleå (SE). (74) Agent: PRAGSTEN, Rolf; Telia Research AB, Vitsandsgatan 9, S-123 86 Farsta (SE). (81) Designated States: EE, JP, LT, LV, NO, US, European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE). Published <i>Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.</i></p>	

(54) Title: IMPROVEMENTS IN, OR RELATING TO, DATA SCRAMBLERS



(57) Abstract

The present invention simplifies known data scramblers by making use of the synchronisation frames, normally used for measuring channel characteristics, as a source of pseudo-random data which can be combined with incoming user data. The present invention has particular application to multi-carrier transmission systems which employ DMT, or OFDM. Many of these transmission systems send known data, usually referred to as synchronisation frames, to measure channel characteristics such as signal to noise ratio. The known data contained in a synchronisation frame is selected to have a suitable statistical distribution, e.g. pseudo-random. In the data scrambler of the present invention, user data bits are combined with the known synchronisation frame data using an exclusive-OR function. This results in a statistically and computationally efficient scrambling of the user data.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

- 1 -

Improvements in, or Relating to, Data Scramblers

5 The present invention relates to data scramblers and descramblers, suitable for use with a multi-carrier transmission system, multi-carrier transmission systems incorporating data scramblers and de-scramblers, and methods for scrambling and descrambling data in multi-carrier transmission systems.

10 Most telecommunications transmission systems are designed to give optimum performance when uncorrelated data is transmitted over them. Unfortunately, user data is not usually uncorrelated and may, for example, include relatively long strings of binary "0"s, or "1"s. If such data is transmitted over a transmission system intended for uncorrelated data, it can result in saturation, i.e. too large a dynamic range, synchronisation drift, etc.. This problem has long been recognised by telecommunications engineers and the conventional solution is to scramble the incoming user data so that it behaves as though it was uncorrelated data.

15 Known data scramblers employ an algorithm to combine user data with a random data string, thereby producing an uncorrelated data stream for transmission.

20 The present invention simplifies known data scramblers by making use of the synchronisation frames, normally used for measuring channel characteristics, as a source of pseudo-random data which can be combined with incoming user data.

25 The present invention has particular application to multi-carrier transmission systems, including copper based transmission systems such as ADSL, VDSL and HDSL which employ DMT, and/or radio based transmission systems employing OFDM. Many of these transmission systems send known data, usually referred to as synchronisation frames, to measure channel characteristics such as signal to noise ratio. The known data contained in a synchronisation frame is selected to have a suitable statistical distribution, e.g. pseudo-random. In a typical DMT

- 2 -

system, used at the present time, the known synchronisation frame data comprises two bits per sub-carrier. In other words, a predetermined 4-QAM signal is transmitted on each sub-carrier.

5 In the present invention, user data bits are combined with the known synchronisation frame data bits, typically the two most significant bits, using an exclusive-OR function. This results in a statistically and computationally efficient scrambling of the user data.

10 According to a first aspect of the present invention, there is provided a data scrambler, for use in a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, characterised in that combiner means are provided to combine user data with frame synchronisation data.

Said combiner means may have a XOR function.

15 Said frame synchronisation data is pseudo random.

Said combiner means may be adapted to combine said user data with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

20 According to a second aspect of the present invention, there is provide a data descrambler, for use in a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, and transmitted data is scrambled using a data scrambler as claimed in any of claims 1 to 4, characterised in that combiner means are provided to combine received data with frame synchronisation data.

25 Said combiner means may have a XOR function.

Said frame synchronisation data may be pseudo random.

- 3 -

Said combiner means may be adapted to combine said received data with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

5 According to a third aspect of the present invention, there is provided a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, characterised in that said transmission system incorporates a data scrambler as set forth in any preceding paragraph, connected to said transmitter.

0 Said receiver may be connected to a data descrambler as set forth in any preceding paragraph.

Said multi-carrier transmission system may employ DMT.

Said multi-carrier transmission system may employ OFDM.

Means may be provided for transmitting frame synchronisation data from said data scrambler to said data descrambler.

15 According to a fourth aspect of the present invention, there is provided, in a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, a method of scrambling user data prior to transmission, characterised by combining user data with frame synchronisation data.

20 User data may be combined with frame synchronisation data by means of an XOR function.

Said frame synchronisation data may be pseudo random.

Said user data may be combined with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

- 4 -

5 According to a fifth aspect of the present invention, there is provided, in a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, a method of descrambling received data which has been scrambled by a scrambling method as set forth in preceding, characterised by combining received data with frame synchronisation data.

Received data may be combined with frame synchronisation data using an XOR function.

Said frame synchronisation data may be pseudo random.

10 Said received data may be combined with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

Said multi-carrier transmission system may employ DMT.

Said multi-carrier transmission system may employ OFDM.

15 Embodiments of the invention will now be described, by way of example, with reference to the accompanying drawing, in which:

Figure 1 illustrates data scramblers and descramblers, according to the present invention, in a multi-carrier transmission system

In order to facilitate an understanding of the present invention a glossary of terms used in the description of the present invention is provided below:

20 A/D: Analogue to Digital
ADSL: Asynchronous Digital Subscriber Line
D/A: Digital to Analogue

- 5 -

	DMT:	Digital Multi Tone
	FFT:	Fast Fourier Transform
	HDSL:	High bit rate Digital Subscriber Line
	IFFT:	Inverse Fast Fourier Transform
5	OFDM:	Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplex
	QAM:	Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
	VDSL:	Very high bit rate Digital Subscriber Line
	XOR:	Exclusive OR

10 Figure 1 shows a transmitter and receiver, in a multi-carrier transmission system, linked by a communications channel. The communications channel may be a copper pair (VDSL etc.), or a radio channel (OFDM). Incoming user data, intended for transmission over the communications channel, is passed via a sync frame switch, to a XOR gate. The sync frame switch permits one of the inputs to the XOR gate to be switched between user data and a string of "0"s. The second
15 input to the XOR gate receives the known synchronisation frame data. When the string of "0"s is passed to the XOR gate, the output from the XOR gate is the synchronisation data, i.e. the "known data" appears at the output of the XOR gate.

20 The incoming user data will almost certainly be far from random, i.e. it will be highly correlated. The incoming user data is combined with the "known data" in the XOR gate. The "known data" is pseudo random, i.e. uncorrelated. The output from the XOR gate will, therefore, also be uncorrelated, i.e. will itself be pseudo-random. This data has the necessary properties to permit good transmission over the transmission channel.

The scrambled data is then passed to the receiver where it is first

- 6 -

5 processed by an Inverse Fast Fourier Transform unit, IFFT, converted from parallel form to serial form, passed to a digital to analogue convertor, D/A, prior to QAM modulation and transmission over the channel. Details of the multiplexing techniques and modulation techniques used in multi-carrier transmission systems will be familiar to those skilled in the art and are not described in detail in this patent specification.

10 The signal received from the transmission channel is demodulated and demultiplexed in the receiver by, inter alia, an A/D convertor, a serial to parallel convertor, and a fast Fourier transform unit FFT. The received data is, of course, scrambled. The received scrambled data is passed to the XOR gate, where it is combined with the "known data", i.e. the same data that was mixed into the signal in the transmitter. The output from the XOR gate will contain the user data, or a string of "0"s depending on the setting of the sync frame switch in the transmitter. The sync frame switch in the receiver is used for synchronisation purposes, i.e. 15 when the receiver is properly synchronised with the transmitter, and a sync frame is transmitted, rather than user data, the output from the XOR gate will be a string of "0"s. Details of transmitter and receiver synchronisation in multi-carrier systems will be well known to those skilled in the art.

20 It should, however, be noted that synchronisation frame data is stored in both the transmitter and receiver, so the receiver always has prior knowledge of the "known data" used by the transmitter.

25 In summary, the present invention scrambles user data by mixing that data with known data normally used in a synchronisation frame, typically the two most significant bits of the synchronisation frame data, using an exclusive-OR function. This results in both statistically and computationally efficient scrambling. Descrambling is achieved by the reverse process, i.e. combining the received scrambled data with the same known data used for scrambling in an exclusive-OR function.

30 The present invention results in a much improved statistical distribution of modulated sub-carriers, in a multi-carrier transmission system, compared to the

- 7 -

case where no scrambling is used for correlated, or null data situations.

As synchronisation data must be present in a multi-carrier receiver and transmitter for use in the synchronisation process, the scrambling technique of the present invention does not increase system complexity.

5 Transmission of the known data is very simple because it only needs to be combined with a string of "0"s.

10 The scrambler of the present invention can be used in all transmission systems that measure channel characteristics by sending known data from transmitter to receiver and use OFDM, DMT, or related multiplexing techniques to spread out the transmitted data over a number of sub-carriers, i.e. multi-carrier transmission techniques.

CLAIMS

- 5 1. A data scrambler, for use in a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, characterised in that combiner means are provided to combine user data with frame synchronisation data.
2. A data scrambler, as claimed in claim 1, characterised in that said combiner means has a XOR function.
- 10 3. A data scrambler, as claimed in either claim 1, or claim 2, characterised in that said frame synchronisation data is pseudo random.
4. A data scrambler, as claimed in any previous claim, characterised in that said combiner means is adapted to combine said user data with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.
- 15 5. A data descrambler, for use in a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, and transmitted data is scrambled using a data scrambler as claimed in any of claims 1 to 4, characterised in that combiner means are provided to combine received data with frame synchronisation data.
- 20 6. A data descrambler, as claimed in claim 5, characterised in that said combiner means has a XOR function.
7. A data descrambler, as claimed in either claim 5, or claim 6, characterised in that said frame synchronisation data is pseudo random.
- 25 8. A data descrambler, as claimed in any of claims 5 to 7, characterised in that said combiner means is adapted to combine said received data with the two

- 9 -

most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

- 5 9. A multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, characterised in that said transmission system incorporates a data scrambler as claimed in any of claims 1 to 4, connected to said transmitter.
- 10 10. A multi-carrier transmission system, as claimed in claim 9, characterised in that said receiver is connected to a data descrambler as claimed in any of claims 5 to 8.
- 10 11. A multi-carrier transmission system, as claimed in claim 10, characterised in that said multi-carrier transmission system employs DMT.
12. A multi-carrier transmission system, as claimed in claim 10, characterised in that said multi-carrier transmission system employs OFDM.
- 15 13. A multi-carrier transmission system, as claimed in any of claims 10 to 12, characterised in that means are provided for transmitting frame synchronisation data from said data scrambler to said data descrambler.
- 20 14. In a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, a method of scrambling user data prior to transmission, characterised by combining user data with frame synchronisation data.
15. A method, as claimed in claim 14, characterised by combining user data with frame synchronisation data by mean of an XOR function.
16. A method, as claimed in either claim 14, or claim 15, characterised by said frame synchronisation data being pseudo random.
- 25 17. A method, as claimed in any of claims 14 to 16, characterised by combining

- 10 -

said user data with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

5 18. In a multi-carrier transmission system in which synchronisation frame data is periodically transmitted from a transmitter to a receiver to measure transmission channel characteristics, a method of descrambling received data which has been scrambled by the method claimed in any of claims 14 to 17, characterised by combining received data with frame synchronisation data.

19. A method, as claimed in claim 18, characterised by combining received data with frame synchronisation data using an XOR function.

10 20. A method, as claimed in either claim 18, or claim 19, characterised by said frame synchronisation data being pseudo random.

21. A method, as claimed in any of claims 18 to 20, characterised by combining said received data with the two most significant bits of a synchronisation frame.

22. A method, as claimed in any of claims 14 to 21, characterised by said multi-carrier transmission system employing DMT.

15 23. A method, as claimed in any of claims 14 to 21, characterised by said multi-carrier transmission system employing OFDM.

1/1

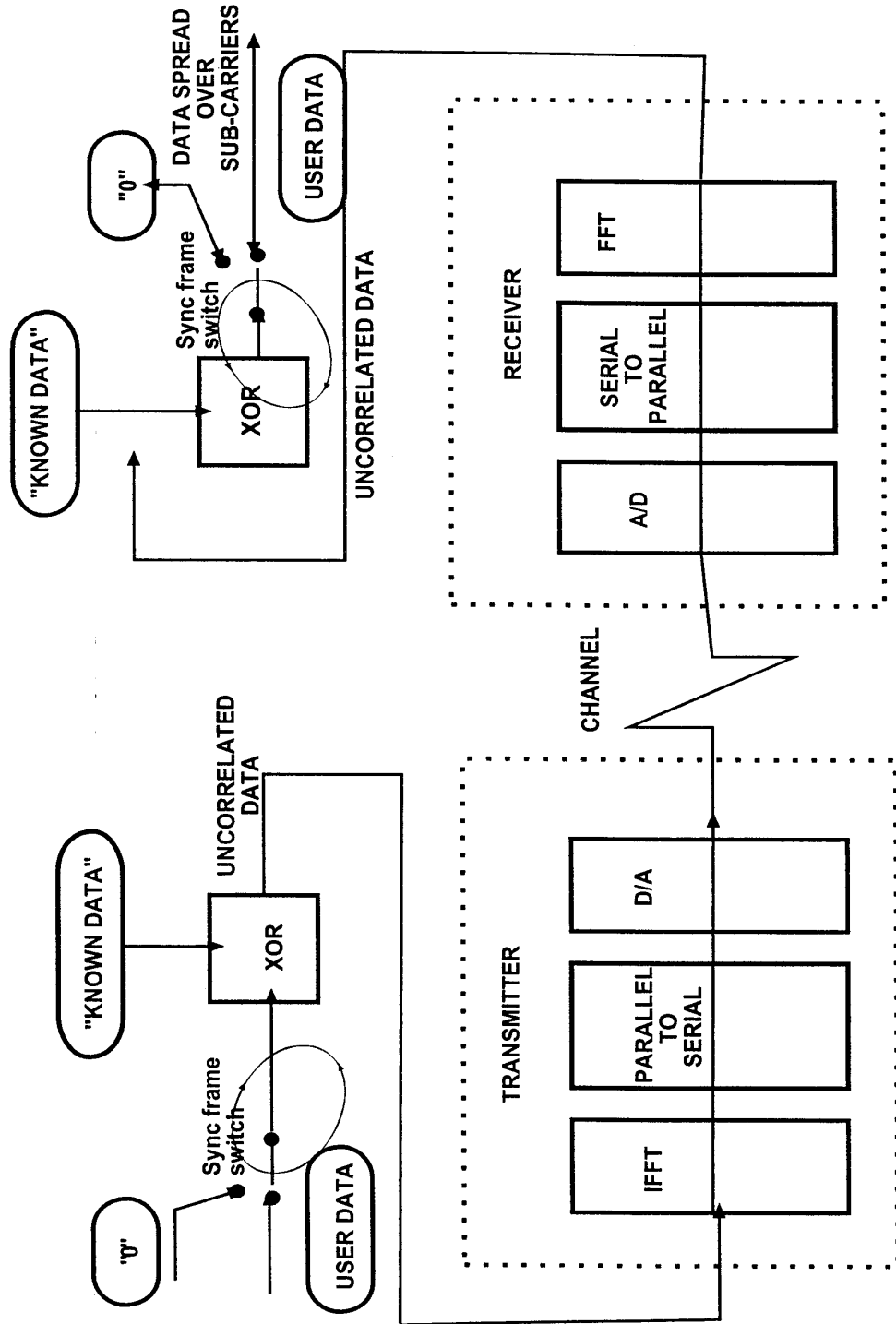
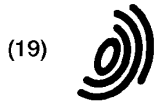


FIGURE 1



(12) EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

(43) Date of publication:
26.06.1996 Bulletin 1996/26

(51) Int. Cl.⁶: H04L 5/06

(21) Application number: 95119990.0

(22) Date of filing: 18.12.1995

(84) Designated Contracting States:
DE FR GB NL SE

(30) Priority: 20.12.1994 JP 316900/94
20.03.1995 JP 60732/95

(71) Applicant: MATSUSHITA ELECTRIC INDUSTRIAL
CO., LTD.
Kadoma-shi, Osaka-fu, 571 (JP)

(72) Inventors:
• Hayashino, Hiroshi
Hyogo-ken, (JP)
• Harada, Yasuo
Hyogo-ken, (JP)

• Kimura, Tomohiro
Kawachinagano-shi, Osaka-fu (JP)
• Uno, Yasuhiro
Osaka-fu, (JP)
• Oue, Hiroshi
Osaka-fu (JP)

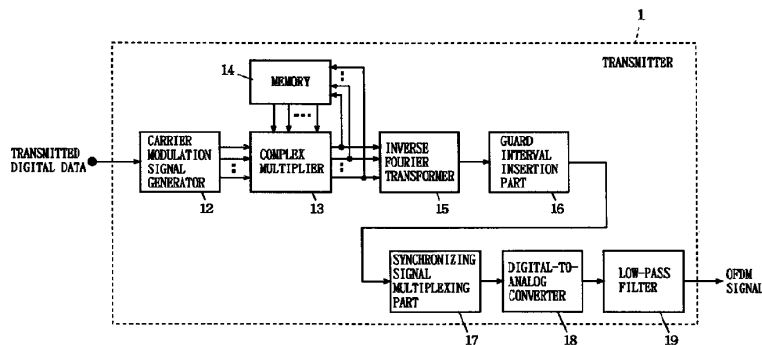
(74) Representative: Altenburg, Udo, Dipl.-Phys. et al
Patent- und Rechtsanwälte
Bardehle . Pagenberg . Dost . Altenburg .
Frohwitter . Geissler & Partner,
Postfach 86 06 20
81633 München (DE)

(54) OFDM system with additional protection against multipath effects

(57) A complex multiplier complex-multiplies a carrier modulation signal group for deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers which are orthogonal to each other on the frequency axis by a complex signal group having a predetermined specific pattern which varies in phase at random. An inverse Fourier transformer performs inverse Fourier transformation on an output of the complex multiplier, for transforming a digital signal which is multiplexed on the frequency axis to an OFDM signal on the time axis. A guard interval insertion part adds front and rear guard intervals to front and rear parts of each symbol of the OFDM signal respectively. The

front and rear guard intervals include data which are identical to those of rear and front end parts of the corresponding symbol respectively. Arithmetic processing which is reverse to that on a transmission side is performed on a receiving side, whereby distortion of received data is removed. Thus, the OFDM signal can be transmitted with no waveform distortion on a data component of each symbol on the frequency axis after Fourier transformation even if a reflected wave is superposed on a direct wave due to a multipath.

FIG. 1



Description

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to an orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (hereinafter referred to as OFDM) transmission method, and more specifically, it relates to a method of transmitting data between a transmission side and a receiving side through a wire or wireless transmission path with an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal including symbols of prescribed lengths and guard intervals of prescribed lengths which are arranged between the symbols.

Description of the Background Art

As well known in the art, an OFDM transmission system is adapted to divide coded data and sort the same into at least hundreds of carriers, for multiplexing and transmitting the data. In relation to digital sound broadcasting for movable terminals or terrestrial digital television broadcasting, communication through an OFDM signal is recently watched with interest. The OFDM signal can transmit a large quantity of data at a high speed while its characteristics are hardly deteriorated by reflected waves even if no waveform equalizer is provided. Further, this signal hardly causes a crossfire to another service since its signal waveform is close to that of a random noise.

A transmission system employing such an OFDM signal is disclosed in "Suitable for Mobile Receiving of OFDM Digital Broadcasting Employing at least Hundreds of Carriers" by Hajime Fukuchi of the Communications Research Laboratory, the Ministry of Posts and Telecommunications of Japan, "Data Compression and Digital Modulation", Nikkei Electronics Books, issued on October 1, 1993, pp. 207 to 222.

Fig. 13 is a block circuit diagram showing the structure of a conventional transmitter 5 for an OFDM signal which is disclosed in the aforementioned literature, and Fig. 14 illustrates the structure of an OFDM signal which is transmitted from the transmitter 5 shown in Fig. 13. Referring to Fig. 13, the transmitter 5 comprises a serial-to-parallel converter 52, an inverse Fourier transformer 53, a parallel-to-serial converter 54, a digital-to-analog converter 55, and a low-pass filter 56. Referring to Fig. 14, (a), (b) and (c) show direct, reflected and composite waves of the OFDM signal respectively, and (d) shows a time window W .

The serial-to-parallel converter 52 of the transmitter 5 is supplied with an input symbol train. The input symbol train is formed by digitally modulated transmission data, and each transmission symbol includes a plurality of data values. The digital modulation is performed by QPSK (quadrature phase shift keying) modulation or 16 QAM (quadrature amplitude modulation). The serial-to-parallel converter 52 serial-to-parallel converts the input sym-

bol train in every symbol, to obtain a plurality of symbol trains of a lower speed. The degree of parallelism is identical to the number (such as 512, for example, in the range of tens to thousands) of a plurality of carriers, which are orthogonal in phase to each other, employed in the inverse Fourier transformer 53. Due to this operation, the serial-to-parallel converter 52 outputs a group of carrier modulation signals for deciding the amplitudes and phases of the plurality of carriers which are employed in the inverse Fourier transformer 53.

The inverse Fourier transformer 53 allots the carrier modulation signals to the respective carriers which are lined up on the frequency axis in every symbol so that data for one symbol is transformed to a multiplex signal on the frequency axis, and collectively performs inverse Fourier transformation on the signals, thereby transforming the same to a multiplex signal (parallel digital signal in this stage) on the time axis.

The parallel-to-serial converter 54 parallel-to-serial converts the multiplex signal on the time axis, thereby forming a OFDM signal. The digital-to-analog converter 55 converts the OFDM signal to an analog OFDM baseband signal. The low-pass filter 56 limits the band of the OFDM baseband signal, so that no channel-to-channel interference is caused by aliasing.

Following the aforementioned series of operations, the transmitter 5 outputs the OFDM signal including guard intervals G_m and symbols S_m to the transmission path, as shown in Fig. 14. A demodulator (not shown) carries out signal processing which is reverse to that of the modulator 5 on the OFDM signal received through the transmission path, to reproduce an output symbol train which is identical to the input symbol train.

The so-called multipath is caused on the transmission path. Therefore, the receiver receives direct waves of the OFDM signal transmitted from the transmitter and reflected waves which are time-delayed from the direct waves in superposition. If a reflected wave (see (b) in Fig. 14) by the multipath is superposed on a direct wave (see (a) in Fig. 14) in the symbol S_m , for example, an interference part α_m with the guard interval G_m of the reflected wave is caused on a front end part of the symbol S_m of a composite wave (see (c) in Fig. 14), while an interference part β_m with a symbol S_{m-1} of the reflected wave is caused on a front end part of the guard interval G_m . At this time, the interference part β_m which is displaced from the time window W exerts no influence on Fourier transformation of the symbol S_m . However, the interference part α_m is caused in the time window W while the data component of the guard interval G_m is "0", and hence waveform distortion is disadvantageously caused on the data component of each symbol S_m on the frequency axis after the Fourier transformation.

On the other hand, a time delay is caused in the OFDM signal before the same reaches the receiver from the transmitter, due to delay characteristics of the transmission path, deviation in sampling timing resulting from mismatching between clocks of the digital-to-analog converter on the transmission side and an analog-to-dig-

ital converter on the receiving side, and the like. In the receiver, therefore, the time window W must disadvantageously be adjusted on the time axis.

The carrier modulation signals which are outputted from the serial-to-parallel converter 52 may not be out of phase with each other, but may be completely in phase with each other. For example, the carrier modulation signals are completely in phase with each other when a silent state is transmitted in excess of one symbol period in digital sound broadcasting or when a monochromatic picture is transmitted in excess of one symbol period in terrestrial digital television broadcasting. Also in the case of transmitting a sounding state or a multicolor picture, the carrier modulation signals tend to be completely in phase with each other in a digital modulation system such as the QPSK modulation or the 16 QAM, due to a limited number of signal points which are out of phase with each other.

When the carrier modulation signals are completely in phase with each other as described above and these signals are subjected to inverse Fourier transformation, nodes of the respective carriers match with each other on the time axis and addition/increase parts are concentrated to one portion on the time axis, and hence the OFDM signal has an impulsive signal waveform on the time axis, to cause power concentration. Figs. 15(a) to 15(d) show this situation.

Referring to Fig. 15(a), a group of n carrier modulation signals for modulating n carriers which are orthogonal to each other respectively are completely in phase with each other on a complex plane. Referring to Fig. 15(b), the n carriers which are modulated by the n carrier modulation signals shown in Fig. 15(a) are multiplexed on the time axis. When the carrier modulation signals are thus completely in phase with each other, the OFDM signal becomes an impulsive waveform signal. Referring to Fig. 15(c), on the other hand, a group of n carrier modulation signals for modulating n carriers which are orthogonal to each other respectively are at random in phase on a complex plane. Referring to Fig. 15(d), the n carriers which are modulated by the n carrier modulation signals shown in Fig. 15(c) are multiplexed on the time axis. When the carrier modulation signals are thus completely out of phase from each other, the OFDM signal is evenly diffused on the time axis, and becomes a random waveform signal.

As hereinabove described, the OFDM signal has an impulsive waveform to extremely increase the maximum power when the carrier modulation signals are completely in phase with each other, and hence the OFDM signal is disadvantageously readily influenced by nonlinearity of the transmitter, the receiver, a relay amplifier such as a satellite or a CATV included in the transmission path and the like. In this case, the dynamic ranges of the transmitter, the receiver, the relay amplifier and the like may be increased to exert no influences of nonlinearity on the impulsive OFDM signal, while the cost for the transmitter, the receiver, the relay amplifier and the like is disadvantageously increased in this case.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Accordingly, an object of the present invention is to provide a method of transmitting an OFDM signal which causes no waveform distortion in a data component of each symbol on the frequency axis after Fourier transformation even if a reflected wave is superposed on a direct wave through a multipath, and a transmitter and a receiver therefor.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a method of transmitting an OFDM signal which can readily adjust a time window on the time axis even if a time delay is caused in the OFDM signal before the same reaches a receiving side from a transmission side, and a transmitter and a receiver therefor.

Still another object of the present invention is to provide a method of transmitting an OFDM signal which can reduce an influence of nonlinearity on the OFDM signal in a low-priced structure, and a transmitter and a receiver therefor.

A first aspect of the present invention is directed to a method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in every symbol of a prescribed length from a transmission side to a receiving side through a wire or wireless transmission path, and the method comprises:

a first step of transforming a carrier modulation signal group deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers which are orthogonal to each other on the frequency axis to the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis by performing inverse Fourier transformation in every symbol; and

a second step of adding front and rear guard intervals, including data which are identical to those of rear and front end parts of each symbol of the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, to front and rear parts of the symbol respectively and transmitting the same to the receiving side.

According to the first aspect of the present invention, as hereinabove described, the front and rear guard intervals including the data which are identical to those of parts of each symbol are added to the front and rear parts of the symbol in transmission of each symbol of the OFDM signal, whereby all data components in a single symbol interval which are lined up on the time axis can be reproduced on the receiving side even if a time window in the Fourier transformation is slightly displaced from the symbol interval of the received signal. Therefore, it is not necessary to correctly coincide the time window with the symbol interval even if a time delay is caused in the OFDM signal before the same reaches the receiving side from the transmission side, whereby the time window can be readily adjusted on the time axis. Even if a symbol interval of a direct wave is superposed with a guard interval of a reflected wave due to a multipath, further, amplitude/phase distortion of each data component appearing on the frequency axis after the Fourier transformation on the receiving side is homogeneous in every symbol. Therefore, such waveform dis-

tortion can be readily removed from data components on the frequency axis of one symbol interval on the receiving side by simple arithmetic processing such as multiplication or addition.

In a preferred embodiment of the aforementioned first aspect, the carrier modulation signal group is complex-multiplied by a reference complex signal group on the frequency axis, so that the complex multiplication result is transformed to an OFDM signal and transmitted to the receiving side. On the receiving side, on the other hand, the OFDM signal which is transmitted from the transmission side is transformed to a receiving carrier modulation signal group so that this receiving carrier modulation signal group is complex-divided by the reference complex signal group on the frequency axis. Even if a time delay is caused in the OFDM signal between the transmission side and the receiving side, therefore, modulated data can be obtained on the receiving side with no influence by the time delay.

As to the reference complex signal group for complex-multiplying the carrier modulation signal group, a result of complex multiplication which is carried out in advance of a constant symbol may be employed with respect to each symbol of the carrier modulation signal group.

Alternatively, the reference complex signal group may be prepared from a complex signal group having a predetermined specific pattern with signals which vary in phase at random. In this case, a complex multiplication result which is obtained in a third step is ordinarily transformed to an OFDM signal, while the reference complex signal group is periodically transformed to an OFDM signal. Thus, the absolute reference phases of the respective signals of the carrier modulation signal group are random values, whereby the OFDM signal obtained by the inverse Fourier transformation can be suppressed from time concentration of power. Thus, it is not necessary to increase the dynamic ranges of the transmitter, the receiver and the transmission path but influences exerted by nonlinearity of the transmitter, the receiver and a relay amplifier on the OFDM signal can be reduced through a low-priced structure.

A second aspect of the present invention is directed to a transmitter for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, which is an apparatus for transmitting the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal to a receiving side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, and the transmitter comprises:

a memory part storing a reference complex signal group;

a complex multiplication part, complex-multiplying a carrier modulation signal group deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers which are orthogonal to each other on the frequency axis, by the reference complex signal group stored in the memory part on the frequency axis, for outputting a transmission carrier modulation signal group;

an inverse Fourier transformation part performing

an inverse Fourier operation on the transmission carrier modulation signal group which is outputted from the complex multiplication part in every symbol thereby transforming the transmission carrier modulation signal group to the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis;

a guard interval addition part adding front and rear guard intervals, including data which are identical to those of rear and front end parts of each symbol of the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal outputted from the inverse Fourier transformation part, to front and rear parts of the symbol respectively; and

a transmission part transmitting the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal having the added front and rear guard intervals to the receiving side in every symbol.

In a preferred embodiment of the aforementioned second aspect, the memory part stores a complex multiplication result of the complex multiplication part which is precedent to a constant symbol as the reference complex signal group.

In another preferred embodiment of the aforementioned second aspect, the memory part stores a predetermined complex signal group as the reference complex signal group. On the other hand, the complex multiplication part complex-multiplies the carrier modulation signal group by the reference complex signal group which is stored in the memory part on the frequency axis and outputs the result. Further, the inverse Fourier transformation part ordinarily transforms the complex multiplication result which is outputted from the complex multiplication part to an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in every symbol, and periodically transforms the reference complex signal group which is outputted from the memory part to an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal.

According to the aforementioned second aspect, the memory part may hold an output of a pseudo-noise signal generation part generating a pseudo-noise signal or that of a frequency sweep signal generation part generating a frequency sweep signal as the reference complex signal group.

A third aspect of the present invention is directed to a receiver for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, which is an apparatus for receiving the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal transmitted from a transmission side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, and the receiver comprises:

a Fourier transformation part performing a Fourier transformation operation on the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis in every symbol thereby transforming the orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal to a receiving carrier modulation signal group on the frequency axis;

a memory part storing the receiving carrier modulation signal group which is outputted from the Fourier transformation part in every symbol as a receiving reference complex signal group; and

a complex division part complex-dividing the receiving carrier modulation signal group which is outputted from the Fourier transformation part by the receiving reference complex signal group which is stored in the memory part on the frequency axis.

A fourth aspect of the present invention is directed to a method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal from a transmission side to a receiving side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, and the method comprises:

a first step of forming a carrier modulation signal group for deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers which are orthogonal to each other on the frequency axis in every symbol;

a second step of generating a complex signal group having a predetermined specific pattern with signals varying in phase at random;

a third step of complex-multiplying the carrier modulation signal group by the complex signal group on the frequency axis in every symbol, thereby randomizing phases of respective signals of the carrier modulation signal group; and

a fourth step of ordinarily transforming the carrier modulation signal group having the signals which are randomized in phase in the third step to an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis by inverse Fourier transformation in every symbol, and periodically transforming the complex signal group to an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal by inverse Fourier transformation, for transmitting the same to the receiving side respectively.

The foregoing and other objects, features, aspects and advantages of the present invention will become more apparent from the following detailed description of the present invention when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a block diagram showing the structure of a transmitter 1 according to a first embodiment of the present invention;

Fig. 2 is a block diagram showing the structure of a receiver 2 according to the first embodiment of the present invention;

Fig. 3 illustrates the structure of an OFDM signal which is transmitted from the transmitter 1 shown in Fig. 1;

Fig. 4 illustrates operations of a memory 14 and a complex multiplier 13 shown in Fig. 1;

Fig. 5 illustrates operations of an envelope wave detector 23 and a synchronous reproducer 24 of the receiver 2 with respect to the OFDM signal which is outputted from the transmitter 1 shown in Fig. 1;

Fig. 6 illustrates operations of a memory 26 and a complex divider 27 shown in Fig. 2;

Fig. 7 illustrates comparative results of a simulation for comparing a conventional system and the system

according to the first embodiment with each other in relation to influences exerted by delayed waves by multipaths;

Fig. 8 illustrates results of a simulation for comparing the conventional system and the system according to the first embodiment with each other in relation to influences exerted by time delays through transmission paths etc.;

Fig. 9 is a block diagram showing the structure of a transmitter according to a second embodiment of the present invention;

Fig. 10 illustrates the situation of a complex multiplication of a carrier modulation signal group by a complex signal group in a complex multiplier 13 shown in Fig. 9;

Fig. 11 illustrates operations of a memory 14 and the complex multiplier 13 shown in Fig. 9;

Fig. 12 is a signal structural diagram showing the structure of an OFDM signal which is transmitted from the transmitter shown in Fig. 9;

Fig. 13 is a block diagram showing the structure of a conventional transmitter 5 for an OFDM signal;

Fig. 14 illustrates the structure of the OFDM signal which is transmitted from the transmitter 5 shown in Fig. 13; and

Figs. 15(a) to 15(d) are signal waveform diagrams showing the relations between phase states of carrier modulation signal groups allotted to carriers which are orthogonal to each other and OFDM signals respectively.

DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

With reference to the drawings, description is now made on embodiments of a method of transmitting an OFDM signal, and a transmitter and a receiver employed therefor according to the present invention.

Fig. 1 is a block diagram showing a transmitter 1 according to a first embodiment of the present invention, Fig. 2 is a block diagram showing the structure of a receiver 2 according to the first embodiment of the present invention, and Fig. 3 illustrates an exemplary structure of an OFDM signal which is employed in the present invention. Referring to Fig. 3, (a) and (b) show direct and reflected waves of the OFDM signal respectively and (c) and (d) show direct and reflected waves of the OFDM signal causing time delays respectively, while (e) shows a time window W.

The transmitter 1 shown in Fig. 1 and the receiver 2 shown in Fig. 2 are connected with each other through a transmission path (not shown) such as a coaxial cable or an optical fiber cable. The transmitter 1 and the receiver 2 are employed in a digital CATV system, for example. The transmitter 1 is adapted to transmit picture data for multiple channels of a television, for example, to the receiver 2 through an OFDM signal.

Referring to Fig. 1, the transmitter 1 comprises a carrier modulation signal generator 12, a complex multiplier

13, a memory 14, an inverse Fourier transformer 15, a guard interval insertion part 16, a synchronizing signal multiplexing part 17, a digital-to-analog converter 18, and a low-pass filter 19.

The carrier modulation signal generator 12 of the transmitter 1 receives transmitted digital data (bit stream signal) to be transmitted to the receiver 2. The carrier modulation signal generator 12 digital-modulates the inputted transmitted digital data and serial-to-parallel converts the same in every symbol interval, thereby converting the data to a carrier modulation signal group including n (512, for example, in the range of tens to thousands) carrier modulation signals for modulating n carriers which are orthogonal to each other. The digital modulation is performed by QPSK modulation or 16 QAM. The carrier modulation signal group in this stage is similar to that outputted from the serial-to-parallel converter 52 (see Fig. 13) of the conventional transmitter. The carrier modulation signal group which is outputted from the carrier modulation signal generator 12 is supplied to the complex multiplier 13. The memory 14 can store such a carrier modulation signal group $D'm$ outputted from the complex multiplier 13 for one symbol. When a carrier modulation signal group Dm is inputted in the complex multiplier 13, the memory 14 outputs a carrier modulation signal group $D'm-1$, which is precedent to one symbol, stored therein to the complex multiplier 13 as a prescribed reference complex signal group. The complex multiplier 13 complex-multiplies the inputted transmission signal group Dm by the reference complex signal group $D'm-1$ which is precedent by one symbol on the frequency axis, thereby forming the following carrier modulation signal group:

$$D'm \ (D'm = Dm \times D'm-1)$$

Assuming that $Dm[k]_{\text{real}}$ represents the real number part of a k -th ($k = 1, 2, \dots, n$) carrier modulation signal of the carrier modulation signal group, including n carrier modulation signals, which is inputted in the complex multiplier 13 and $Dm[k]_{\text{imag}}$ represents the imaginary number part thereof while $D'm-1[k]_{\text{real}}$ represents the real number part of the k -th carrier modulation signal which is stored in the memory 14 and $D'm-1[k]_{\text{imag}}$ represents the imaginary number part thereof, the complex multiplier 13 carries out multiplication processing as to the real and imaginary number parts of each carrier modulation signal, for outputting:

$$D'm[k]_{\text{real}} = Dm[k]_{\text{real}} \times D'm-1[k]_{\text{real}}$$

$$D'm[k]_{\text{imag}} = Dm[k]_{\text{imag}} \times D'm-1[k]_{\text{imag}}$$

The memory 14 stores the carrier modulation signal $D'm$ (including $D'm[k]_{\text{real}}$ and $D'm[k]_{\text{imag}}$) of the real and imaginary numbers outputted from the complex multiplier 13. As shown in Fig. 4, the memory 14 and the complex multiplier 13 repeatedly execute the aforementioned operations.

The inverse Fourier transformer 15 successively allots the respective carrier modulation signals included in the carrier modulation signal group $D'm$ which is outputted from the complex multiplier 13 to the respective carriers which are lined up on the frequency axis in every symbol interval, collectively performs inverse Fourier transformation thereon, and further performs parallel-to-serial conversion, thereby transforming the carrier modulation signal group multiplexed with the respective data components on the frequency axis to an OFDM signal $D'mt$ multiplexed with the respective data components on the time axis.

The guard interval insertion part 16 temporarily stores the digital OFDM signal $D'mt$ which is outputted from the inverse Fourier transformer 15 in its internal buffer in every symbol interval. Then, the guard interval insertion circuit 16 adds front and rear guard intervals G_{hm} and G_{em} to front and rear parts of each symbol S_m (see Fig. 3). Time lengths tg_1 and tg_2 of the front and rear guard intervals G_{hm} and G_{em} are prescribed in consideration of time difference between direct and indirect waves due to a multipath caused in the transmission path and time delays resulting from sampling deviation between the digital-to-analog converter 18 of the transmitter 1 and an analog-to-digital converter 22 of the receiver 2. Further, the front and rear guard intervals G_{hm} and G_{em} include data $D'emt$ and $D'hmt$ which are identical to those of rear and front end parts S_{em} and S_{hm} of the corresponding symbol S_m respectively. Thus, the substantial symbol length is extended to $tg_1 + t_s + tg_2$. The guard interval insertion part 16 successively outputs the data $D'emt$, $D'm$ and $D'hmt$ through the front guard interval G_{hm} , the symbol S_m and the rear guard interval G_{em} .

The synchronizing signal multiplexing part 17 multiplexes a synchronizing signal on the OFDM signal to which the guard intervals are added on the time axis in every symbol in order to indicate the breakpoint of the symbol, and outputs the signal to the digital-to-analog converter 18. The synchronizing signal is formed by a periodically known nonmodulated carrier, a suppression signal etc. with respect to the OFDM signal, as shown at (a) in Fig. 5, for example.

The digital-to-analog converter 18 converts the OFDM signal of the digital data, to which the guard intervals and the synchronizing signal are added, outputted from the synchronizing signal multiplexing part 17 to an analog OFDM baseband signal. The low-pass filter 19 limits the band of the OFDM baseband signal, so that no channel-to-channel interference is caused by aliasing.

As the result of the aforementioned series of operations, the transmitter 1 outputs the OFDM signal including the guard intervals and the synchronizing signal to the transmission path.

Referring to Fig. 2, the receiver 2 comprises a low-pass filter 21, the analog-to-digital converter 22, an envelope detector 23, a synchronous reproducing part 24, a Fourier transformer 25, a memory 26, a complex divider 27, and a transmission data reproducer 28.

The low-pass filter 21 removes unnecessary spectral components of a high-frequency region from the OFDM signal which is received through the transmission path.

In consideration of a time delay Δt caused by the multipath or the delay characteristics of the transmission path, the OFDM signal which is received in the receiver 2 is represented by $ZD'mt$, where Z represents the signal delay as follows:

$$Z = \exp j2\pi fc\Delta t$$

The analog-to-digital converter 22 converts data $ZD'emt$, $ZD'mt$ and $ZD'hmt$ which are included in the front guard interval Ghm , the symbol S_m and the rear guard interval Gem of the analog OFDM signal respectively to those of a digital OFDM signal.

The envelope detector 23 envelope-detects the OFDM signal, thereby outputting an envelope detection signal shown at (b) in Fig. 5 in every symbol. The synchronous reproducing part 24 outputs a reference timing signal shown at (c) in Fig. 5 in every symbol on the basis of the envelope detection signal outputted from the envelope detector 23. This reference timing signal is inputted in the Fourier transformer 25 and the memory 26.

The Fourier transformer 25 observes the OFDM signal which is outputted from the analog-to-digital converter 22 in synchronization with the reference timing signal through the time window W (see (e) in Fig. 3) of the same length as the symbol length t_s , thereby extracting only necessary data parts of the respective symbols. The Fourier transformer 25 further performs Fourier transformation operations on the extracted data parts, thereby transforming the OFDM signal on the time axis to a receiving carrier modulation signal group on the frequency axis.

The memory 26 stores the receiving carrier modulation signal group which is outputted from the Fourier transformer 25 for one symbol. When the transmitter 1 transmits data $D'm$, the memory 26 stores data $ZD'm$ as corresponding data. The data $ZD'm$ is obtained by adding a time delay Z caused by the multipath or the transmission path to the data $D'm$, as follows:

$$ZD'm = D'm \times \exp j2\pi fc\Delta t$$

The memory 26 outputs the data $ZD'm$ to the complex divider 27 in synchronization with the reference timing signal. The complex divider 27 establishes synchronization, and then complex-divides data $ZD'm+1$ of a symbol S_{m+1} which is outputted from the Fourier transformer 25 by the data $ZD'm$ held in the memory 26. Namely, the complex divider 27 performs the following operation:

$$ZD'm+1/ZD'm = D'm+1/D'm = Dm+1$$

As shown in Fig. 6, the Fourier transformer 25, the memory 26 and the complex divider 27 repeatedly execute the aforementioned operations.

As hereinabove described, a relative time delay is caused between the direct and reflected waves shown at (a) and (b) in Fig. 3, due to the multipath. Further, specific time delays are caused in the direct and reflected waves, due to the difference in sampling timing between the digital-to-analog converter 18 of the transmitter 1 and the analog-to-digital converter 22 of the receiver 2 (see (c) and (d) in Fig. 3). These time delays are not taken into consideration in the Fourier transformer 25 as to the reference timing signal, and hence positions of the receiving side time window W on the time axis are displaced from the symbol intervals of the received signal, as shown at (e) in Fig. 3.

Even if the time window W is displaced from correct symbol intervals in the Fourier transformer 25 of the receiving side, however, the data observed through the time window W include all data $ZD'mt$ on the time axis which must be originally included in one symbol interval since the front and rear guard intervals Ghm and Gem include the data $ZD'emt$ and $ZD'hmt$ respectively. Therefore, the time delays and superposition of the reflected waves appear as uniform amplitude/phase distortion in every data component on the frequency axis. When the time delays and the characteristics of the reflected waves are uniform, the values of the amplitude/phase distortion in the respective symbol intervals are equal to each other. According to this embodiment, the complex divider 27 complex-divides the data $ZD'm+1$ of the symbol S_{m+1} which is outputted from the Fourier transformer 25 by the data $ZD'm$ held in the memory 26, thereby canceling the data delay Z and obtaining the original carrier modulation signal group $Dm+1$ with no delay. Namely, the amplitude/phase distortion is canceled by the following operation of the complex divider 27:

$$ZD'm+1/ZD'm = D'm+1/D'm = Dm+1$$

Thus, data Dm having no phase/amplitude distortion can be obtained as to each symbol.

According to this embodiment, as hereinabove described, the guard intervals including the data which are identical to those of the front and rear end parts of each symbol are added to the front and rear parts of the symbol respectively for transmitting the data, whereby all data components in one symbol interval which are lined up on the time axis can be reproduced on the receiving side as to both of the direct and reflected waves in the time window W . Therefore, the respective data components appearing on the frequency axis after the Fourier transformation are uniform in amplitude/phase distortion even if the reflected waves are superposed on the direct waves by the multipath to result in superposition of the symbol intervals of the direct waves and the guard intervals of the reflected waves. Therefore, waveform distortion can be readily removed from the receiving carrier modulation signal group on the frequency axis of one symbol interval by executing proper operations (multiplication and division) on the transmission and receiving sides.

According to this embodiment, further, demodulated data can be obtained with no time delay even if a time delay is caused in the OFDM signal between the transmission and receiving sides, by complex-multiplying and complex-dividing the receiving carrier modulation signal group by the prescribed reference complex signal group on the frequency axis. Consequently, it is not necessary to correctly coincide the time window with the symbol interval.

The transmission data reproducer 28 demaps signal points of the receiving carrier modulation signal group D_m which is outputted from the complex divider 27 on a complex plane and decides the signal points, thereby obtaining a receiving digital signal group which is identical in value to the transmission digital signal group of the transmitter 1. As hereinabove described, phase distortion and amplitude distortion are removed from the receiving carrier modulation signal group D_m . Therefore, the transmission data reproducer 28 can correctly and readily determine the original data from the mapping positions on the complex plane.

The inventors have made simulations of comparing the system according to this embodiment with the conventional system with respect to influences exerted by waves delayed by multipaths and those exerted by time axis delays respectively through a calculator. Each simulation was executed on such conditions that the carrier number was 512, only data of a 256-th carrier had an amplitude "1" and a phase "0", and all data of the remaining carriers were "0".

Fig. 7 illustrates the results of the simulation for comparing the system according to this embodiment with the conventional system as to the influences exerted by waves delayed by multipaths. Referring to Fig. 7, (a), (b), (c) and (d) show data distortion states in the case of transforming direct, indirect, composite and composite waves in the conventional system to signals on the frequency axis by Fourier operations respectively. On the other hand, (e), (f), (g) and (h) show data distortion states in the case of converting direct, indirect, composite and composite waves in the system according to this embodiment to signals on the frequency axis by Fourier operations respectively.

In the conventional system, no data is inserted in any guard interval (see $\alpha 1$ at (b) in Fig. 7), and hence an interference part $\alpha 2$ appears in a time window W of the composite wave (see (c) in Fig. 7). When the composite wave is transformed to a signal on the frequency axis by a Fourier operation in the time window W , therefore, the spectrum of the data of the 256-th carrier is spread and the data of the remaining carriers, which must have originally been "0", are distorted. Thus, the transmission data reproducer 28 readily causes an erroneous determination. Further, the transmission data reproducer 28 also readily causes erroneous determinations as to other carriers. In the system according to this embodiment, on the other hand, data are inserted in the guard intervals and hence no influences are exerted on the data of the remaining carriers.

Fig. 8 illustrates the results of the simulation for comparing the system according to this embodiment with the conventional system as to the influences exerted by time delays caused by transmission paths etc. Referring to Fig. 8, (a) shows a spectrum obtained under such conditions that only the data of the 256-th carrier had an amplitude "1" and a phase "0", and (b) shows a signal waveform in the case of transforming the data at (a) to a signal on the time axis by an inverse Fourier operation. Referring to Fig. 8, further, (c) and (d) show data distortion states in the case of transforming composite and composite waves causing time delays in the conventional system to signals on the frequency axis by Fourier operations respectively. On the other hand, (e) and (f) show data distortion states in the case of transforming composite and composite waves causing time delays in the system according to this embodiment to signals on the frequency axis by Fourier operations respectively.

In the conventional system, no data is inserted in any guard interval (see $\alpha 1$ at (c) in Fig. 8), and hence an interference part $\alpha 2$ appears in a time window W of the composite wave, similarly to the case shown at (c) in Fig. 7. When the composite wave is transformed to a signal on the frequency axis by a Fourier operation in the time window W , therefore, the spectrum of the data of the 256-th carrier is spread and the data of the remaining carriers, which must have originally been "0", are distorted, as shown at (d) in Fig. 8. Thus, the transmission data reproducer 28 readily causes erroneous determinations also as to other carriers. In the system according to this embodiment, on the other hand, data are inserted in the guard intervals and hence no influences are exerted on the data of the remaining carriers.

Fig. 9 is a block diagram showing the structure of a transmitter 3 according to a second embodiment of the present invention. In the transmitter 3 shown in Fig. 9, portions corresponding to those of the transmitter 1 shown in Fig. 1 are denoted by the same reference numerals, to omit redundant description. As to the embodiment shown in Fig. 9, it is to be noted that a memory 14 holds an output of a specific pattern generator 31, i.e., a complex signal group D_0 having a predetermined specific pattern with signals which mutually vary in phase at random. Such a complex signal group D_0 can be formed by a pseudo-noise signal generator comprising a PN series pseudo-random signal generator for generating a pseudo-random signal which is at a level between zero and 1 and a multiplier for multiplying the pseudo-random signal by 2π for generating a unit vector signal in a phase having a random value in the range of zero to 2π and an amplitude of 1, for example. Alternatively, the complex signal group D_0 can be formed by a frequency sweep signal generator for generating a known frequency sweep signal in a phase having a random value in the range of zero to 2π .

A complex multiplier 13 complex-multiplies data D_m of each symbol interval by data D_0 on the frequency axis every time data D_m is inputted for forming data $D'm$ ($D'm = D_m \times D_0$), thereby randomizing mutual phases

of respective carrier modulation signals included in a carrier modulation signal group to specific patterns.

Fig. 10 illustrates a complex multiplication operation in the complex multiplier 13. In particular, (a) in Fig. 10 shows arrangement of signal points which can be taken by the carrier modulation signals when 16 QAM is employed as a modulation system, (b) shows a unit vector i whose phase varies at random, and (c) shows a carrier modulation signal whose phase is randomized to a specific pattern.

Referring to (a) in Fig. 10, it is assumed that a carrier modulation signal included in a carrier modulation signal group which is allotted to one carrier is arranged at a signal point A on a complex plane. The signal A has a real number part of 3 and an imaginary number part of 1. It is also assumed that the unit vector i has a phase angle of $3\pi/4$ at this time. A carrier modulation signal A' shown at (c) in Fig. 10 is obtained as the result of a complex multiplication. The carrier modulation signal A' has a real number part of -2.8 and an imaginary number part of 1.4, and takes a signal point which is not present in the arrangement of the 16 QAM. Thus, the phase of the unit vector i varies at random, and hence the complex multiplier 13 outputs a carrier modulation signal group having signals whose phases are mutually randomized to an inverse Fourier transformer 15 even if respective carrier modulation signals included in a carrier modulation signal group which is outputted from a carrier modulation signal generator 12 are in phase with each other.

The complex multiplier 13 repeats such an operation for a prescribed period. Further, the complex multiplier 13 periodically outputs only the data D0. Fig. 11 shows a series of such operations. Assuming that S0 represents a symbol in which the data D0 is inserted, the transmitter 3 periodically outputs the data D0 of the symbol S0 while outputting data Dm of a symbol Sm in other case, as shown in Fig. 12. The inverse Fourier transformer 15 allots the carrier modulation signal group D'm to respective carriers which are lined up on the frequency axis in every symbol, and collectively performs inverse Fourier transformation and parallel-to-serial conversion thereon, thereby converting the same to a digital OFDM signal. Consequently, absolute reference phases of the carrier modulation signal group are at random values in the range of zero to 2π whereby the OFDM signal outputted from the inverse Fourier transformer 15 can be suppressed from power concentration. Thus, it is not necessary to increase the dynamic ranges of the transmitter 3 and a receiver but influences exerted on the OFDM signal by nonlinearity of the transmitter, the receiver, a relay amplifier etc. can be reduced through a low-priced structure. The remaining circuit blocks in the transmitter 3, i.e., those from a guard interval insertion part 16 to a low-pass filter 19, operate similarly to those in the transmitter 1.

The guard interval insertion part 16 inserts a data component D0 which is identical to that of a rear end part of the symbol S0 in a corresponding front guard interval, while inserting a data component which is identical to

that of a front end part of the symbol S0 in a corresponding rear guard interval, similarly to the case of the symbol Sm.

When the transmitter 3 shown in Fig. 9 is employed, a receiver of the same structure as the receiver 2 shown in Fig. 2 can basically be employed. In this case, however, a memory 26 of the receiver stores receiving data ZD0 of a reference complex signal group D0 which is stored in the memory 14 of the transmitter 3.

Also in the embodiment shown in Fig. 9, an effect similar to that of the aforementioned first embodiment can be attained. Namely, amplitude/phase distortion of a receiving carrier modulation signal group appearing on the frequency axis after Fourier transformation is entirely uniform even if reflected waves are superposed on direct waves by a multipath and symbol intervals of the direct waves are superposed with guard intervals of the reflected waves, and can be removed by simple operations (multiplication and division). Further, demodulated data can be obtained with no influence by a time delay even if such a time delay is caused in the OFDM signal between the transmission and receiving sides, whereby a time window can be readily adjusted on the time axis.

While the data are transmitted through wire transmission paths in the aforementioned embodiments, the present invention is not restricted to this but data may alternatively be transmitted through a wireless transmission path. While television picture data for multichannels are carried on the respective carriers in the aforementioned embodiments, picture data for one channel may alternatively be time-shared and sequenced in a parallel manner, to be allotted to respective carriers. Further, voice data, text data or the like may be carried on the respective carriers, in place of the picture data. In addition, the present invention may alternatively be carried out in another system such as LAN or WAN, in place of the CATV.

While the reference complex signal group outputted from the memory 14 is periodically inputted in the inverse Fourier transformer 15 through the complex multiplier 13 in the transmitter 3 shown in Fig. 9, the reference complex signal group may alternatively be directly inputted in the inverse Fourier transformer 15.

While the transmitter 3 shown in Fig. 9 employs the complex signal group D0 including signals having a predetermined specific pattern and phases which mutually vary at random as the reference complex signal group to be included in the carrier modulation signal group, further, the reference complex signal group to be included in the carrier modulation signal group may alternatively be formed by a complex signal group including signals having a predetermined specific pattern which are in phase with each other under a situation causing no power concentration in the OFDM signal. Also in this case, amplitude/phase distortion can be removed by simple operations (multiplication and division), similarly to the first embodiment.

Although the present invention has been described and illustrated in detail, it is clearly understood that the

same is by way of illustration and example only and is not to be taken by way of limitation, the spirit and scope of the present invention being limited only by the terms of the appended claims.

Claims

1. A method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal from a transmission side to a receiving side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, said method comprising:

a first step of transforming a carrier modulation signal group deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers being orthogonal to each other on the frequency axis to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis by performing inverse Fourier transformation in every symbol; and

a second step of adding front and rear guard intervals, including data being identical to those of rear and front end parts of each symbol of said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, to front and rear parts of said symbol respectively and transmitting the same to said receiving side.

2. The method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 1, further comprising a third step of complex-multiplying said carrier modulation signal group by a reference complex signal group on the frequency axis,

said first step being adapted to transform a complex multiplication result being obtained in said third step to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal.

3. The method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 2, wherein said third step is adapted to complex-multiply each said carrier modulation group by a result of complex multiplication, being carried out in advance of a constant symbol, serving as said reference complex signal group with respect to each said symbol of said carrier modulation signal group.

4. The method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 2, further comprising a fourth step of generating a complex signal group having a predetermined specific pattern with signals varying in phase at random,

said third step employs said complex signal group being obtained in said fourth step as said reference complex signal group with respect to each said symbol of said carrier modulation signal group, and

said first step ordinarily transforms said complex multiplication result being obtained in said third step to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, while periodically transforming said refer-

ence complex signal group to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal.

5. The method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 2, further comprising:

a fifth step of transforming said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal being transmitted from said transmission side to a receiving carrier modulation signal group corresponding to said carrier modulation signal group in every symbol of said prescribed length, and

a sixth step of complex-dividing said receiving signal group being obtained in said fifth step by a prescribed reference complex signal group on the frequency axis.

6. A transmitter for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, being an apparatus for transmitting said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal to a receiving side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, said transmitter comprising:

memory means storing a reference complex signal group;

complex multiplication means complex-multiplying a carrier modulation signal group deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers being orthogonal to each other on the frequency axis by said reference complex signal group being stored in said memory means on the frequency axis, for outputting a transmission carrier modulation signal group;

inverse Fourier transformation means performing an inverse Fourier operation on said transmission carrier modulation signal group being outputted from said complex multiplication means in every symbol thereby transforming said transmission carrier modulation signal group to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis;

guard interval addition means adding front and rear guard intervals, including data being identical to those of rear and front end parts of each symbol of said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal outputted from said inverse Fourier transformation means, to front and rear parts of said symbol respectively; and

transmission means transmitting said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal having added said front and rear guard intervals to said receiving side in every symbol.

7. The transmitter for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 6, wherein said memory means stores a complex multiplication result of said complex multiplication means in advance of a constant symbol as said reference complex signal group.

8. The transmitter for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 6, wherein said memory means stores a predetermined complex signal group as said reference complex signal group, 5
- said complex multiplication means complex-multiplies said carrier modulation signal group by said reference complex signal group being stored in said memory means on the frequency axis for outputting the same, and 10
- said inverse Fourier transformation means ordinarily transforms a complex multiplication result being outputted from said complex multiplication means to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in every symbol, while periodically transforming said reference complex signal group being outputted from said memory means to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal. 15
9. The transmitter for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 8, wherein said memory means holds an output of pseudo-noise signal generation means generating a pseudo-noise signal as said reference complex signal group. 20 25
10. The transmitter for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal in accordance with claim 8, wherein said memory means holds an output of frequency sweep signal generation means generating a frequency sweep signal as said reference complex signal group. 30
11. A receiver for an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal, being an apparatus for receiving said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal being transmitted from a transmission side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, said receiver comprising: 35
- Fourier transformation means performing a Fourier transformation operation on said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis in every symbol, thereby transforming said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal to a receiving carrier modulation signal group on the frequency axis; 40 45
- memory means storing said receiving carrier modulation signal group being outputted from said Fourier transformation means every constant symbol as a receiving reference complex signal group; 50
- and
- complex division means complex-dividing said receiving carrier modulation signal group being outputted from said Fourier transformation means by said receiving reference complex signal group being stored in said memory means on the frequency axis. 55
12. A method of transmitting an orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal from a transmission side to a receiving side in every symbol of a prescribed length through a wire or wireless transmission path, said method comprising:
- a first step of forming a carrier modulation signal group for deciding the phases and amplitudes of a plurality of carriers being orthogonal to each other in every symbol on the frequency axis;
- a second step of generating a complex signal group having a predetermined specific pattern with signals varying in phase at random;
- a third step of complex-multiplying said carrier modulation signal group by said complex signal group in every symbol on the frequency axis, thereby randomizing the phases of respective signals of said carrier modulation signal group; and
- a fourth step of ordinarily transforming said carrier modulation signal group having said signals being randomized in phase in said third step to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal on the time axis by performing inverse Fourier transformation in every symbol while periodically transforming said complex signal group to said orthogonal frequency division multiplex signal by inverse Fourier transformation, for transmitting the same to said receiving side respectively.

FIG. 1

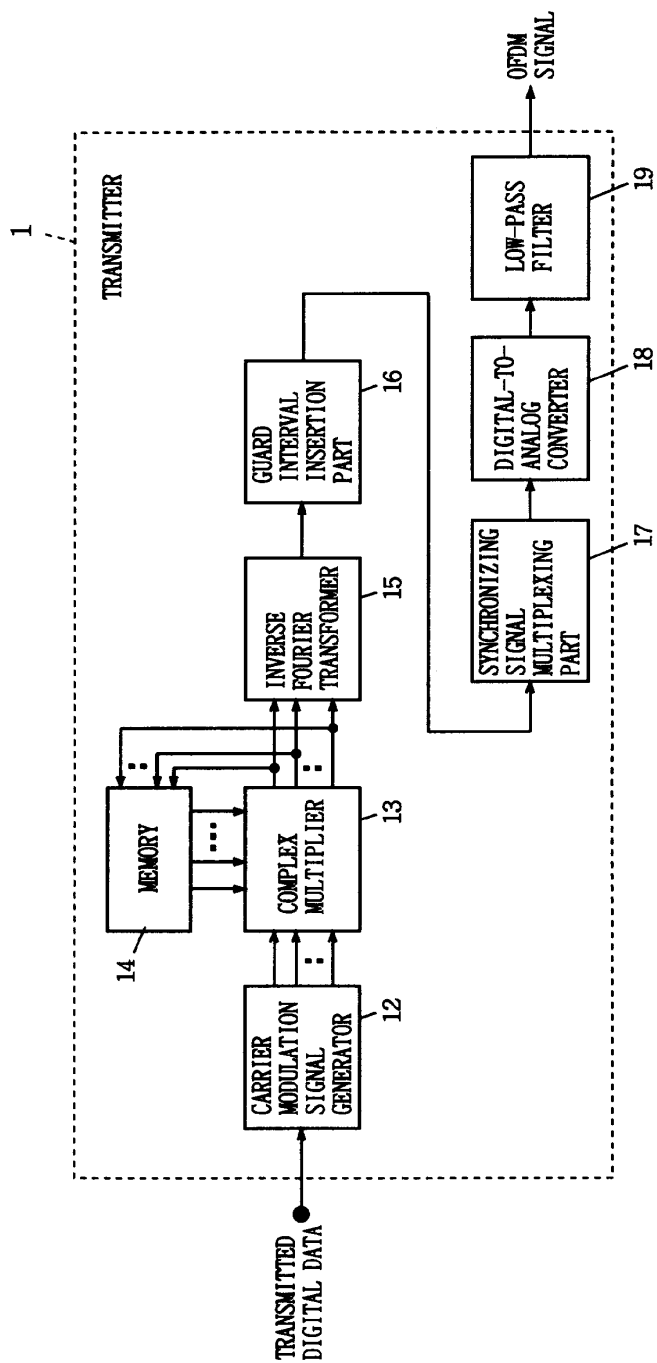


FIG. 2

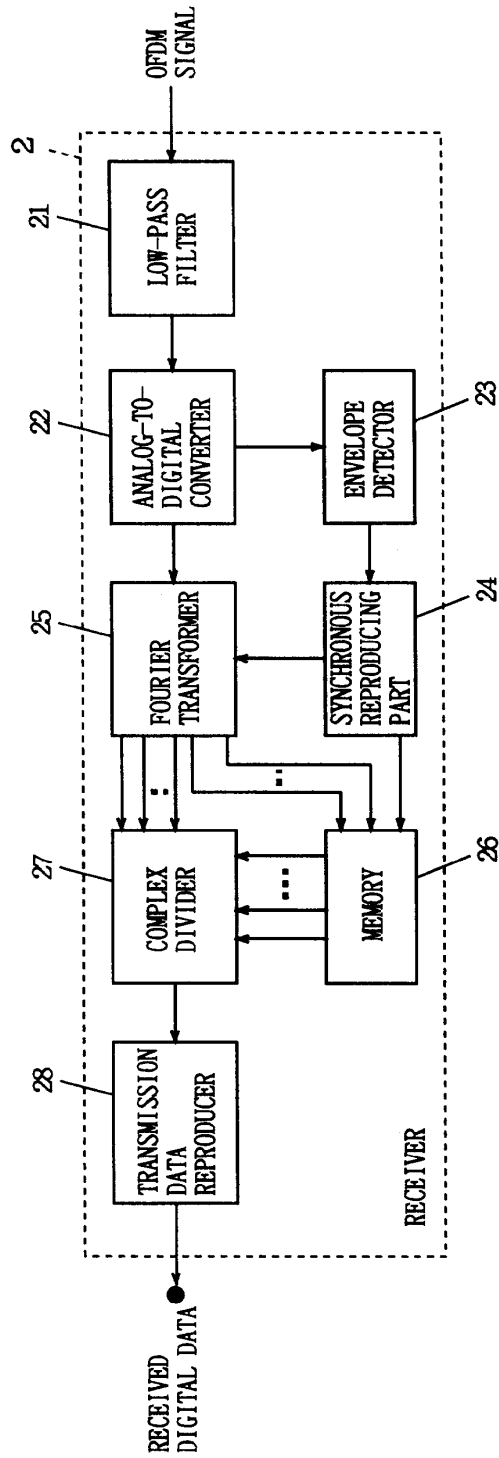


FIG. 3

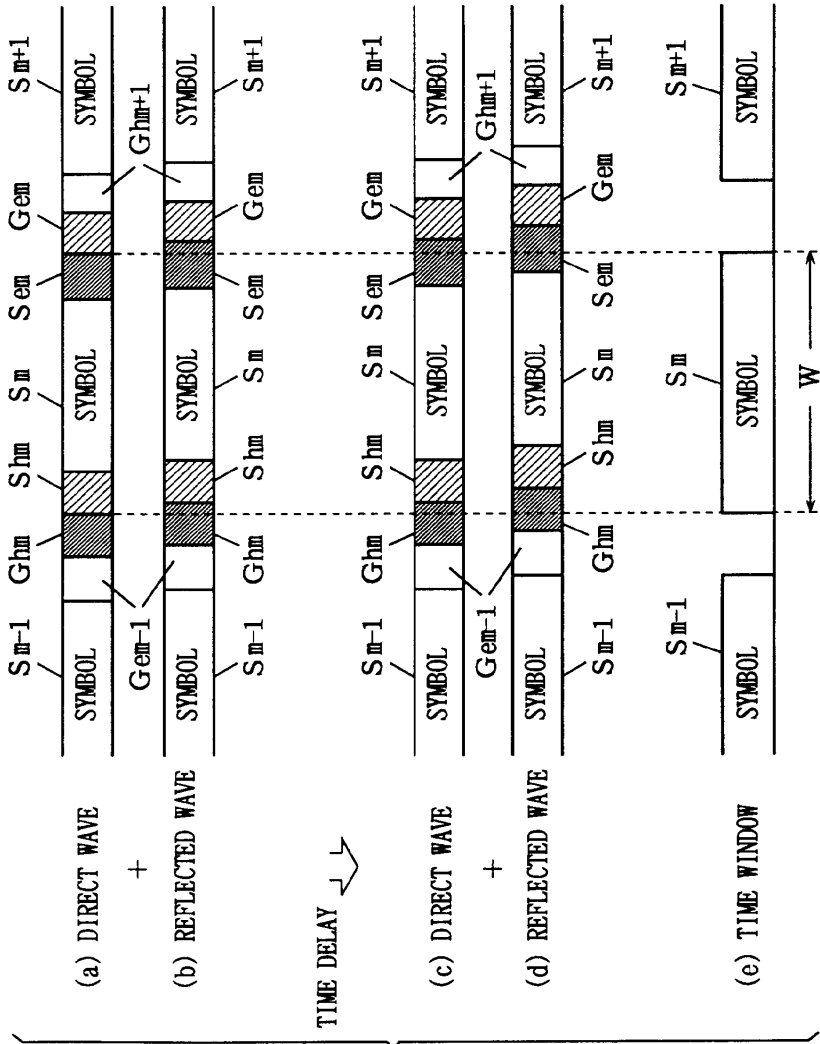


FIG. 4

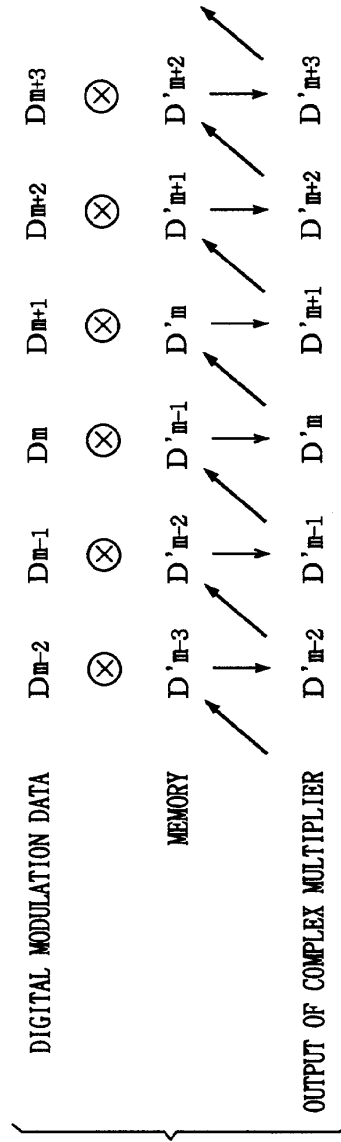


FIG. 5

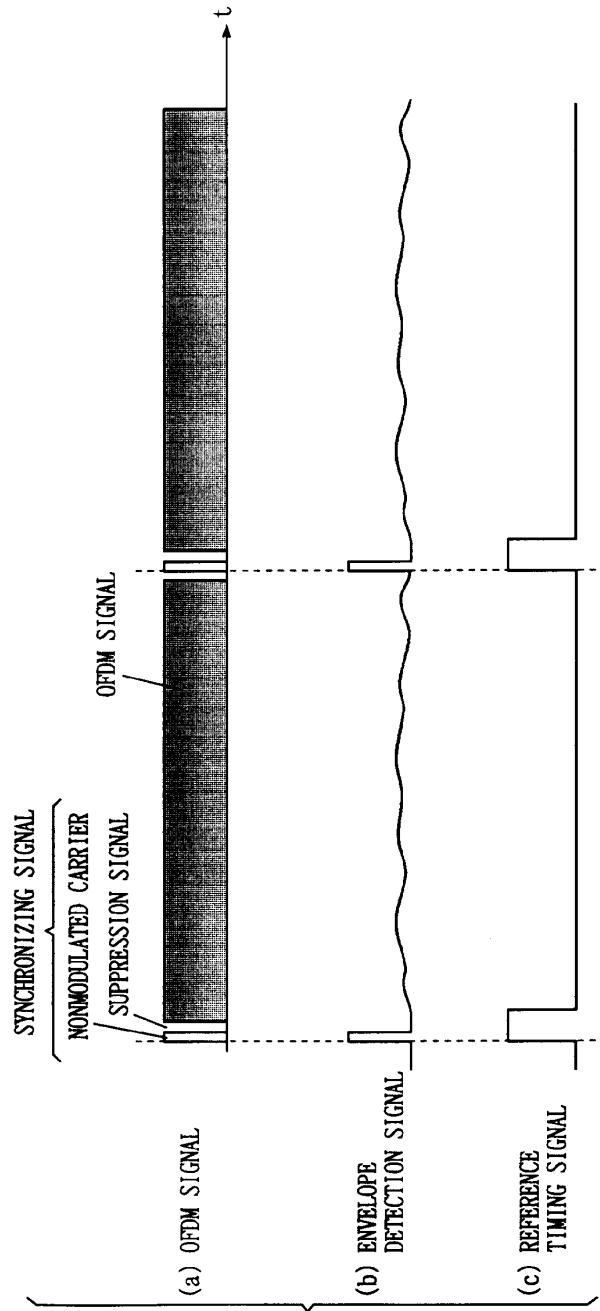


FIG. 6

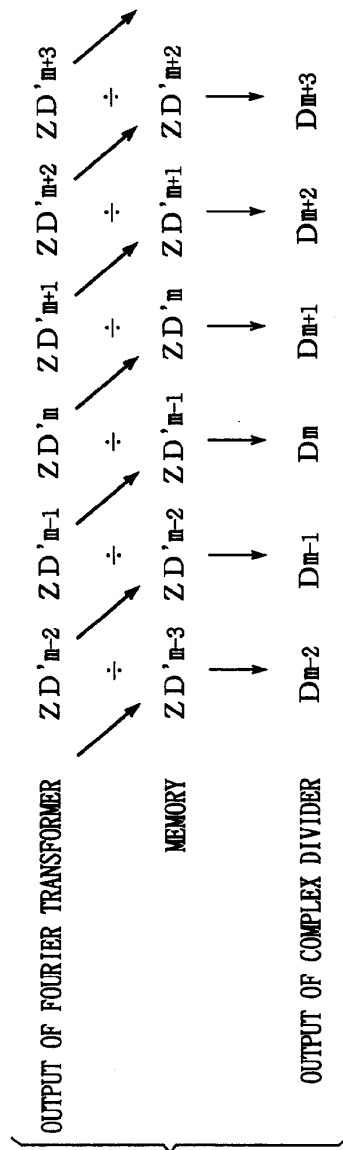


FIG. 7

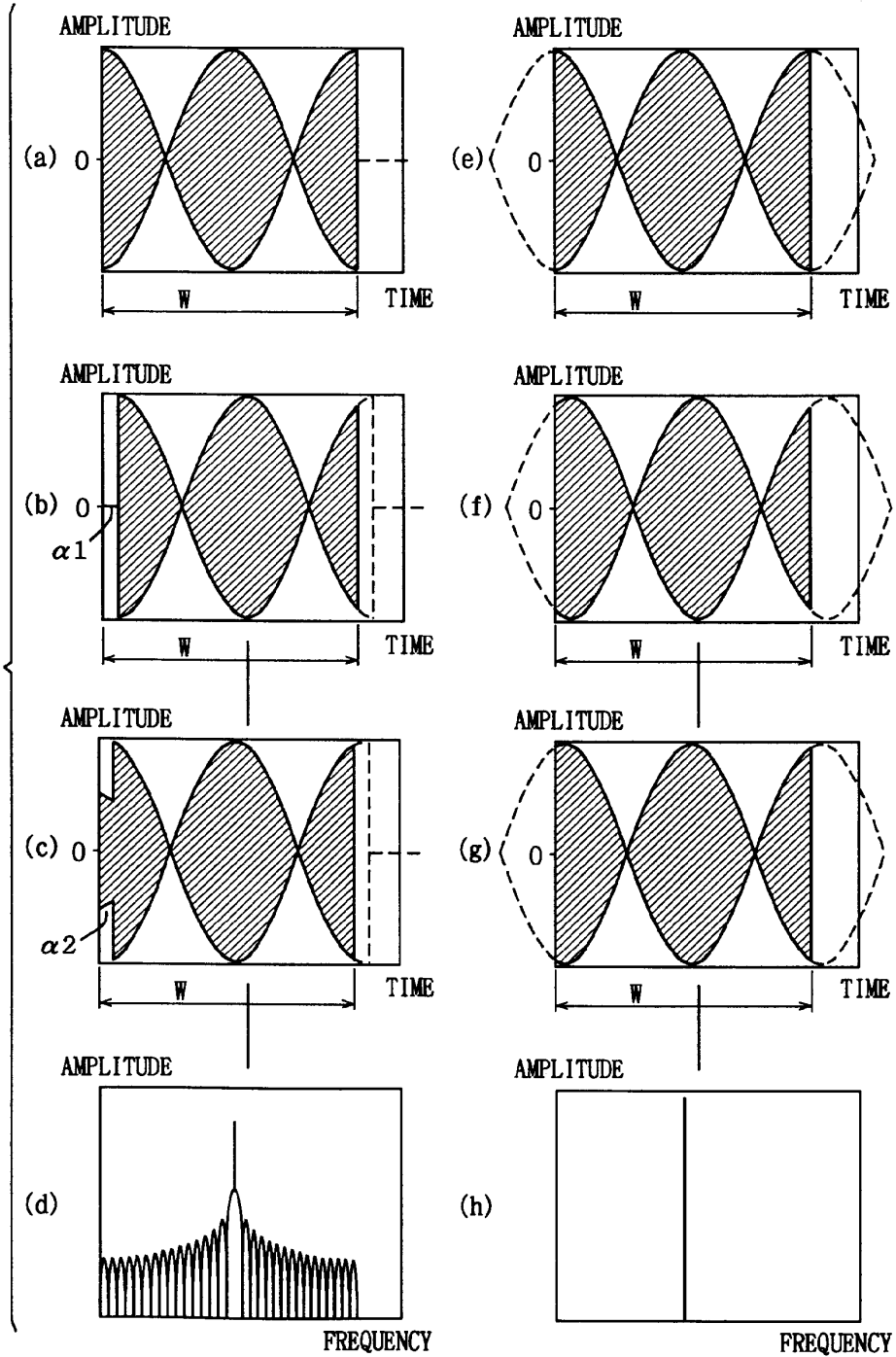


FIG. 8

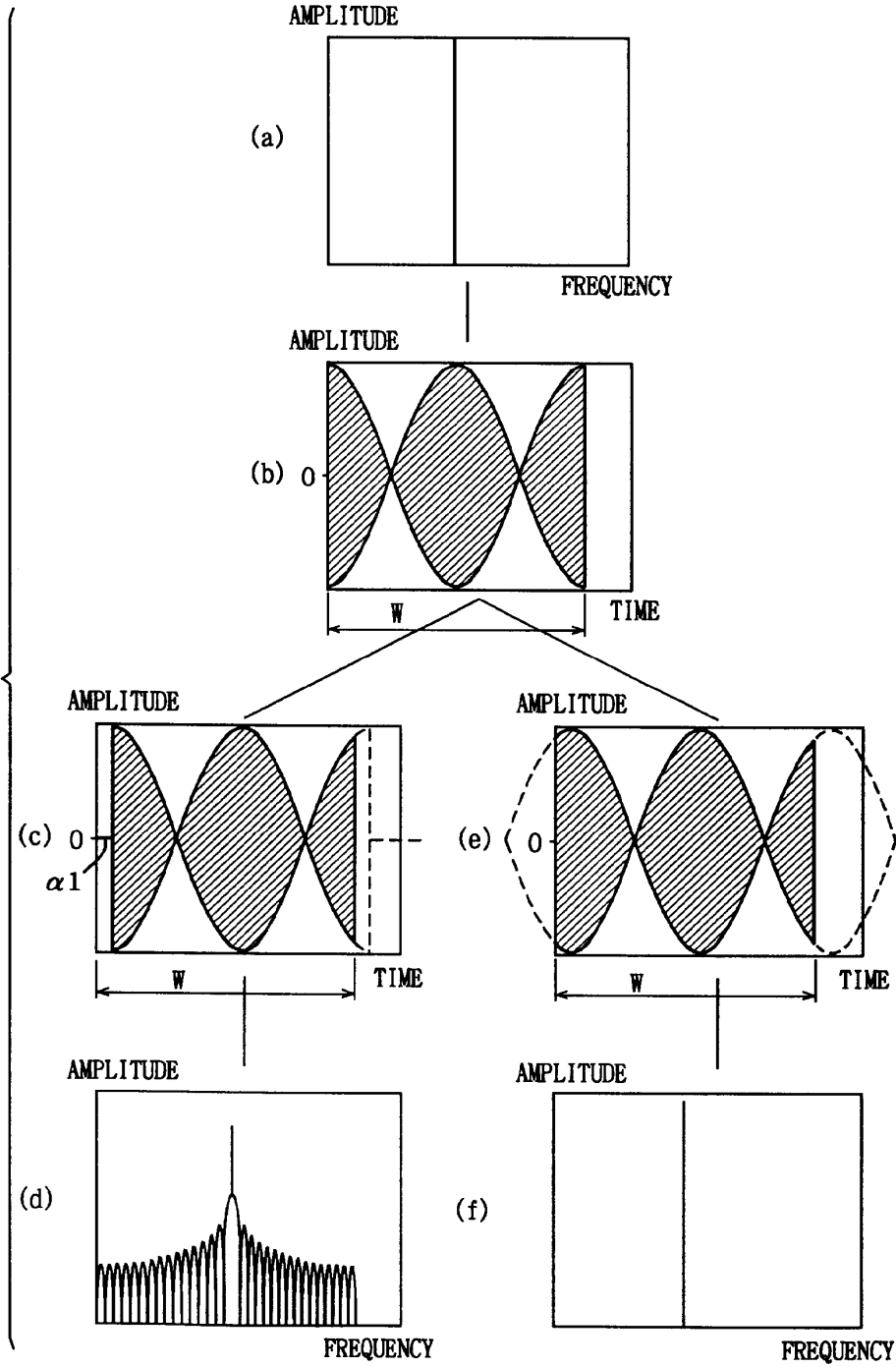


FIG. 9

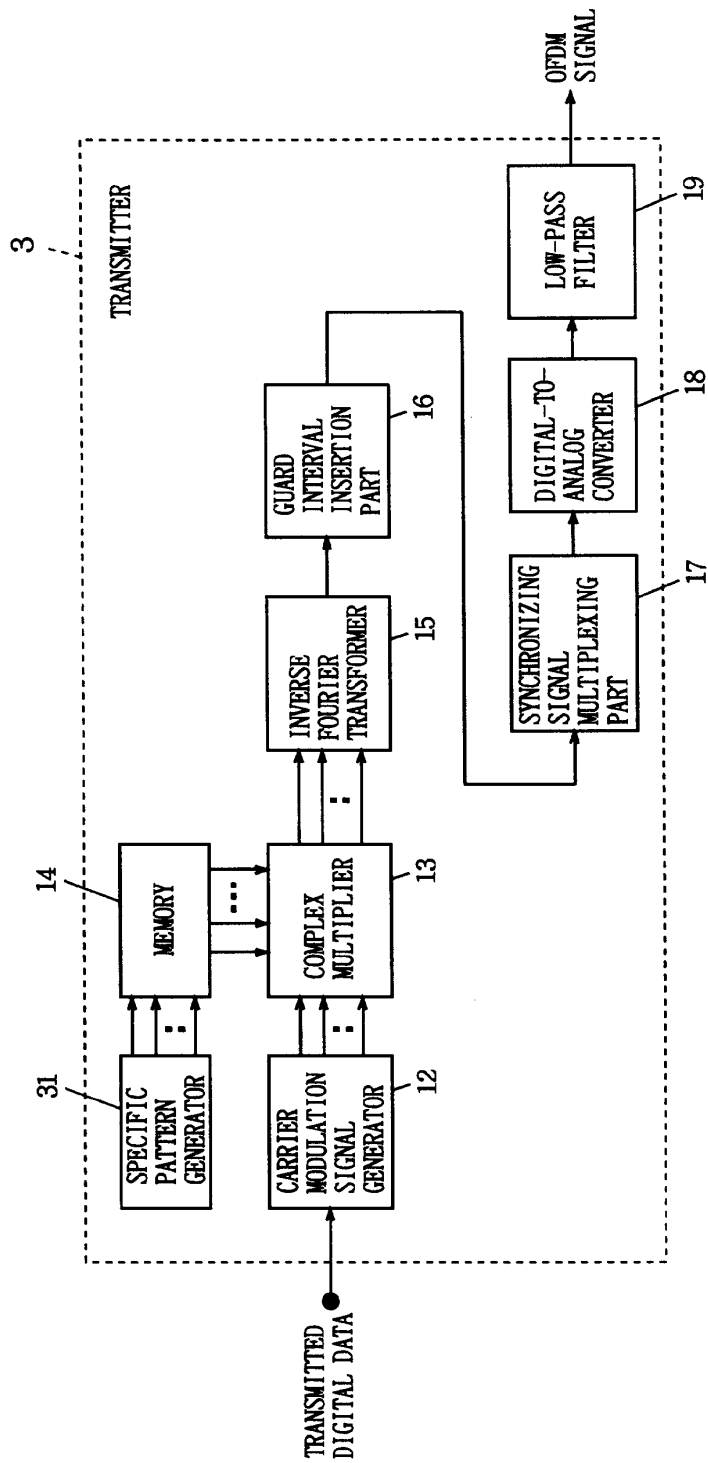


FIG. 10

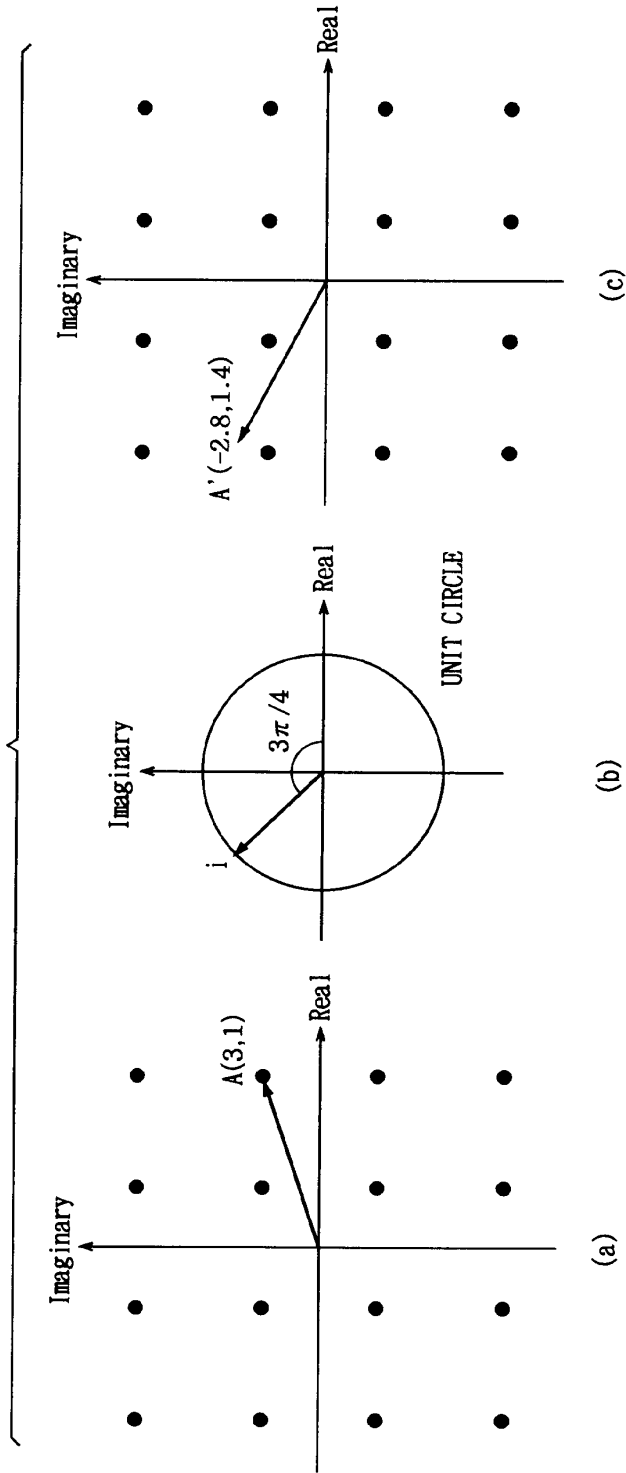


FIG. 11

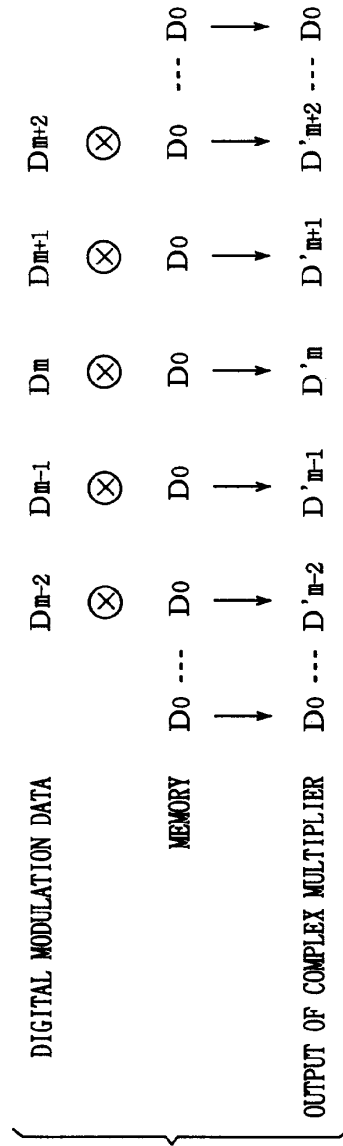


FIG. 12

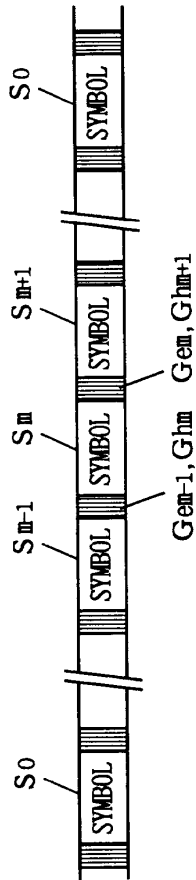


FIG. 13

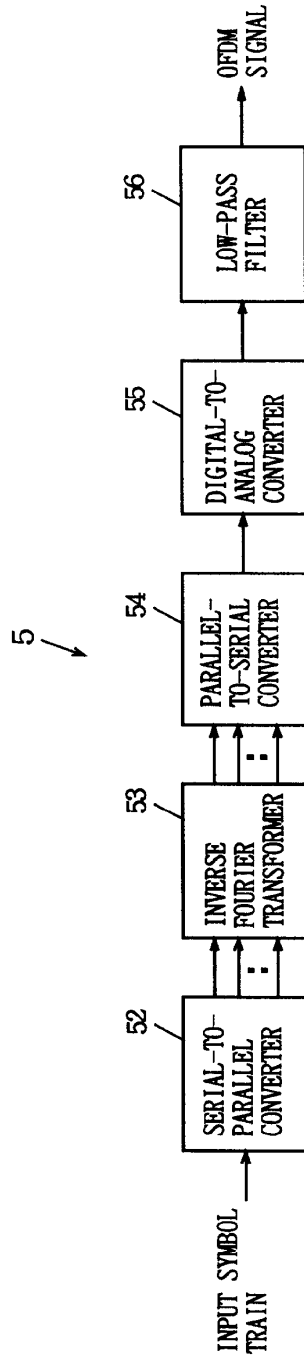


FIG. 14

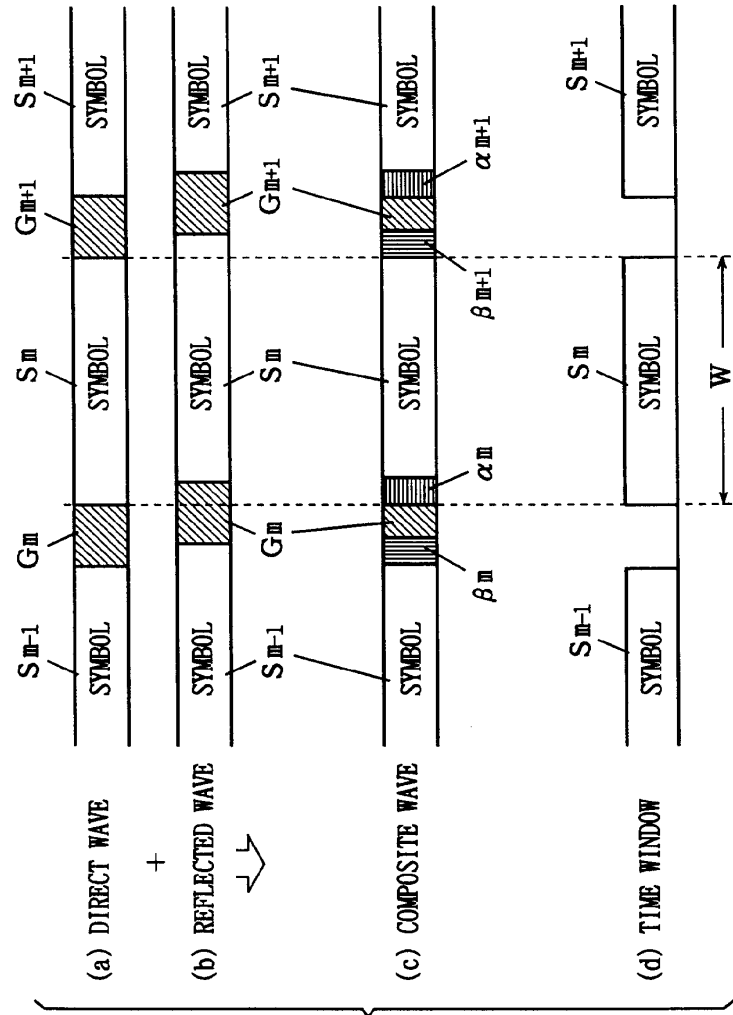
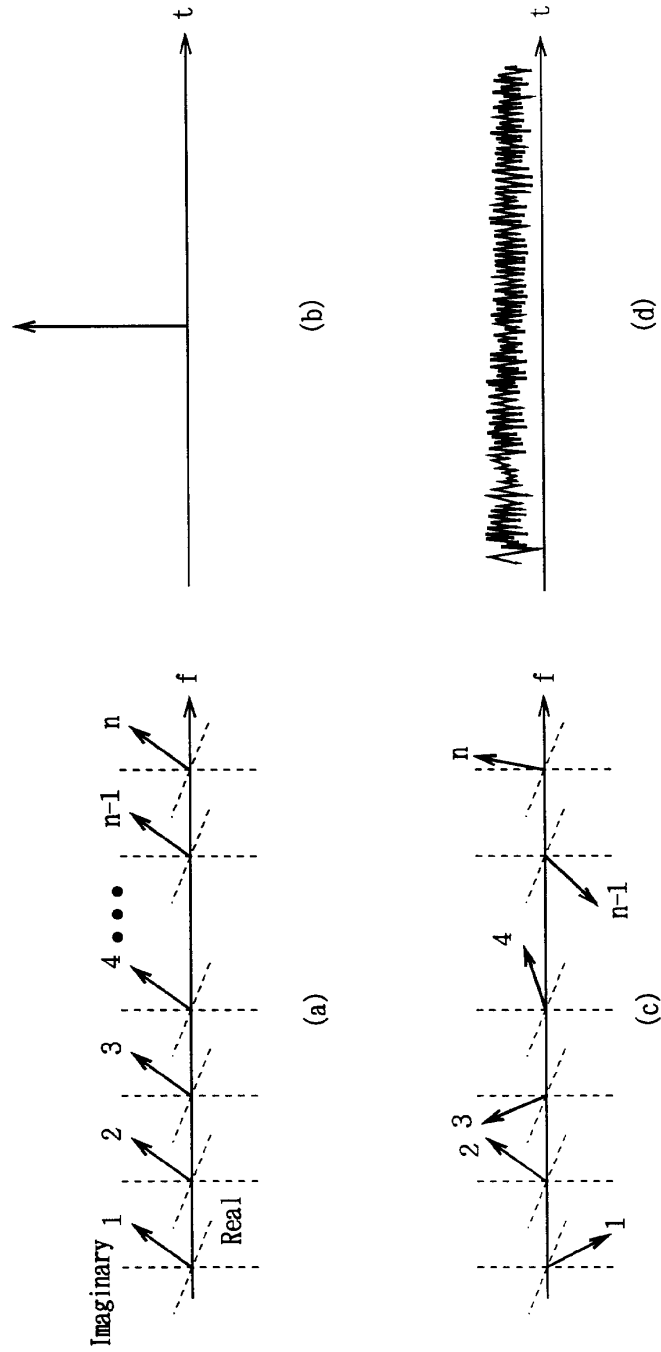


FIG. 15





(12) **EUROPEAN PATENT SPECIFICATION**

(45) Date of publication and mention
of the grant of the patent:
08.09.1999 Bulletin 1999/36

(51) Int Cl.⁶: **H04L 27/34**

(21) Application number: **93111722.0**

(22) Date of filing: **22.07.1993**

(54) **Method and apparatus for reducing the peak power of data sequences**

Verfahren und Einrichtung zur Verminderung der Spitzenleistung von Datenfolgen

Procédé et dispositif pour la réduction de la puissance de crête de séquences de données

(84) Designated Contracting States:
CH DE ES FR GB LI NL SE

(30) Priority: **27.07.1992 IT MI921819**

(43) Date of publication of application:
02.03.1994 Bulletin 1994/09

(73) Proprietor: **ALCATEL**
75008 Paris (FR)

(72) Inventors:
• **Sandri, Andrea**
I-56124 Pisa (IT)
• **Spalvieri, Arnaldo**
I-60019 Senigallia (AN) (IT)

(74) Representative:
Knecht, Ulrich Karl, Dipl.-Ing. et al
Alcatel
Intellectual Property Department, Stuttgart
Postfach 30 09 29
70449 Stuttgart (DE)

(56) References cited:
EP-A- 0 383 632 **WO-A-92/17971**

- **IEEE JOURNAL ON SELECTED AREAS IN COMMUNICATION** vol. 7, no. 6, August 1989, **NEW YORK US** pages 941 - 958 **FORNEY** 'Multidimensional constellations - part II: Voronoi constellations'
- **TRANSACTIONS OF THE IEICE** vol. E71, no. 6, June 1988, **TOKYO, JP** pages 591 - 598 **NAKAMURA ET AL.** 'A new 90Mbps 68 APSK modem with honeycomb constellation for digital radio relay systems'
- **IEEE International Conference on Communications 1991**, 23-27/6/1991, Denver, US; IEEE, New York, US, 1991; pages 1075 - 1079, **Soleymani & Kang**: "Trellis coding with partially overlapped signal sets"
- **IEEE International Conference on Communications 1992**; 14-18/6/1992, Chicago, US; IEEE, New York, US, 1992; pages 431 - 1435, **Khandani & Kabal**: "Using a prefix code for addressing the Voronoi constellations based on lattices D_n and D_n^* "

Note: Within nine months from the publication of the mention of the grant of the European patent, any person may give notice to the European Patent Office of opposition to the European patent granted. Notice of opposition shall be filed in a written reasoned statement. It shall not be deemed to have been filed until the opposition fee has been paid. (Art. 99(1) European Patent Convention).

Description

Background of the invention

5 **[0001]** The present invention relates to a method and system of transmitting and receiving digital signals over a transmission link, comprising the steps of: in transmission, encoding and modulating (II) the input digital signal obtaining an output digital signal in the form of digital sequences, filtering (IV) it for providing a modulated signal to be transmitted over a non-linear channel (V, VI) subject to non-linearities and disturbances; in reception, filtering (VII) the received signal from the non-linear channel, and decoding and demodulating (IX) the filtered received signal to obtain a reconstructed digital signal.

State of the art

15 **[0002]** The present digital transmission systems try to obtain high spectral efficiencies through gradually more complex modulation formats. The higher spectral efficiency is counterbalanced by the need of increasing the transmitted power to obtain a prefixed BER (Bit Error Rate: number of wrong bits to total number of bits ratio) value at the receiver. The power delivered by the transmitter generally is limited by the final power amplifier, which has a greatly nonlinear behaviour.

20 **[0003]** Therefore a serious problem arises with regard to the best exploitation of the nonlinear part of the input-output characteristic of the "channel", including in the latter the final amplifier of the transmitter.

[0004] At present the problem is faced in one of the following ways (see e.g. the papers of G. Karam, H. Sari, "Analysis of predistortion, equalization and ISI cancellation techniques in digital radio systems with nonlinear transmit amplifier", IEEE Transaction on Communications, vol. 37, n. 12, Dec. 1989):

- 25 1) data predistortion: attempts are made to modify the constellation used for driving the nonlinear amplifier through a signal such as to obtain the desired constellation at its output;
 2) analog signal predistortion: a nonlinear circuit having a characteristic opposite to the one of the above-defined "channel", is inserted in the path of the analog signal;
 30 3) channel equalization and nonlinear cancellation of the ISI: the receiving equalizer tries to cancel the interferences connected with nonlinearity from the present signal sample (through a suitable nonlinear combination of pre- and post-cursors);
 4) use of "circular" constellations so as to reduce the ratio between the peak power and the average power of the unfiltered signal.

35 **[0005]** All the above solutions, under special circumstances, can provide unsatisfactory performances. In particular the first three are not very efficient in the presence of "hard limiter" characteristic of the transmission final amplifier; the last one gives anyway rise to slight gains which can be not sufficient in the case of a reception filter with very narrow bandwidth.

40 **[0006]** From for example EP-A-0383632; or IEEE Journal on Sel. Areas in Comm., vol. 7, no.6, August 1989, pages 941-958, Forney: "Multidimensional Constellations - part II: Voronoi Constellations"; or Trans. IEICE vol. E71, no. 6, June 1988, Tokyo, pages 591-598, Nakamura et al.: "A New 90Mbps 68 APSK Modem With Honeycomb Constellation For Digital Radio Relay Systems", methods are known for minimizing the average power of the transmitted signal, possibly using circular two-dimensional constellations. These methods however do not address one of the real problems of the transmission channel, that is the non-linearity of the transmission final amplifier.

Summary of the invention

45 **[0007]** It is an object of the invention to provide a base-band system which - other conditions being unchanged - reduces the peak power of the filtered signal, i.e. at the input of the nonlinear channel defined above.

50 **[0008]** It has been found, inter alia, that such a reduction is to the advantage of radio relay system links, e.g. allowing the use of smaller antennas or transmission over longer path sections.

[0009] The outstanding features of the invention are set forth in the claims while the various aspects and advantages of the invention will become more apparent from the following not limiting description.

55 **[0010]** The basic idea of the invention is based upon the possibility (other conditions such as minimum distance between transmitted points, average transmitted power, etc., being unchanged) of avoiding transmission of sequences having an associated high peak power of the filtered signal, replacing them with more suitable ones (i.e. with a lower peak power of the filtered signal).

[0011] The possibility of carrying out this replacement is given by the increasing of the dimension of the alphabet of

the transmitted points. In reception the unwanted sequences, suppressed in transmission, are reconstructed in their original form.

[0012] By reducing in this way the peak power of the filtered signal it is possible to exploit in a much more efficient manner the nonlinear characteristic of the above-defined "channel".

5 **[0013]** Such reduction allows to minimize the effects of the transmission channel nonlinearity, including possible nonlinearities of the transmission amplifier.

Detailed description.

10 **[0014]** Fig. 1 illustrates the schematic block diagram of a generic digital transmission system (blocks I, II, IV, V, VI, VII, IX, X) in which blocks III and VIII, subject of this invention, are inserted. In particular, fig. 1 shows:- a DATA SOURCE (ref. I) which outputs the digital sequence to be transmitted;

- an ENCODER/MODULATOR block (ref. II) which receives at the input the digital sequence to be transmitted and carries out the standard encoding operations designed for BER reduction (block, convolutional, Trellis Code Modulation, etc., type encoding) and modulation operations, providing at its output one of the points of the constellation to be transmitted;
- a block PRE (ref. III), subject of the invention along with block VIII, which eliminates from the transmission the unwanted sequences in terms of peak power of the filtered signal, i.e. of the signal at the output of block IV described below;
- a transmission filter HTx (f) (ref. IV) which provides at its output the analog signal to be transmitted;
- a NONLINEAR DISTORTION block (ref. V) representing an unwanted nonlinear distortion on the signal path. It can be due to the nonlinear characteristic of the final amplifier of the transmitter (as it happens e.g. in microwave links) or, more generally, to a nonlinear behaviour of the transmission channel;
- 25 - a transmission channel (ref. VI) identified as "LINEAR CHANNEL", which outputs a signal consisting of the signal at its input added to and/or combined with disturbances of various kind;
- a reception filter HRx (f) (ref. VII) which receives the signal from the transmission channel and carries out a suitable filtering;
- a block PRD (ref. VIII), subject of the invention along with block III, which reconstitutes the signal in its original form containing the unwanted sequences suppressed in transmission by block III;
- a DECODER/DEMODULATOR block (ref. IX) which receives the outgoing signal from block VIII demodulates it and carries out the above-mentioned standard decoding operations, providing the user with the numeric sequence subject of the transmission;
- the USER (ref. X) which receives the numeric sequence.

35 **[0015]** In an advantageous and therefore preferred embodiment, blocks PRE (III) and PRD (VIII) in accordance with the invention are realized in the form of digital encoders. As an example, fig. 2 shows a block diagram illustrating how it is possible to realize the block PRE in case of a radio relay system transmission using a quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM). Let M be the points of the two-dimensional constellation to be transmitted in the conventional case (hereinafter "standard2 constellation) and MR be the redundancy points necessary for the encoding (carried out in PRE) subject of the invention; the resulting constellation is composed of (M+MR) points (hereinafter "expanded" constellation).

Typically: $1 < (M+MR)/M < 1.2$.

45 **[0016]** In fig. 2 there is shown the preferred embodiment of PRE; it includes:

- a delay element T (ref. XIII) which receives the last two-dimensional element of the block of N two-dimensional symbols outgoing from block XII and outputs it with a delay equal to one channel symbol interval. Such output will be indicated as "state" of the machine in the following;
- a mapping element identified as "(M+MR) MAP" (ref. XI) which receives at its input a block of N symbols of the "standard" constellation and provides (M+MR) blocks of N two-dimensional symbols of the "expanded" constellation. Each output block is relative to a particular "state" of the system and represents the best sequence to be transmitted (in the presence of that particular "state" of the machine) in terms of peak power of the filtered signal.
- a multiplexer "MUX" (ref. XII) having (M+MR) inputs and one output which, on the basis of the "state" at the output of block XIII selects (among the M+MR inputs) the suitable block of N symbols to be provided at the output.

55 **[0017]** According to one particular aspect - even if not limiting - of the invention, the calculation of the "best sequence in terms of peak power of the filtered signal" is arranged as follows.

[0018] Let $h_{TX}(t)$ be the pulse response of the transmission filter IV of fig. 1, T the symbol time, $d^{(k)}$ ($k=1,2 \dots, (M+MR)$)

the "state" of the system, $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ the generic block of N two-dimensional symbols.

[0019] The "weight" w of block $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ given the state $d^{(k)}$, can be defined as the quantity:

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} \left| h_{TX}(t-T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t+JT) c_j \right|^2$$

then assuming that the best sequences C_i (in terms of peak power of the filtered signal) are those having a lower "weight" $w(d^{(k)}, C_i)$.

[0020] The block PRD can be realized through a circuit quite similar to the one shown in fig. 2 for block PRE; its description in terms of block diagram (being within the reach of those skilled in the art, in the light of what has been set forth hereinbefore) will be omitted for conciseness' sake.

[0021] Reference has been made to specific embodiments represented in figs. 1 and 2 for simplicity and illustrative clearness reasons; therefore it is evident that these are susceptible to those variations, modifications, replacements and the like which, being within the reach of those skilled in the art, naturally fall within the sphere of the invention.

[0022] The following possible variants are here mentioned by way of an example:

- in equation (1) a "state" consisting of several two-dimensional symbols could be envisaged;
- blocks XI and XII of fig. 2 could be replaced by a combinatory algebra, thus transforming the structure of block PRE into a convolutional one.
- N could be taken great enough to be able to eliminate in Fig. 2 the reaction through block XIII thus transforming the structure of block PRE into a "block" structure.

Claims

1. Method of transmitting and receiving digital signals over a transmission link, comprising the steps of:

- in transmission, encoding and modulating (II) the input digital signal obtaining an output digital signal in the form of digital sequences, filtering (IV) it for providing a modulated signal to be transmitted over a non-linear channel (V, VI) subject to non-linearities and disturbances;
- in reception, filtering (VII) the received signal from the non-linear channel, and decoding and demodulating (IX) the filtered received signal to obtain a reconstructed digital signal;

characterized in that it further comprises the steps of:

- in transmission, replacing (III) those of the said digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted higher than a given value, with new digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted lower than the given value;
- in reception, restoring (VIII) the said digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted higher than the given value before demodulating, so as to minimize the effects of said non-linearities and disturbances on said reconstructed digital signal.

2. Method of transmitting and receiving digital signals as in claim 1, characterized in that the transmission link is a digital radio relay system link and the modulation is a QAM quadrature amplitude modulation having a two-dimensional constellation of points (M) being said digital sequences; and in that said replacing is carried out on said two-dimensional constellation of points.

3. Method of transmitting and receiving digital signals as in claim 2, characterized in that said replacing comprises the following steps:

- enlarging the number of constellation points (M) by adding a number of redundance constellation points (MR), so obtaining an expanded constellation composed of (M+MR) points;
- calculating a weight function (w) of a pulse response $h_{TX}(t)$ of said transmission filtering (IV) extended to said expanded constellation of (M+MR) points;

- said digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted higher than a given value being the expanded constellation points having the weight function (w) higher than a given value.

5 4. Method of transmitting and receiving digital signals as in claim 3, characterized in that said weight function (w) is:

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} \left| h_{TX}(t_0 - T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t_0 + jT) c_j \right|^2$$

10

where T is a symbol time, $d^{(k)}$ [k=1,2,..., (M+MR)] a "state" of the system, $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ a generic block of N two-dimensional constellation points.

15

5. System for transmitting and receiving digital signals over a transmission link, comprising:

- in transmission, encoding and modulating means (II) of the input digital signal obtaining an output digital signal in the form of digital sequences, first filtering means (IV) for providing a modulated signal to be transmitted over a non-linear channel (V, VI) subject to non-linearities and disturbances;
- in reception, second filtering means (VII) of the received signal from the non-linear channel, and decoding and demodulating means (IX) of the filtered received signal obtaining a reconstructed digital signal;

20

characterized in that it further comprises:

25

- in transmission, replacing means (III) of those of the said digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted higher than a given value, with new digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted lower than the given value;
- in reception, restoring means (VIII) of the said digital sequences having an associated peak power of the signal to be transmitted higher than the given value, said restoring means being inserted before said demodulating means, so as to minimize the effects of said non-linearities and disturbances on said reconstructed digital signal.

30

6. System for transmitting and receiving digital signals as in claim 5, characterized in that the transmission link is a digital radio relay system link and the modulation is a QAM quadrature amplitude modulation having a two-dimensional constellation of points (M) being said digital sequences; and in that said replacing is carried out on said two-dimensional constellation of points.

35

7. System for transmitting and receiving digital signals as in claim 6, characterized in that said replacing means (III) comprise:

40

- delaying means (T) which receive the last two-dimensional element of the block of N outgoing two-dimensional symbols from a multiplexer (MUX) and outputs it with a delay equal to one channel symbol interval T;
- mapping means ((M+MR)MAP) which receive a block of N symbols of said constellation of points and provide (M+MR) output blocks of N two-dimensional symbols of an "expanded" constellation, each output block representing the best sequence to be transmitted in terms of peak power of the filtered signal at the output of said first filtering means (VII);
- multiplexing means (MUX) having (M+MR) inputs and one output which, on the basis of the "state" at the output of said delaying means (T) select among the M+MR blocks present at its input the block of N symbols to be provided at the output.

45

50

8. System for transmitting and receiving digital signals as in claim 7, characterized in that said mapping means comprise means for calculating each output block representing the best sequence to be transmitted in terms of peak power, according to the following weight function (w):

55

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} \left| h_{TX}(t_0 - T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t_0 + jT) c_j \right|^2$$

where T is a symbol time, $d^{(k)}$ [$k=1, 2, \dots, (M+MR)$] a "state" of the system, $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ a generic block of N two-dimensional constellation points.

Patentansprüche

1. Verfahren zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen über eine Übertragungsstrecke, das die Schritte umfaßt:

- beim Senden Codieren und Modulieren (II) des Eingangsdigitalsignals, wobei ein Ausgangsdigital signal in der Form von digitalen Sequenzen erhalten wird, Filtern (IV) desselben zum Bereitstellen eines modulierten Signals, das über einen Nichtlinearitäten und Störungen unterworfenen nichtlinearen Kanal (V, VI) übertragen werden soll;
- beim Empfangen Filtern (VII) des von dem nichtlinearen Kanal empfangenen Signals und Decodieren und Demodulieren (IX) des gefilterten empfangenen Signals, um ein rekonstruiertes Digital signal zu erhalten;

dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß das Verfahren ferner die Schritte umfaßt:

- beim Senden Ersetzen (III) jener digitalen Sequenzen mit einer zugehörigen Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals, die höher als ein gegebener Wert ist, durch neue digitale Sequenzen mit einer zugehörigen Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals, die kleiner als der gegebene Wert ist;
- beim Empfangen Wiederherstellen (VIII) der digitalen Sequenzen mit einer zugehörigen Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals, die größer als der gegebene Wert vor dem Demodulieren ist, um so die Wirkungen der Nichtlinearitäten und Störungen auf das rekonstruierte Digital signal zu minimieren.

2. Verfahren zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen nach Anspruch 1, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß die Übertragungsstrecke eine Richtfunkstrecke ist und die Modulation eine QAM-Quadraturamplitudenmodulation mit einer zweidimensionalen Konstellation von Punkten (M), welche die digitalen Sequenzen sind, ist; und daß die Ersetzung an der zweidimensionalen Konstellation der Punkte ausgeführt wird.

3. Verfahren zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen nach Anspruch 2, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß das Ersetzen die folgenden Schritte umfaßt:

- Vergrößern der Anzahl von Konstellationspunkten (M) durch Addition einer Anzahl von Redundanzkonstellationspunkten (MR), um so eine aus (M+MR) Punkten zusammengesetzte expandierte Konstellation zu erhalten;
- Berechnen einer Gewichtsfunktion (w) einer Impulsantwort $h_{TX}(t)$ der Übertragungsfaltung (IV), die auf die expandierte Konstellation von (M+MR) Punkten erweitert ist;
- wobei die digitalen Sequenzen mit einer zugehörigen Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals, die höher als ein gegebener Wert ist, die expandierten Konstellationspunkte mit der Gewichtsfunktion (w) höher als ein gegebener Wert sind.

4. Verfahren zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen nach Anspruch 3, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß die Gewichtsfunktion (w) lautet:

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} \left| h_{TX}(t_0 - T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t_0 + jT) c_j \right|^2$$

wobei T eine Symbolzeit, $d^{(k)}[k=1,2 \dots, (M+MR)]$ ein "Zustand" des Systems und $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ ein generischer Block von N zweidimensionalen Konstellationspunkten ist.

- 5
5. System zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen über eine Übertragungsstrecke, das umfaßt:
- für das Senden Codier- und Modulationsmittel (II) des Eingangsdigitalsignals, wobei ein Ausgangsdigitalsignal in der Form von digitalen Sequenzen erhalten wird, erste Filtermittel (IV) zum Bereitstellen eines modulierten Signals, das über einen Nichtlinearitäten und Störungen unterworfenen nichtlinearen Kanal (V, VI) übertragen werden soll;
 - 10 - für das Empfangen zweite Filtermittel (VII) des von dem nichtlinearen Kanal empfangenen Signals, und Decodier- und Demodulationsmittel (IX) des gefilterten empfangenen Signals, wobei ein rekonstruiertes Digitalsignal erhalten wird,
- 15 **dadurch gekennzeichnet**, daß das System ferner umfaßt:
- für das Senden Ersetzungsmittel (III) für jene der digitalen Sequenzen, die eine zugehörige Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals höher als einen gegebenen Wert aufweisen, wobei die neuen digitalen Sequenzen eine zugehörige Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals aufweisen, die kleiner als der gegebene Wert ist;
 - 20 - für das Empfangen Wiederherstellungsmittel (VIII) für die digitalen Sequenzen mit einer zugehörigen Spitzenleistung des zu übertragenden Signals, die höher als der gegebene Wert ist, wobei das Wiederherstellungsmittel vor dem Demodulationsmittel eingesetzt ist, um so die Wirkungen der Nichtlinearitäten und Störungen auf das rekonstruierte Signal zu minimieren.
- 25 6. System zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen nach Anspruch 5, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß die Übertragungsstrecke eine digitale Richtfunkstrecke ist und die Modulation eine QAM-Quadraturamplitudenmodulation mit einer zweidimensionalen Konstellation der die digitalen Sequenzen darstellenden Punkte (M) ist; und daß die Ersetzung an der zweidimensionalen Konstellation der Punkte ausgeführt wird.
- 30 7. System zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen nach Anspruch 6, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß das Ersetzungsmittel (III) umfaßt:
- Verzögerungsmittel (T), die das letzte zweidimensionale Element des von einem Multiplexer (MUX) ausgegebenen Blocks aus N zweidimensionalen Symbolen empfängt und es mit einer Verzögerung gleich einem Kanalsymbolintervall T ausgibt;
 - 35 - Umsetzungsmittel ((M+MR)MAP), die einen Block aus N Symbolen der Konstellation von Punkten empfangen und (M+MR) Ausgangsblöcke aus N zweidimensionalen Symbolen einer "expandierten" Konstellation ausgeben, wobei jeder Ausgangsblock die im Hinblick auf die Spitzenleistung des gefilterten Signals an dem Ausgang des ersten Filtermittels (VII) beste zu übertragende Sequenz darstellt;
 - 40 - Multiplexiermittel (MUX) mit (M+MR) Eingängen und einem Ausgang, die auf der Basis der "Zustände" an dem Ausgang des Verzögerungsmittels (T) unter den an ihrem Eingang vorliegenden M+MR Blöcken den Block aus N Symbolen auswählen, der an dem Ausgang bereitgestellt werden soll.
- 45 8. System zum Senden und Empfangen von Digitalsignalen nach Anspruch 7, dadurch gekennzeichnet, daß das Umsetzungsmittel Mittel zum Berechnen jedes Ausgangsblocks umfaßt, der im Hinblick auf die Spitzenleistung gemäß der folgenden Gewichtsfunktion (w) die beste zu übertragende Sequenz repräsentiert:

50

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} | h_{TX}(t_0 - T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t_0 + jT) c_j |^2$$

wobei T eine Symbolzeit, $d^{(k)}[k=1,2 \dots, (M+MR)]$ ein "Zustand" des Systems ist, $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ ein generischer Block von N zweidimensionalen Konstellationspunkten ist.

55

Revendications

1. Procédé d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques par l'intermédiaire d'une liaison de transmission, comprenant les étapes consistant à :

- en transmission, coder et moduler (II) le signal numérique entré pour obtenir un signal numérique de sortie sous la forme de séquences numériques, le filtrer (IV) pour délivrer un signal modulé devant être transmis sur une voie non linéaire (V, VI) soumise à des non-linéarités et des perturbations ;
- en réception, filtrer (VII) le signal reçu à partir de la voie non linéaire, décoder et démoduler (IX) le signal reçu filtré pour obtenir un signal numérique reconstitué ;

caractérisé en ce qu'il comprend en outre les étapes consistant à :

- remplacer (III), en transmission, les séquences parmi lesdites séquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre supérieure à une valeur donnée par de nouvelles séquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre inférieure à la valeur donnée ;
- en réception, rétablir (VIII) lesdites séquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre supérieure à la valeur donnée avant démodulation, afin de minimiser les effets desdites non-linéarités et perturbations sur ledit signal numérique reconstitué.

2. Procédé d'émission et de réception des signaux numériques selon la revendication 1, caractérisé en ce que la liaison de transmission est une liaison de systèmes de relais hertziens numériques et la modulation est une modulation d'amplitude en quadrature (MAQ) ayant une constellation de points bidimensionnelle (M) représentant lesdites séquences numériques ; et en ce que ledit remplacement est réalisé sur ladite constellation de points bidimensionnelle.

3. Procédé d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques selon la revendication 2, caractérisé en ce que ledit remplacement comprend les étapes suivantes :

- l'agrandissement du nombre de points de constellation (M) en ajoutant un certain nombre de points de constellation en redondance (MR), pour ainsi obtenir une constellation étendue se composant de (M+MR) points ;
- le calcul d'une fonction de pondération (w) d'une réponse d'impulsion $h_{TX}(t)$ dudit filtrage de transmission (IV) étendu à ladite constellation étendue de (M+MR) points ;
- lesdites fréquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre supérieure à une valeur donnée étant les points de la constellation étendue ayant la fonction de pondération (w) supérieure à une valeur donnée.

4. Procédé d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques selon la revendication 3, caractérisé en ce que ladite fonction de pondération (w) est :

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} | h_{TX}(t_0 - T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t_0 + jT) c_j |^2$$

où T est un temps symbolique, $d^{(k)} [k=1, 2, \dots, (M+MR)]$ un "état" du système, $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ un bloc générique de N points de la constellation bidimensionnelle.

5. Système d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques sur une liaison de transmission, comprenant :

- en transmission, des moyens de codage et de modulation (II) du signal numérique entré pour obtenir un signal numérique de sortie sous la forme de séquences numériques, des premiers moyens de filtrage (IV) pour délivrer un signal modulé devant être transmis sur une voie non linéaire (V, VI) soumise à des non-linéarités et des perturbations ;
- en réception, des seconds moyens de filtrage (VII) du signal reçu à partir de la voie non linéaire, et des moyens de décodage et de démodulation (IX) du signal reçu filtré pour obtenir un signal numérique reconstitué ;

caractérisé en ce qu'il comprend en outre :

EP 0 584 534 B1

- des moyens de remplacement (III), en transmission, des séquences parmi lesdites séquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre supérieure à une valeur donnée par de nouvelles séquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre inférieure à la valeur donnée ;
 - 5 - en réception, des moyens de rétablissement (VIII) desdites séquences numériques ayant une puissance de crête associée du signal à transmettre supérieure à la valeur donnée, lesdits moyens de rétablissement étant insérés avant lesdits moyens de démodulation, afin de minimiser les effets desdites non-linéarités et perturbations sur ledit signal numérique reconstitué.
- 10 6. Système d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques selon la revendication 5, caractérisé en ce que la liaison de transmission est une liaison de systèmes de relais hertziens numériques et la modulation est une modulation d'amplitude en quadrature (MAQ) ayant une constellation de points (M) bidimensionnelle étant lesdites séquences numériques ; et en ce que ledit remplacement est réalisé sur ladite constellation de points bidimensionnelle.
- 15 7. Système d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques selon la revendication 6, caractérisé en ce que lesdits moyens de remplacement (III) comprennent :
- des moyens de retard (T) qui reçoivent le dernier élément bidimensionnel du bloc de N symboles bidimensionnels sortants d'un multiplexeur (MUX) et le délivrent avec un retard égal à un intervalle symbolique de voie T ;
 - des moyens cartographiques ((M+MR)MAP) qui reçoivent un bloc de N symboles de ladite constellation de points et fournissent (M+MR) blocs de sortie de N symboles bidimensionnels d'une constellation "étendue", chaque bloc de sortie représentant la meilleure séquence devant être transmise en termes de puissance de crête du signal filtré à la sortie desdits premiers moyens de filtrage (VI) ;
 - 25 - des moyens de multiplexage (MUX) ayant (M+MR) entrées et une sortie qui, sur la base de "l'état" à la sortie desdits moyens de retard (T) opèrent une sélection parmi les M+MR blocs présents à son entrée du bloc de N symboles devant être fourni à la sortie.
- 30 8. Système d'émission et de réception de signaux numériques selon la revendication 1, caractérisé en ce que lesdits moyens cartographiques comprennent des moyens pour calculer chaque bloc de sortie représentant la meilleure séquence devant être transmise en termes de puissance de crête, selon la fonction de pondération (w) suivante :

35

$$w(d^{(k)}, C_i) = \text{MAX}_{-NT \leq t \leq NT} | h_{TX}(t_0 - T) d^{(k)} + \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} h_{TX}(t_0 + jT) c_j |^2$$

40 où T est un temps symbolique, $d^{(k)}$ [k=1,2, ..., (M+MR)] un "état" du système, $C_i = (c_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_{N-1})$ un bloc générique de N points de la constellation bidimensionnelle.

45

50

55

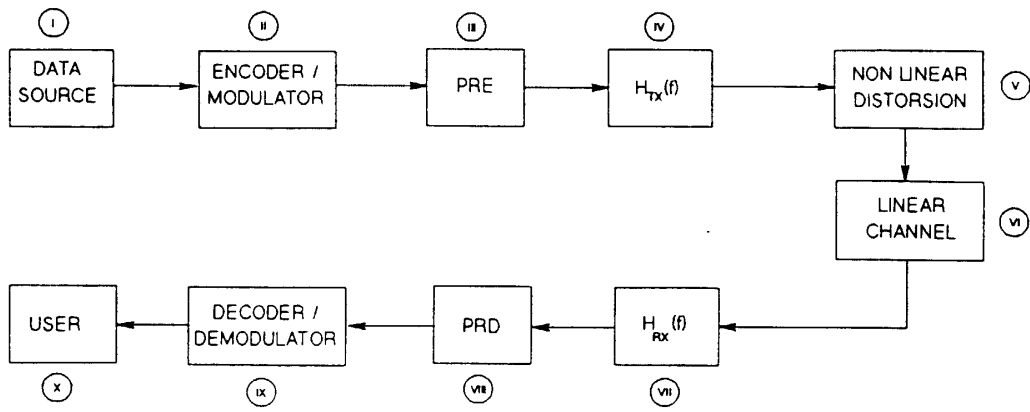


Fig. 1

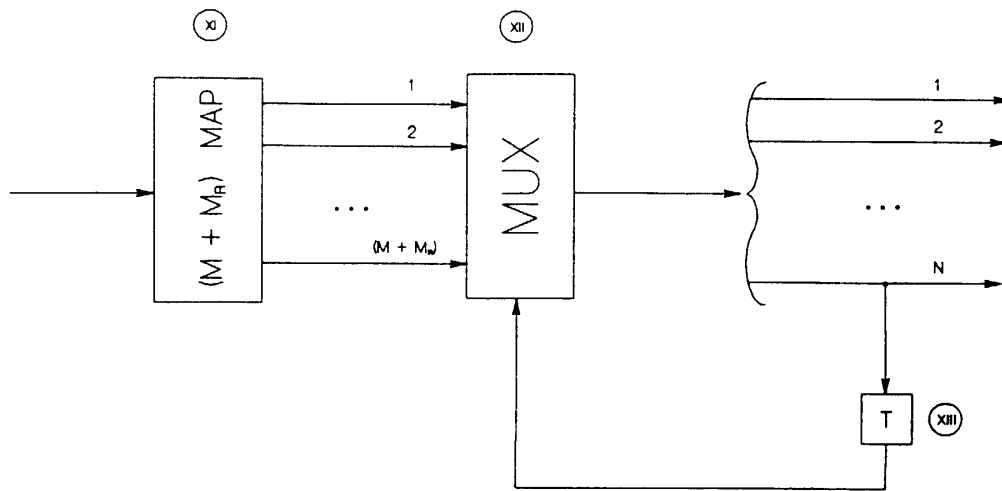


Fig. 2

(12) **UK Patent Application** (19) **GB** (11) **2 330 491** (13) **A**

(43) Date of A Publication **21.04.1999**

(21) Application No **9721862.2**

(22) Date of Filing **15.10.1997**

(71) Applicant(s)
British Broadcasting Corporation
(Incorporated in the United Kingdom)
Broadcasting House, LONDON, W1A 1AA,
United Kingdom

(72) Inventor(s)
Stephen Thomas Baily
Richard Harold Evans

(74) Agent and/or Address for Service
Reddie & Grose
16 Theobalds Road, LONDON, WC1X 8PL,
United Kingdom

(51) INT CL⁶
H04J 3/06 , H04L 27/26

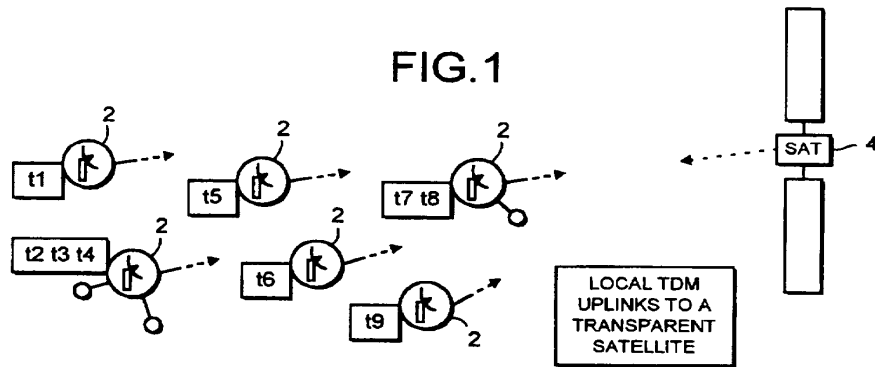
(52) UK CL (Edition Q)
H4M MTOX1

(56) Documents Cited
GB 2313527 A EP 0683576 A1 WO 94/08405 A1
US 4574379 A

(58) Field of Search
UK CL (Edition P) **H4M MTOA1 MTOA2 MTOA3**
MTOX1 MTOX2 MTOX3 , H4P PAL PAPS PSB
INT CL⁶ **H04B 7/212 , H04J 3/06 , H04L 7/04 27/26**

(54) Abstract Title
Digital broadcast systems

(57) A multi-carrier signal has a regular frame structure and symbol rate and is comprised of contributions from a plurality of different transmitters (2). The contributions from each transmitter are transmitted to a central transmitter (4) in pre-assigned time slots. The received contributions are then re-transmitted as a single signal over a pretermned area of coverage with a dummy symbol inserted at the start of each contribution in the frame for use as a phase reference for demodulating succeeding symbols in that contribution.



GB 2 330 491 A

At least one drawing originally filed was informal and the print reproduced here is taken from a later filed formal copy.

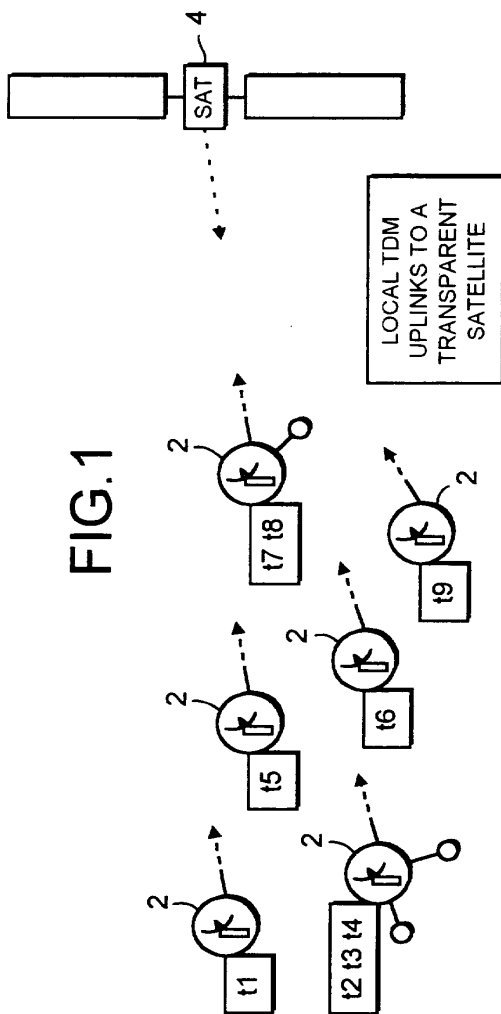


FIG.1

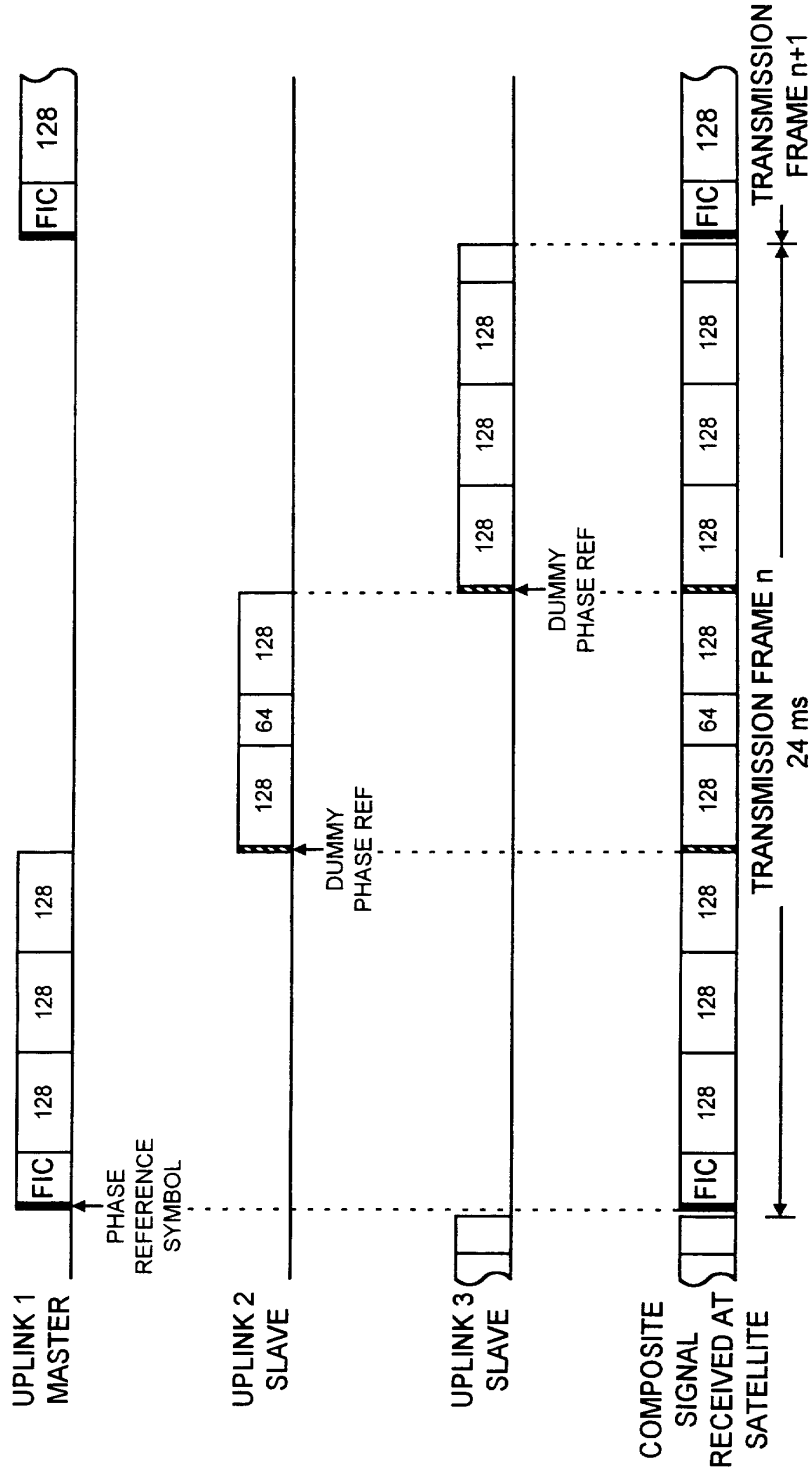


FIG. 2

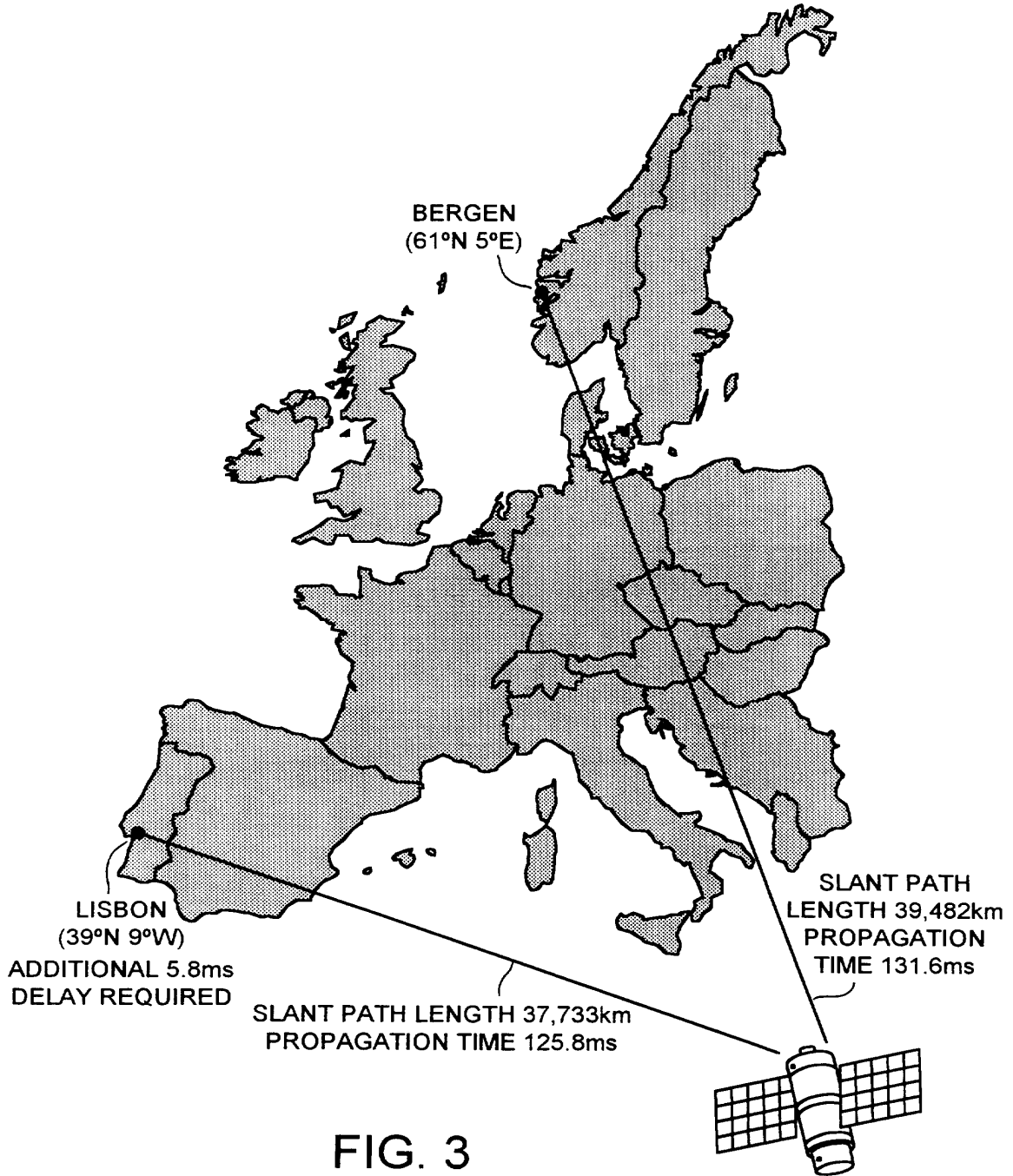


FIG. 3
SLANT PATH LENGTH FROM TWO EUROPEAN CITIES TO EMS

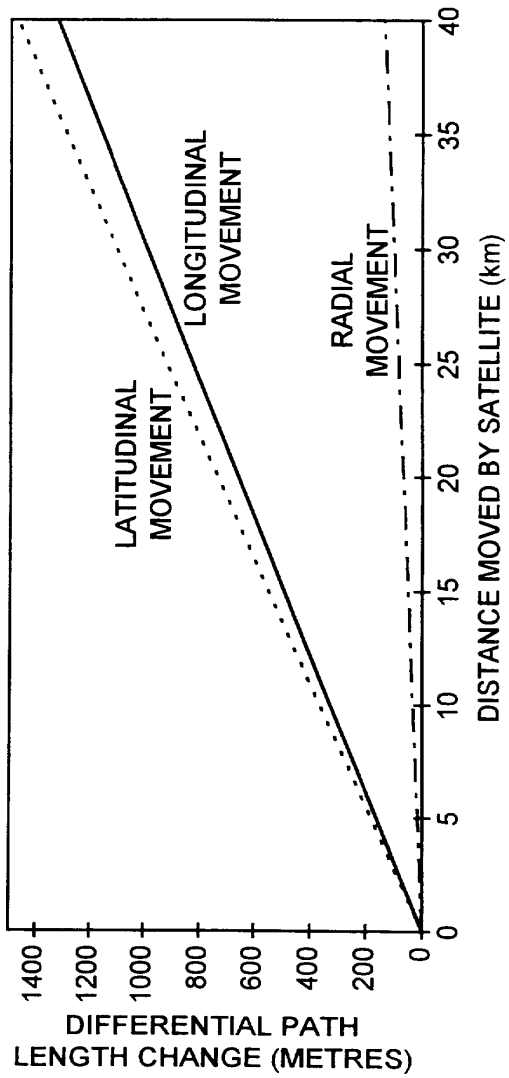
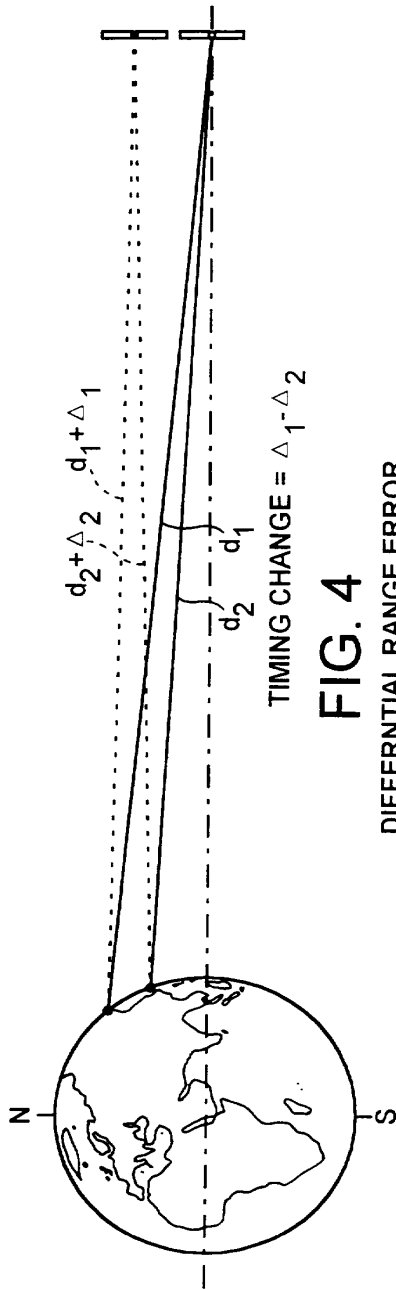
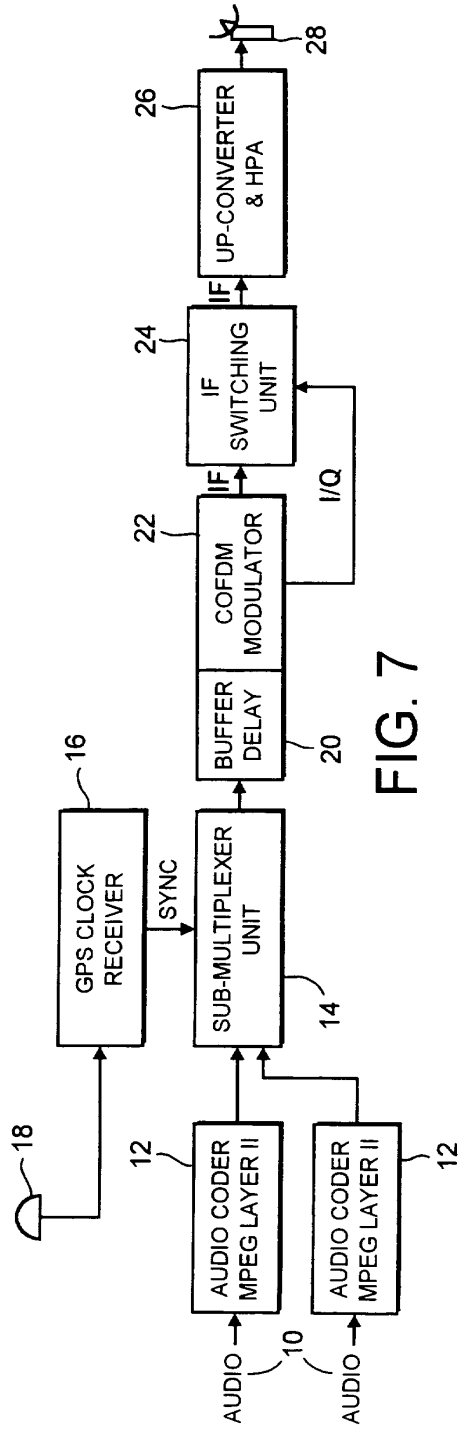
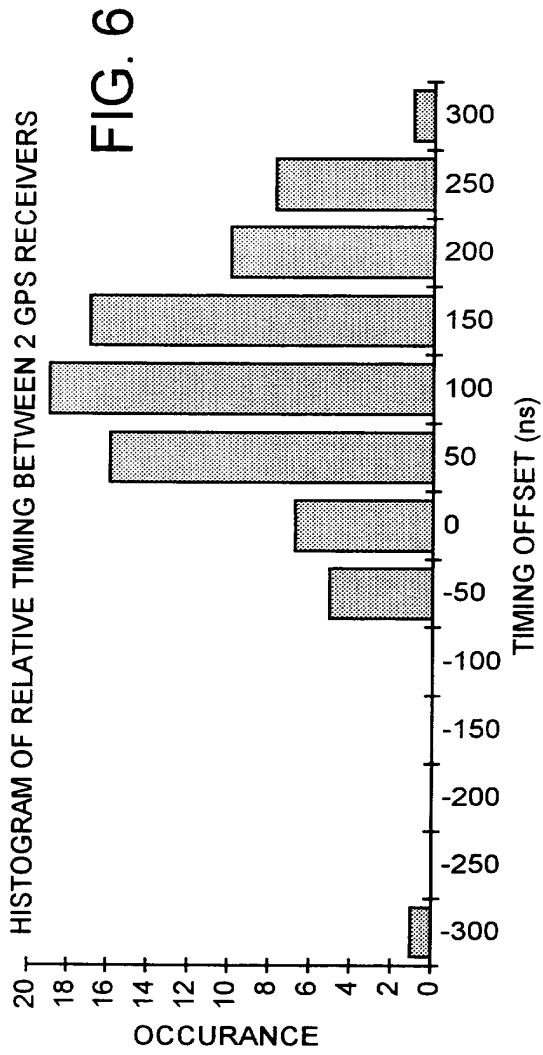


FIG. 5



DIGITAL BROADCAST SYSTEMS

This invention relates to digital broadcast systems such as digital audio broadcast (DAB) and in particular to a system which enables digital broadcasts from two or more different broadcasters to be combined in a single broad band transmission.

The Eureka-147 DAB system which has been proposed as a practical implementation of digital audio broadcasting operates by using a coded orthogonal frequency division multiplexed (COFDM) system. In this, a large number of carriers are spread over a broad frequency band to carry digital data. Each carrier is modulated with the data so as to carry two bits of data by using quadrature phase shift keying (QPSK). Groups of these carriers are then transformed to the time domain by a Fast Fourier transform to produce what is known as a DAB symbol. A plurality of these symbols are assembled and between them are able to carry data from a large number of channels. The symbols are transmitted together in a DAB frame or multiplex comprising a series of symbols and which commences and terminates with a null symbol for synchronisation. A typical transmission bandwidth of 1.53 MHz can typically accommodate 5 or 6 channels.

Satellite delivery of digital broadcasts is seen as an attractive option for international broadcasters because it provides coverage of large areas at relatively low costs.

Because a Eureka-147 DAB ensemble carries not just one but several audio channels or other services, several co-operating broadcasters would need to share an ensemble between them. This can be relatively easily accomplished at a national level where there are both national and

local broadcasters by leaving free symbols in national broadcasts into which local broadcasters can insert data. These would typically be combined at a single site and can then be transmitted over the relevant area.

5 Where it is desired to combine broadcasting over a number of different countries, e.g. UK, France, Germany and Austria, and transmit them as a single DAB ensemble over all of those countries, the combination at a single terrestrial uplink site becomes impractical because of the
10 cost of terrestrial data lines.

 One solution is to use a dedicated satellite with an on-board processor to which all the broadcasters transmit. The satellite then combines all the data and produces a single DAB ensemble from this. The problem with this, of
15 course, is that a dedicated satellite has to be launched in order for the system to become operational.

 A preferred embodiment of the present invention provides a system in which a number of different
20 broadcasters each transmit a section of a COFDM ensemble from an uplink site to a conventional satellite in time division multiplex slots. The satellite then amplifies and frequency shifts the received signals before transmitting them over its area of coverage. No on-board
25 processing is involved other than would be used for a conventional radio transmission. Each uplink site would need to be adequately synchronised to the others so that the resulting composite COFDM signal appeared seamless when transmitted by the satellite. This can easily be
30 achieved using the global position system (GPS).

 The invention is defined with more precision in the appended claims to which reference should now be made.

The invention will now be described in detail by way of example with reference to the accompanying drawings in which:

5 **Figure 1** shows schematically a number of uplink sites transmitting signals to a conventional satellite in time division multiplex (TDM) slots for retransmission over the satellite's area of coverage in an embodiment of the invention;

10 **Figure 2** shows schematically the combination of DAB symbols from three different uplink sites in accordance with an embodiment of the invention;

Figure 3 shows schematically the different slant path lengths from two European cities to a satellite in geostationary orbit;

15 **Figure 4** shows the differential range for a satellite in geostationary orbit;

Figure 5 is a graph showing the relationship between differential path length and the distance moved by the satellite;

20 **Figure 6** is a histogram showing relative timings between 2 GPS receivers; and

Figure 7 is a block diagram of an uplink site of the type shown in Figure 1.

25 It is envisaged that in an embodiment of this invention a multiplexed uplink system would involve two or more uplink sites of the type shown in Figure 1. These can be receiving one or more signals, coding them with COFDM and transmitting them in preassigned time slots to a satellite. Each uplink site provides a portion of the
30 COFDM signal directly to the satellite. The multi carrier nature of the Eureka DAB signal with its frequency and time interleaving means that mapping of a particular bit

pair onto a particular carrier is very complex. Whilst it would be technically possible to identify which carriers are associated with each uplink contribution, it would then be necessary to be able to suppress each carrier on an individual basis. This would be considerably more difficult than switching all of the carriers on and off simultaneously at single symbol boundaries. As will be seen, this is not a severe constraint and greatly simplifies the handover process.

10 A time division multiplex system of the type embodying the present invention requires a fairly radical rethink of the requirements of the DAB transmission chain. The TDM system requires complete shutdown of the transmitters RF output at frequent and regular intervals. At present there is no structure to enable the COFDM generator to switch off all the carriers at selective times. Inserting zeros into the multiplex is not the solution since the carriers are phase modulated and this would generate a symbol representing a digital zero. Therefore, TDM operation produces a requirement for a 3-stage control of the COFDM transmitter output, a digital one, a digital nought, and a suppressed carrier. This can be done in two ways.

25 In the first method, the symbols which are not going to be transmitted from the specified uplink are filled with dummy data and the RF output of the COFDM generator is switched off for the duration of the other contributions. As the contributing uplink sources only need to switch at a symbol boundary, this option is relatively simple. A small amount of logic is required to count through the symbols of each frame and switch at the appropriate time.

The second method is to configure the multiplexer and COFDM generator internally to switch off the unwanted carriers for the required time. The configuration is controlled from the multiplexing unit and a new interface to the COFDM generator. A new control mechanism would be required if the multiplexer was to be able to control adequately the COFDM generator. This requires access to the software on both devices.

In the TDM uplink arrangement, the transition points between the separate uplink signals as received at the satellite deserve special consideration. Apart from the problems of synchronisation, there is the problem introduced by the use of differential QPSK modulation. The receivers which are proposed for use with the signal decode each symbol in the ensemble with reference to the phase of the previous symbol (except for the first symbol of every transmission frame which is the fixed reference symbol). This is transmitted by uplink station number 1, the master, and is shown in Figure 2.

The other uplink sites are called slaves. Data uplinked by these slave stations cannot be differentially decoded from the beginning because the previous symbol will originate from a different uplink site and will therefore have no useful phase relationship. Because of this, the first symbol of a slave contribution cannot be differentially decoded to provide any useful data. However, its phase state does then become the reference for the second symbol, thereby allowing the remaining symbols from that uplink contribution to be decoded as normal.

To solve this problem, a dummy phase reference symbol is inserted at the start of each slave contribution as shown in Figure 2. The multiplexer can easily be

configured to insert a dummy service component occupying just a single symbol which it fills with random data or any other data. As the system is differentially modulated, the following symbol will be demodulated with
5 reference to the dummy symbol.

The system of Figure 2 shows three multiplex uplink sites carrying contributions of 128 K-bits/s and 64 K-bits/s as part of a TDM arrangement. The lower line of the diagram shows how the dummy phase reference signals
10 inserted by each slave uplink site become part of the overall composite signal received and retransmitted by the satellite.

Loss of the first symbol of each uplink contribution is not a great problem. In Mode III DAB there is a low
15 data-rate per symbol and this means that only 384 bits are lost for each slave uplink. This amounts to just under 0.7% per symbol and an arrangement using 10 geographically separate uplink sites (i.e. one master and nine slaves) would reduce the user capacity by only 6.25%.

20 Although a transitional dummy phase reference symbol cannot be used to carry any useful data, it may be used for carrying status information between uplink sites (by using a non-standard receiver).

The composite signal transmitted from the satellite
25 will be the combined result of the several different uplink stations. However, it must not exhibit any artefacts of its TDM origination. Three fundamental parameters which must be kept as constant as possible are:

1. synchronisation
- 30 2. uplink frequency
3. power level.

The handover between uplinks must not create overlaps or gaps in the signal, the power level must be constant throughout the transmission frame, and the frequency for each uplink must be the same so as not to create any discontinuity. That is to say, the final signal reaching the receiver must appear to be the result of a single transmission chain, rather than the combination of several contributing uplinks.

At the handover point between contributing uplinks, the timing error needs to be accurate to within a fraction of a symbol duration. For Mode III DAB the total symbol duration is 156 microseconds, (which includes a guard interval of 31 μ s). Any "data collision" arising from a mis-aligned uplink would probably cause the loss of some data from both uplinks. In addition, such a data collision would increase the input power to the satellite by 3 dB. Given the finite power capability of a satellite transponder, and the fact that it is likely to be operating close to saturation, this could affect other users of the transponder or even drive the HPA into an overload condition.

A lack of data at the appropriate time could also create problems. In particular, the Eu-147 system uses the null symbol for coarse synchronisation in the time domain, therefore a data gap in the composite signal could be misinterpreted as a null symbol, thereby causing complete synchronisation failure at the receiver, resulting in none of the services on that multiplex being received. Therefore, it is also equally important that a contributing uplink does indeed fill its allocated time-slot.

Various factors must be considered and corrected for to insure that the uplink contributions arrive at the satellite's input antenna at the exact time required.

An uplink site suitable for use in the present invention is shown in figure 7. In this particular example the uplink site is combining two local audio signals for uptransmission to a satellite. Each audio signal is first fed to an MPEG audio coder 12. This compresses the audio data. It is next synchronised in a sub-multiplexor unit 14 which receives a synchronising signal from a global positioning system (GPS) clock receiver 16 which receives the GPS signal via an antenna 18. The multiplexor audio signal is then passed to a buffer delay 20 which feeds them at appropriate intervals to a COFDM modulator 22. This produces a frame of COFDM symbols.

These symbols are supplied to an IF switching unit 24. This counts through the earth COFDM symbols in the frame in response to a clock signal which is supplied by the COFDM modulator 22 in its I/Q bus. The switching by the IF switching unit 24 makes sure that only symbols containing data relating to the two audio signals 10 are passed to an upconverter and high power amplifier 26 which then sends them to an antenna 28 for transmission to the satellite of Figure 1.

It will thus be appreciated that the system of Figure 1 comprises six uplink units similar to that of Figure 7. Four of these are handling only one audio signal, one is handling two audio signals and a final one is handling three audio signals. Each will be synchronised by its GPS clock receiver unit 16 and thus will insert audio data in symbols at different time periods to those used by other

uplink stations such that at the satellite a complete frame of data will be received.

If a more sophisticated receiver is used, the dummy symbol could carry other information. The first portion
5 could be used as the phase reference. For example, a specific data pattern could be included. This could then be monitored by the various uplink sites to aid synchronisation of uplink contributions.

The dummy symbol could also be used as a data channel
10 to feed back, to the uplink site providing the first contribution for each frame, information to go into the Fast Information Channel (FIC) which the first transmitter compiles and which describes the structure of the frame. Thus, it describes which symbols contain data for each
15 channel and, clearly, which symbols are dummy symbols.

Thus, the data is fed to the transmitter compiling the FIC via the satellite. No land line is required.

Other data which could be included in the dummy symbol are an audio channel for communication between the
20 uplink sites or additional data for various commercial services.

Furthermore, at each uplink site a receiver can be provided to monitor the timing and frequency of the dummy symbol it transmitted to the satellite. This can then be
25 used to adjust the timing and frequency of the signal provided by the transmitter.

Slant Path Length Compensation

The uplink stations will be located at arbitrary locations on the Earth's surface and will all experience different
30 path lengths to the satellite. In order to create a seamless composite DAB signal the uplink sites with short

path lengths will need compensating delays so that their contributions do not arrive too early.

Given the orbital location of the satellite, and the latitude and longitude of the uplink station, the path length can be readily calculated. Taking a European example, as illustrated in Figure 5:

For a satellite at:	10.2° East
Uplink 1:	Lisbon 39°N 9°W
Uplink 2:	Bergen 61°N 5°E.

The nominal difference in the slant path range between the two earth stations and the satellite is 1,749 km, which corresponds to a delay of 5.83 ms.

This could easily be compensated for by delaying the transmission from the Lisbon uplink site (which is closer to the satellite) by an equal amount. (This then allows the placement of the contributing signal at any point in the DAB transmission frame.)

The maximum possible slant path length would be experienced by an earth station on the very edge of the uplink coverage zone where the elevation angle is lowest. It is generally accepted that a minimum earth station antenna elevation angle of 5 degrees is required, and at such a location this gives a maximum possible slant path length of around 41,130 km (corresponding to a one-way propagation time of 138 ms). On the other hand, the shortest possible slant path distance would be from an earth station exactly at the sub-satellite point at a range of 35786 km, corresponding to a delay of 120 ms. The location of any uplink site can therefore be compensated for using a delay of no more than 18 ms, the

exact figure depending on its geographical location relative to the satellite.

The BBC COFDM generator (CD2M/44) has a built in compensating delay of up to 4 ms, adjustable in increments of 488 ns, while the Marconi-Eddystone COFDM generator can manage a delay of up to 476 ms, adjustable in steps of approximately 1 μ s.

While the difference in the slant path length is the obvious (and major) consideration in synchronising the uplink stations, there are several other factors which affect the accuracy of the timing of each contribution. Some effects will create a common variation in the propagation delay between all the earth stations and the satellite, causing the whole DAB signal to arrive at the incorrect time. Other effects will cause differential errors which adversely change the synchronisation between the uplinked contribution signals.

Although termed "Geostationary", a satellite in GEO orbit will always have a tendency to wander a little, due to the Earth's gravitational irregularities, the influence of the Sun and Moon and solar pressure. These perturbations in the satellite's intended position complicate the uplinking of a TDM based system. As the satellite wanders about, the path length from the geographically separate contributing uplink sites will obviously vary. The normal satellite station keeping tolerance is usually quoted as $\pm 0.05^\circ$ in each plane, corresponding to maintaining the satellite's position within a cube of sides approximately 80 km. This movement can therefore give the calculated slant path length an error of around ± 40 km.

If this path length variation was identical for every uplink site then each uplink contribution would arrive at

the satellite slightly 'early' or 'late' but would maintain its place in the DAB frame. The whole broadcast signal would then arrive a few microseconds 'late' or 'early' but there would be no overall effect on
5 synchronisation between the uplinks.

But, while the path length change between various uplink sites and the satellite is indeed largely the same, any station keeping error will usually create a small but significant *differential* change in these path lengths,
10 which means a synchronisation error would be introduced between the various signals arriving at the satellite. This is illustrated in Figure 4 where d_1 and d_2 are the original distances from the uplink sites to the satellite, and Δ_1 and Δ_2 are the changes in distance due to orbital
15 drift. If Δ_1 is then different to Δ_2 , then a synchronisation error will be introduced.

Satellite station keeping errors can be resolved into three orthogonal planes - latitudinal - i.e. North/South, longitudinal - i.e. East/West, or radial - i.e. towards or
20 away from the Earth. The magnitude of the differential change varies widely depending on the satellite's plane of movement, the location of the uplink sites and the magnitude of the error in the satellite's station keeping.

The maximum possible differential range would be
25 between two uplinks at the extreme (5° elevation) and opposite edges of a global uplink coverage zone, with the satellite moving in the same plane. This would give a differential timing change of $1 \mu\text{s}/\text{km}$ of satellite movement. In practice, very few uplink sites operate at
30 these extremes and it is likely that most would be within a couple of thousand miles of each other.

Taking the Bergen/Lisbon/EMS example again, the nominal path length difference was shown to be 1,749 km

corresponding to a 5.83 ms fixed delay. Figure 5 shows the differential distance variation between the Bergen and Lisbon uplink paths for variations of the orbital position over the range $\pm 0.05^\circ$ or ± 40 km in each of the three planes.

For a change in the satellite's latitude, Lisbon, being further south than Bergen, experiences a smaller rate of change of path length than Bergen, and at the extremes the error can be ± 1344 metres, corresponding to $\pm 4.5 \mu\text{s}$ (which at $0.06 \mu\text{s}$ is a long way short of the theoretical maximum shown above). For a change in the satellite's longitude a similar magnitude of differential error is experienced, while for a radial change in position, both uplink sites experience very similar changes, resulting in little differential error.

The maximum change in timing would therefore occur when the satellite is at its maximum latitudinal error, and maximum longitudinal error and maximum radial error, combined with two uplink sites located in the same plane as the satellite's positional error. For uplink sites exclusively within Europe and a satellite station-keeping accuracy of $\pm 0.05^\circ$, this would result in a maximum variation of around $\pm 10 \mu\text{s}$, equivalent to ± 3 km. For worldwide uplinking the error could reach ± 20 km ($\pm 67 \mu\text{s}$).

Slant path calculations are generally based on the assumption that the Earth is a uniform sphere. In reality it is an irregular ellipsoid, with a polar radius of 6256.74 km, and an equatorial radius of 6278.12 km, meaning the Earth is slightly 'wider' E-W than it is 'tall' N-S. While slant path length calculations generally use an average figure for the radius, this is not accurate enough for the TDM application. In addition,

the 'radius' of the Earth varies along any circumference due to further irregularities in the geodetic sphere. Therefore, if the Earth is incorrectly assumed to be a regular sphere, then the slant path distance may be in error by perhaps +/- 10 km, equivalent to a timing error of +/- 33 μ s.

Several geodetic models have been proposed to approximate the Earth's shape, with GPS for example using "WGS 84". This enables errors due to ellipsoid geometry to be reduced to just a few metres.

The Earth station's height above sea level can also contribute to a timing error if it is located near the sub-satellite point. Mexico City, the uplink location for our first Eu-147 DAB satellite tests, is at an altitude of around 2 km above sea level.

Each of the contributing uplinks will need to be synchronised to a common time reference. The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a relatively low cost method of global timekeeping and can provide synchronisation to an accuracy of around 1 μ s anywhere in the world. With this application in mind, a pair of GPS based master reference clocks were tested and a histogram produced is shown in Figure 6.

The samples were taken over a period of several weeks, at irregular intervals of at least 15 minutes. As can be seen, there is a distinct fixed offset between the two receivers (an average of 130 ns) but excluding this offset, around 97% of the results show the receivers to be within 175 ns of each other. While the standard GPS specification provides a dithered signal accurate to within +/-340 ns of GPS time/UTC for 95% of the time, the affect of the GPS receiver's flywheel circuitry smooths out the short term phase noise giving a better result.

While the antennas of the two GPS receiver used for the test were located only 0.3 metres apart, the manufacturers claim that similar results would be obtained if the receivers were thousands of miles apart.

5 The effect of the ionosphere varies depending mainly on sunspot activity, time of day, and path length through the ionosphere (which in turn depends on the satellite's elevation angle). The error contribution for the downlink path at 1.5 Ghz is likely to be less than 20 metres and
10 will be common to all contributions. Atmospheric refraction on the uplink paths (typically 14 Ghz) is likely to be less than 1 metre (3 ns) and so will have a negligible affect on any particular uplink contribution.

15 Even a transparent transponder satellite will experience a small throughput delay, due mainly to filtering. This delay will be common to all contributions.

 It has been shown above that there are several factors which will influence the accuracy which is
20 achievable from a slant path distance calculation, and these are summarised in the table below. Some factors only cause an overall delay to the composite signal which is of little importance. Others (marked with a *) create a synchronisation error which may need to be compensated
25 for. The figures given are 'typical worse case' examples.

Parameters:	Distance Error	Time Error
1. Irregular ellipsoid geometry of Earth	10 km	33 μ s
30 2. Height of earth station a.s.l.	2 km	6.7 μ s

3.	Atmospheric refraction (downlink @ 1.5 Ghz)	20 metres	67 ns
4.	Satellite processing delay	1 km	3.3 μ s
5.	Station keeping accuracy of satellite	80 km	266 μ s
	[Differential error due to station keeping]	6 km*	20 μ s*]
6.	Synchronisation clock	300 metres*	1 μ s*
	*Differential errors	6.3 km	21 μs
10	(creating synchronisation errors)		

Therefore, under poor conditions the timing change between two uplink stations in widely separated locations could be double this figure at **42 μ s**.

While several factors cause a delay common across all uplinks this can be compensated for with a fixed delay, but the time-varying differential error due to satellite drift and GPS receiver clock error will always remain and, depending on the uplink location, this could be significant. Using DAB transmission Mode III the guard interval is only 31 μ s, and in a hybrid satellite / terrestrial gap filler system, the erosion of the guard interval due to synchronisation errors would be particularly detrimental.

While the fixed components can all be compensated for by using the programmable internal delay of the COFDM generator, the time varying components may need to be eliminated by some form of closed loop control system based on the composite broadcast signal received at each slave uplink site as discussed earlier.

In a single uplink application the up-converter which mixes the signal to its final uplink frequency need not be

particularly stable as the receiver's AFC is capable of compensating for some error. However, in the COFDM uplink multiplexing system, the receiver's AFC and phase reference circuitry operate only on the first symbol of the DAB frame, and therefore only "tune in" to the master station. Switching to a different signal (i.e. a slave contribution) part way through the frame means a step change in the frequency, and any frequency difference gives rise to a loss of ruggedness of the signal. Therefore, each uplink site must employ a highly stable up-converter. The fact that Eu-147 uses differential coding is of benefit here, as it is the phase change between symbols which is important rather than absolute phase. A frequency reference with a short term (1000 seconds) frequency accuracy of <5 in 10^{10} is typically available from GPS clock receivers which could assist in frequency matching of all slave stations.

Doppler Shift

Geostationary satellites do not normally create any significant doppler shift of their own due to their fixed orbit (but a mobile terrestrial receiver will experience some doppler shift due to its own velocity unless the satellite is directly overhead). However, doppler shift may be a problem during a repositioning manoeuvre (when compensating for orbital drift), when the satellite may have to move many kilometres in a short period of time.

The frequency shift is caused by two components. The frequency of the uplink transmission (typically at Ku band, 14 Ghz) will appear to be slightly altered, while the frequency of the downlink (broadcast signal) will also change, and in the same direction, compounding the problem. However, because doppler shift is proportional

to frequency, the uplink accounts for around 90% of any frequency change. A fixed frequency error throughout the transmission frame is not a problem as it can be tracked by the AFC circuitry in the consumer's receiver. But in an uplink multiplexing arrangement, the doppler could create a step change in frequency part way through the frame, thereby degrading the quality of the slave contributions.

As the satellite undergoes its repositioning manoeuvre, each uplink signal may experience a different doppler shift, the magnitude of which will vary with the direction of movement of the satellite. The difference between the frequency shifts of the transmissions from the individual uplink sites depends on their geographical separation (in a similar way to the change in time synchronisation with satellite movement).

Again, the frequency change is dependant on the satellite's velocity (i.e. speed and direction) and the geographical location of the uplink sites. The worse case situation would be between two uplinks at the extreme (5° elevation) and opposite edges of a global uplink coverage zone, with the satellite moving in the same plane. This could create a frequency step of approximately $15V$ Hz, where V is the velocity in metres/sec, (however this is a rather extreme and unlikely case). Monitoring the frequency transmitted by the satellite at each uplink site enables automatic feedback control of the uplink transmission to be achieved.

Repositioning is only likely to occur every few weeks and it may be possible to request that it happens at a convenient time of the night when audience figures are low (e.g. 04.00 am).

For a power limited system such as this where the link margin may well be just 2 dB, it is vital that the downlink power budget is maximised, and so the satellite must operate at its optimum power output. This requires
5 that the power level of each contribution to the COFDM transmission frame should be matched to within a fraction of a dB when it arrives at the satellite's input antenna. Gain compensation for incorrect uplink power levels will not be possible at the satellite, and so each uplink site
10 will have the responsibility of ensuring that its own power level matches that of the master station.

The signal levels received at the satellite will depend on several factors - nominal uplink power setting, amplifier efficiency, transmitting antenna misalignment,
15 equipment ageing, satellite receiving antenna gain variation with direction, spreading loss (due to the geographical location of the uplink site). In addition to these "fixed" variables the effect of atmospheric attenuation, and in particular the affects of local rain
20 can change the effective *uplink* power level by 1 or 2 dB in only a few seconds.

The simplest way of achieving a constant envelope would be to monitor the broadcast signal at each slave site, and adjust the local uplink power as required. This
25 would then take into account all the above variables and can be done automatically with a feedback loop.

MULTIPLEX CONFIGURATION AND THE FAST INFORMATION CHANNEL

In a normal single transmission chain system, the multiplex can be reconfigured dynamically, with the
30 corresponding Multiplex Configuration Information (MCI) being signalled in the Fast Information Channel (FIC). In the TDM uplinking system it is not possible to time

multiplex the FIC data and so the master uplink station alone would provide the FIC and hence the MCI. This leads to some limitations in the way the multiplex can be reconfigured. For the multiplex to operate correctly it is essential that the data supplied by the MCI matches the actual configuration transmitted by each of the slave uplink sites.

The simplest method is obviously for all parties to agree on a semi-permanent multiplex configuration. The MCI will therefore only need to be changed on the rare occasion when a radical reconfiguration is required, and a suitable scheme could be developed to ensure that all parties complied with the pre-agreed changes.

Where a multiplex reconfiguration is limited to an internal change at one uplink site only, so that the capacity transmitted from that site (i.e. the total number of symbols) remained constant, only the master and that particular slave site need to make any changes. However, a multiplex reconfiguration may require a change in the total capacity contributed by a particular site, and this would involve notifying the other affected sites of the impending change.

When the total number of symbols per frame transmitted by an uplink is to change, a complication arises. The multiplex reconfiguration is not an instant event due to the affect of the time interleaving process, and to comply thoroughly with the Eu-147 specification, would require that some of the data would continue to originate from the first uplink even after the second uplink had started to contribute to its newly acquired symbol. The mapping of bits onto carriers and the necessary switching is extremely complex and while such a

scheme would not be impossible to implement, the benefits would be perhaps marginal.

It is worth noting that while terrestrial DAB will experience roughly the same change in demand across all services through the day, for satellite DAB the situation is different. The different time zones covered by a single beam could mean that a particular service aimed primarily at the eastern edge of its coverage may require a larger proportion of the multiplex at the peak listening time of the day, and a few hours later may wish to relinquish some of its capacity to an uplink site primarily serving the western edge of the downlink beam as this region approaches its own peak listening time.

One of the disadvantages with any TDMA like scheme is that the transmission equipment must be rated for the peak power levels, even though the average power output may be relatively low. For example, the normal RF power requirement for a DAB uplink, supplying a full multiplex, is typically around 10 Watts. However, the amplifier would need to be backed off by several dB from saturation (to prevent non-linear distortion), and so will need to be rated at around 30 Watts. A single uplink of 128 kbits/s contributing to the 1.152 Mbits/s DAB multiplex will only be operating at 11% duty cycle - in this case with an average power of 1.1 Watts but even so the amplifier used must still be rated at 30 Watts.

For each of the specified DAB operating modes, the carrier spacing is approximately proportional to the transmitting frequency. This means that the effects of oscillator phase noise and doppler shift, which scale with frequency, also remain constant. While for DAB Mode III the carrier spacing of 8 kHz is adequate for the transmitting frequency of around 1.5 Ghz, the uplink

frequency is likely to be several times greater than this, with most uplinks operating at around 6 Ghz (C-band) and 14 Ghz (Ku-band). Any phase noise in the up-converter therefore contributes to a degradation of the DAB signal, and so this component must be carefully chosen.

5 With any time multiplexed system it is vital that every contributing source is operating correctly synchronised so that it only transmits during its allocated period, otherwise errors will occur. It was pointed out in the section describing timing accuracy that a data collision may not only cause a data loss, and in severe cases may also cause amplifier overload or a reduction in available power for other users of the transponder.

15 In particular, the first few data bits of every MPEG audio frame carry the very important MPEG header bits used for audio frame synchronisation. This data is mapped into the first symbol of the DAB audio frame, and so even a one symbol overlap due to an incorrect configuration may cause a complete loss of audio for the second contribution. (Although the ETSI standard uses a 16-bit time interleaving process to shuffle the data around between frames, it does not change the relative position of the data within the frame, making the data particularly sensitive to frame rate effects).

25 In the Eu-147 system, the null symbol is essential for coarse synchronisation in the time domain and so if a slave uplink fault condition creates a gap, this can be misinterpreted as a null symbol, thereby preventing the receiver from acquiring synchronisation, and therefore resulting in non of the services on that multiplex being received.

In the event of a slave uplink being unable to provide a correctly timed signal at the correct frequency and with an appropriate power level it would be wise for it to drop out immediately, and be replaced by the master uplink for the duration of the fault. Therefore the master uplink station needs the flexibility to allow it to cover for fault conditions at any of the slave sites.

The cost of the *additional* equipment required to implement a time division multiplexed uplink, as described is relatively small. On the top of the usual equipment required for a 'hub' earth station (multiplexer, COFDM generator, upconverter and power amplifier), the only two extra pieces of equipment required for TDM operation are the GPS master clock receiver, costing around £2,000 and an RF switching unit, which if manufactured commercially would cost approximately £2,000.

CLAIMS

1. A method for transmitting a multi-carrier signal having a regular frame structure and symbol rate comprised of contributions from a plurality of different transmitters comprising the steps of:
- 5
- a) transmitting the contributions from each transmitter to a central transmitter in preassigned time slots;
 - b) retransmitting the thus received contributions as a single signal over a predetermined area of coverage; and
 - 10 c) inserting at the start of each contribution a dummy symbol for use as a phase reference for demodulating succeeding symbols in that contribution.
- 15
2. A method according to claim 1 in which the central transmitter comprises a satellite in geostationary orbit and the plurality of transmitters comprise earth based transmitters.
- 20
3. A method according to claim 1 in which the central transmitter comprises a stratospheric platform in geostationary orbit and the plurality of transmitters comprise Earth based transmitters.
- 25
4. A method according to claim 2 or 3 including the step of providing a timing reference signal to each earth based transmitter.
5. A method according to claim 4 in which the step of providing a timing reference comprises detecting a

global timing signal transmitted by a global positioning system (GPS).

6. A method according to claim 2 or 3 comprising the step of providing common frequency reference signals to each Earth based transmitter.

7. A method according to any preceding claim including the step of delaying transmission of signals from each Earth station to the satellite in dependence on the position on the Earth's surface of each Earth station.

8. A method according to claim 7 including the step of monitoring at each Earth station the COFDM signal from the satellite and adjusting the delay applied to transmissions from the Earth station to compensate for any timing errors caused by other factors.

9. A method according to claim 8 in which timing errors are caused by the relative position and velocity of the satellite or stratospheric platform.

10. A method according to any preceding claim including the step of monitoring at each transmitter the timing and frequency of the contribution supplied by that transmitter after re-transmission by the central transmitter, and adjusting the timing and frequency of the signal to be transmitted in dependence on the received signal.

11. A method according to claim 10 in which the dummy symbol includes a predetermined pattern of data

which are used for monitoring the timing and frequency of signals received at each transmitter.

12. A method according to any preceding claim in which at least part of the dummy symbol is used to
5 transmit data to dedicated receivers.

13. A method according to claim 12 in which the data for dedicated receivers is used as data for voice communication channel between Earth stations.

14. A method according to any preceding claim in
10 which at least part of the dummy symbol is used as a data channel to supply data to the transmitter providing the first contribution in each frame of data for inclusion in an information signal defining the structure of the frame.



Application No: GB 9721862.2
Claims searched: 1 to 14

Examiner: Ken Long
Date of search: 15 April 1998

Patents Act 1977
Search Report under Section 17

Databases searched:

UK Patent Office collections, including GB, EP, WO & US patent specifications, in:
UK Cl (Ed.P): H4M (MTQA1-3 & MTQX1-3) & H4P (PAL, PSB & PAPS)
Int Cl (Ed.6): H04J 3/06 H04B 7/212 & H04L (7/04 & 27/26)
Other: NONE

Documents considered to be relevant:

Category	Identity of document and relevant passage	Relevant to claims
A	GB 2313527 A MITSUBISHI	None
A	EP 0683576 A1 HITACHI	None
A	WO 94/08405 A1 MOTOROLA	None
A	US 4574379 AT&T	None

X	Document indicating lack of novelty or inventive step	A	Document indicating technological background and/or state of the art.
Y	Document indicating lack of inventive step if combined with one or more other documents of same category.	P	Document published on or after the declared priority date but before the filing date of this invention.
&	Member of the same patent family	E	Patent document published on or after, but with priority date earlier than, the filing date of this application.



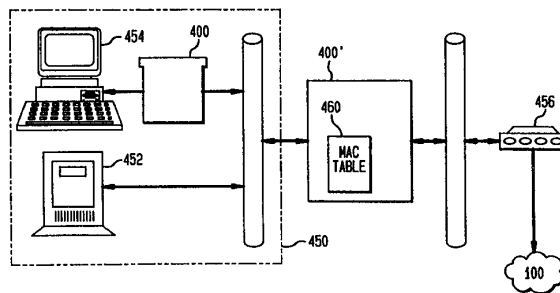
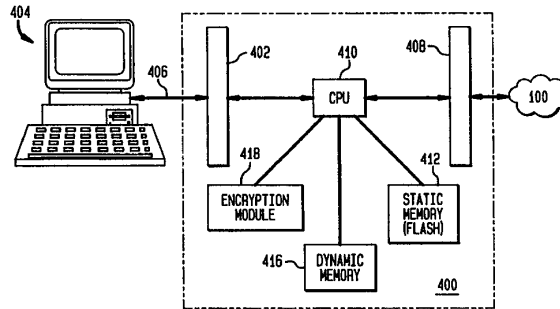
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : G06F</p>	<p>A2</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/32065 (43) International Publication Date: 23 July 1998 (23.07.98)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/24201 (22) International Filing Date: 31 December 1997 (31.12.97) (30) Priority Data: 60/033,995 3 January 1997 (03.01.97) US (71) Applicant: FORTRESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. [US/US]; Suite 650, 2701 North Rocky Point Drive, Tampa, FL 33607 (US). (72) Inventors: FRIEDMAN, Aharon; Apartment 4208, 2717 Seville Boulevard, Clearwater, FL 34624 (US). BOZOKI, Eva; Apartment 2113, 6161 North Memorial Highway, Tampa, FL 33615 (US). (74) Agents: RUBENSTEIN, Kenneth et al.; Meltzer, Lippe, Goldstein, Wolf & Schlissel, P.C., 190 Willis Avenue, Mineola, NY 11501 (US).</p>		<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AU, BA, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KP, KR, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, SG, SI, SK, SL, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p>Published <i>Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.</i></p>

(54) Title: IMPROVED NETWORK SECURITY DEVICE

(57) Abstract

A network security device is connected between a protected client and a network. The network security device negotiates a session key with any other protected client. Then, all communications between the two clients are encrypted. The inventive device is self-configuring and locks itself to the IP address of its client. Thus, the client cannot change its IP address once set and therefore cannot emulate the IP address of another client. When a packet is transmitted from the protected host, the security device translates the MAC address of the client to its own MAC address before transmitting the packet into the network. Packets addressed to the host, contain the MAC address of the security device. The security device translates its MAC address to the client's MAC address before transmitting the packet to the client.



FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakistan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

IMPROVED NETWORK SECURITY DEVICE

Related Application

This patent claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Patent Application
5 Serial Number 60/033,995 entitled "Improved Network Security Device", filed
on January 3, 1997 for Dr. Aharon Friedman and Dr. Eva Bozoki. This patent
application is directed to improvements in the invention described in U.S. Patent
Application Serial No. 08/529,497 entitled "Network Security Device" and filed
on September 18, 1995. The contents of these two documents are
10 incorporated herein by reference.

Field of the Invention

The present invention is directed to improvements in a network security
device that is connected between a protected computer("the client") and a
15 network and/or a protected local area network (LAN) and a wide area network
(WAN) as well as a method for using the network security device.

Background of the Invention

A. Network Architecture

20 An Internet communications network 100 is depicted in FIG. 1 including five
transmit or backbone networks A,B,C,D, and E and three stub networks R, Y, and
Z. A "backbone" network is an intermediary network which conveys
communicated data from one network to another network. A "stub" network is
a terminal or endpoint network from which communicated data may only initially
25 originate or ultimately be received. Each network, such as the stub network R,
includes one or more interconnected subnetworks I, J, L, and M. As used herein,
the term "subnetwork" refers to a collection of one or more nodes, e.g., (c,w), (d),
(a), (b,x,y), (q,v), (r,z), (s,u), (e,f,g),(h,i),(j,k,l),(m,n), and (o,p), interconnected by
wires and switches for local internodal communication. Each subnetwork may be
30 a local area network (or "LAN"). Each subnetwork has one or more interconnected
nodes which may be host computers ("hosts") u,v,w,x,y,z (indicated by triangles)
or routers a,b,c,d,e,f,g,h,i,j,k,l,m,n,o,p,q,r,s (indicated by squares). A host is an
endpoint node from which communicated data may initially originate or ultimately

be received. A router is a node which serves solely as an intermediary node between two other nodes; the router receives communicated data from one node and retransmits the data to another node. Collectively, backbone networks, stub networks, subnetworks, and nodes are referred to herein as "Internet systems".

5 FIG. 2 shows a block diagram of a host or router node 10. As shown, the node may include a CPU 11, a memory 12 and one or more I/O ports (or network interfaces) 13-1, 13-2, . . . , 13-N connected to a bus 14. Illustratively, each I/O port 13-1, 13-2, . . . , 13-N is connected by wires, optical fibers, and/or switches to the I/O port of another node. The I/O ports 13-1, 13-2, . . . , 13-N are for
10 transmitting communicated data in the form of a bitstream organized into one or more packets to another node and for receiving a packet from another node. If the host 10 is a host computer attached to a subnetwork which is an Ethernet, then the host will have an I/O port which is an Ethernet interface.

 A host which initially generates a packet for transmission to another node
15 is called the source node and a host which ultimately receives the packet is called a destination node. Communication is achieved by transferring packets via a sequence of nodes including the source node, zero or more intermediary nodes, and the destination node, in a bucket brigade fashion. For example a packet may be communicated from the node w to the node c, to the node d, to the node b,
20 and to the node x.

 An exemplary packet 40 is shown in FIG. 3A having a payload 41 which contains communicated data (i.e., user data) and a header 42 which contains control and/or address information. Typically, the header information is arranged in layers including an IP layer and a physical layer.

25 The IP layer typically includes an IP source address, an IP destination address, a checksum, and a hop count which indicates a number of hops in a multihop network. A physical layer header includes a MAC (Media Access Control) address (hardware address) of the source and a MAC address of the destination.

30 The user data may include a TCP (Transfer Control Protocol) packet including TCP headers or a UDP (User Data Protocol) packet including UDP headers. These protocols control among other things, the packetizing of

information to be transmitted, the reassembly of received packets into the originally transmitted information, and the scheduling of transmission and reception of packets (see e.g., D. Comer, "Internetworking With TCP/IP", Vol. 1 (1991); D. Comer and D. Stevens, "Internetworking With TCP/IP", Vol. 2 (1991)).

5 As seen in FIG. 3B, in an exemplary Internet protocol (IP), each node of the Internet 100 is assigned an Internet address (IP address) which is unique over the entire Internet 100 such as the Internet address 30 for the node y shown in FIG. 3B. See, Information Sciences Institute, RFC 791 "Internet Protocol", September, 1981. The IP addresses are assigned in an hierarchical fashion; the Internet (IP)
10 address 30 of each node contains an address portion 31 indicating the network of the node, an address portion 32 indicating a particular subnetwork of the node, and a host portion 33 which identifies a particular host or router and discriminates between the individual nodes within a particular subnetwork.

 In an Internet system 100 which uses the IP protocol, the IP addresses of
15 the source and destination nodes are placed in the packet header 42 (see FIG. 3A) by the source node. A node which receives a packet can identify the source and destination nodes by examining these addresses.

 In an Internet system, it is the IP address of a destination that is known, and the physical address (i.e., MAC address) to be placed in the MAC frame header is
20 to be determined. If the destination host is on the same local area subnetwork (and this is easily determined by observing that the network part in both the source and destination IP addresses is the same), then the destination address that is to go into the MAC header destination address field is simply the physical address of the destination host. The MAC destination address may be found by means of the
25 ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) which comprises having the source host broadcast an ARP request packet with the IP address of the destination host and having the destination host respond with its hardware (MAC) address. This MAC address may be placed in the MAC frame (physical layer) headers.

30 B. Encryption Techniques

 Eavesdropping in a network, such as the Internet system 100 of FIG. 1, can be thwarted through the use of a message encryption technique. A message

encryption technique employs an encipherment function which utilizes a number referred to as a session key to encipher data (i.e., message content). Only the pair of hosts in communication with each other have knowledge of the session key, so that only the proper hosts, as paired on a particular conversation, can encrypt and

5 decrypt digital signals. Three examples of encipherment functions are (1) the National Bureau of Standards Data Encryption Standard (DES) (see e.g., National Bureau of Standards, "Data Encryption Standard", FIPS-PUB-45, 1977), (2) Fast Encipherment Algorithm (FEAL)(see e.g., Shimizu and S. Miyaguchi, "FEAL-Fast Data Encipherment Algorithm," Systems and Computers in Japan, Vol. 19, No. 7,

10 1988 and S. Miyaguchi, "The FEAL Cipher Family", Proceedings of CRYPTO '90, Santa Barbara, Calif., Aug., 1990); and (3) International Data Encryption Algorithm ("IDEA") (see e.g., X. Lai, "On the Design and Security of Block Ciphers," ETH Series in Information Processing, v.1, Konstanz: Hartung - Gorre Verlag 1992). One way to use an encipherment function is the electronic

15 codebook technique. In this technique a plain text message m is encrypted to produce the cipher text message c using the encipherment function f by the formula $c = f(m, sk)$ where sk is a session key. The message c can only be decrypted with the knowledge of the session key sk to obtain the plain text message $m = f(c, sk)$.

20 Session key agreement between two communicating hosts may be achieved using public key cryptography. (See e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 5,222,140 and 5,299,263).

Before discussing public key cryptographic techniques, it is useful to provide some background information. Most practical modern cryptography is based on

25 two notorious mathematical problems believed (but not proven) to be hard (i.e., not solvable in polynomial time, on the average). The two problems are known as Factorization and Discrete-Log. The Factorization problem is defined as follows:

Input: N , where $N = pq$ where p and q are large prime numbers

Output: p and/or q .

30 The Discrete-Log problem is defined as follows:

Input: P, g, y , where $y \equiv g^x \pmod{P}$, and P is a large prime number

Output: x .

(The Discrete-Log problem can be similarly defined with a composite modulus $N = pq$).

Based on the Factorization and Discrete-Log problems, some other problems have been defined which correspond to the cracking problems of a cryptographic system.

One system of such a problem which has previously been exploited in cryptography (see, e.g., H.C. Williams, "A Modification of RSA Public-Key Encryption", IEEE Transactions on Information Theory, Vol. IT-26, No. Nov. 6, 1980) is the Modular Square Root problem, which is defined as follows:

10 Input: N, y , where $y \equiv x^2 \pmod{N}$, and $N = pq$, where p and q are large primes
Output: x .

Calculating square roots is easy if p and q are known but hard if p and q are not known. When N is composed of two primes, there are in general four square roots mod N . As used herein, $z \equiv \sqrt{x} \pmod{N}$ is defined to mean that x is the smallest integer whereby $z^2 \equiv x \pmod{N}$.

Another problem is known as the Composite Diffie-Hellman (CDH) problem, which is defined as follows:

Input: $N, g, g^x \pmod{N}, g^y \pmod{N}$, where $N \equiv pq$ and p and q are large primes.
Output: $g^{xy} \pmod{N}$.

20 It has been proven mathematically that the Modular Square Root and Composite Diffie-Hellman problems are equally difficult to solve as the above-mentioned factorization problem (see, e.g., M.O. Rabin, "Digitalized Signatures and Public Key Functions as Intractable as Factorization", MIT Laboratory for Computer Science, TR 212, Jan. 1979; Z. Shmueli, "Composite Diffie-Hellman Public Key
25 Generating Schemes Are Hard To Break", Computer Science Department of Technion, Israel, TR 356, Feb. 1985; and K.S. McCurley, "A Key Distribution System Equivalent to Factoring", Journal of Cryptology, Vol. 1, No. 2, 1988, pp. 95-105).

30 In a typical public-key cryptographic system, each user I has a public key P_i (e.g., a modulus N) and a secret key S_i (e.g., the factors p and q). A message to user I is encrypted using a public operation which makes use of the public key known to everybody (e.g., squaring a number mod N). However, this message is

decrypted using a secret operation (e.g., square root mod N) which makes use of the secret key (e.g., the factors p and q).

C. Network Security Devices

5 At present, existing network security products are categorized into two classes: (1) firewalls, such as Janus and ANS, and (2) software products, such as encrypted mail, secured http, one time password, etc.

A firewall is a dedicated computer, usually running a Unix operating system. It acts as a filter for incoming and outgoing communications. The firewall is placed
10 as a router between the local area network (LAN) and the outside world. The decision whether to pass a packet is made based on the source and/or destination IP address, and the TCP port number. Some firewalls also have the ability to encrypt data, provided that both sides of the communication employ the same brand of firewall. Some firewalls have a personal authentication feature.

15 Software products are based on the premise that the computer on which they are installed are secure, and protection is only needed outside on the network. Thus, such software products can easily be bypassed by breaking into the computer. A typical scheme is when an intruder implants a "Trojan Horse" on a computer which sends him an unencrypted copy of every transaction.
20 Sometimes, it is even done as a delayed action during the off-hours when the computer is not likely to be supervised.

In addition, there are authentication products designed to maintain the integrity of the computer against intrusion. These products are based on the premise that the products are 100% secure. Once the product is compromised,
25 it becomes totally ineffective. Sometimes, careless use by one user may jeopardize all other users of the product.

Firewalls are more effective in maintaining network security. However they are very expensive. Their price range is between \$10,000 and \$50,000, plus the price of the hardware. They require a high level of expertise to install and
30 maintain. The most sophisticated and effective firewalls require a specially trained technician or engineer for their maintenance. The special training cost is up to

\$10,000 per person, and the salary adds \$60,000 to \$120,000 or more per annum to the cost.

Firewalls have to be constantly maintained, modified, and monitored in order to yield reasonable security. They only cover the TCP part of the Internet Protocol
5 and not the UDP part. Thus, they do not provide security to NFS (Network File Services) and many client/server applications.

The firewall is a full service computer which can be logged into for maintenance and monitoring. Thus, it can be broken into. Once a firewall is compromised it loses its effectiveness and becomes a liability rather than a
10 security aid. Firewalls only protect the connection between a LAN and a WAN (Wide Area Network). It does not protect against intrusion into a particular host from within the LAN.

In view of the foregoing, it is an object of the present invention to provide a network security device which overcomes the shortcomings of the prior art
15 network security devices.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a hardware device to provide network security for individual hosts attached to a network.

It is a further object of the present invention to provide a hardware device to provide network security for a local area network connected to a wide area
20 network.

Summary of the Invention

The present invention provides improvements to the Network Security Device described in U.S. Patent Application Serial Number 08/529,497. These
25 improvements include (1) modifications in the device which adapt it to protect a LAN, (2) improved key generation, (3) an improved key exchange algorithm, and (4) improved packet handling procedures which provide double integrity checks.

A preferred embodiment of the inventive network security device comprises a first network interface connected to a protected client, a second network
30 interface connected to a portion of a network, and a processing circuit connected to both interfaces.

A communication from the protected client goes from the client, to the first interface, to the processing circuit, to the second interface and into the network. Similarly, a communication received from the network goes from the second interface, to the processing circuit, to the first interface and to the protected client.

A preferred embodiment of the present invention has four keys associated with it:

- (1) a static (permanent) private key;
- (2) dynamic (changing) private key;
- (3) a static public key; and
- (4) a dynamic public key.

In a preferred embodiment, the public keys are exchanged between two network security devices in order to establish a common secret key. The common secret key is the key which is used to encrypt/decrypt all messages between two particular devices. This key should not be transmitted.

The static keys are permanent keys unique to each device. The dynamic keys have a predetermined lifespan and are replaced periodically, such as every 24 hours. Preferably, the static keys are generated using a seed derived from the host's IP address, MAC address of the network interface connected between the protected host and the network security device, and the security device's serial number. Preferably, the dynamic keys are generated using seeds derived from current date and time information.

Packets received from the protected client are encrypted using an encipherment function such as IDEA, FEAL, or DES before being transmitted via the network to a destination. Similarly encrypted packets received from a destination are decrypted. Such encryption and decryption requires a common session key to be possessed jointly by the protected client and the destination (the destination being a protected client of another network security device located someplace else in the network).

The common crypto key (i.e., the common secret key) is obtained using a public key cryptography technique. To aid in the key exchange, the network security device maintains two databases. A static database (SDB) contains

information about secured hosts or nodes in the network. A secured host or node is a host or node that is protected by a network security device. Each entry in the static database contains information about a particular secured host, i.e., the host IP address, time entered in the database, and the host's permanent public key.

5 A dynamic data base (DDB) contains information about secured and unsecured hosts. Each entry in the dynamic database includes a host's IP address, the time that the host's dynamic key was generated, a flag indicating whether or not the host is secured, a flag indicating whether the host is in transition (i.e., in the middle of a key exchange), and a pointer to a common secret session key.

10 The protocol used by the network security device of host i to agree on a common crypto key with a network security device of host j is as follows.

 Consider a communication from host i to host j . The communication arrives at the network security device of host i from host i . The network security device checks if host j is in the dynamic database. If host j is in the dynamic database,
15 it is determined if the dynamic database has a common crypto key for communication between host i and host j . If there is such a common session key, the communication from host i is encrypted using the common crypto key and transmitted to host j . If there is no common crypto key, then host i sends the dynamic part of its public key P_i to host j and host j replies by sending the dynamic
20 part of its public key P_j to host i . The exchange of dynamic parts of the public keys may be encrypted using the static part of the public keys, which may be obtained from the static databases at host i and host j . The common crypto key is then calculated according to a Diffie-Hellman technique.

 Because the dynamic keys of each network security have a particular
25 lifespan, such as 24 hours, there may be a time difference between times when two device's keys expire. Thus, it is possible that one device's dynamic key may expire before the packet is received. One way to prevent this occurrence is to take into account this time difference. The DDB may correct the time difference between the time the packet was sent and the time the packet is received. Also,
30 the DDB time generation entry indicates to the network security device when the other party's dynamic key expires. Thus, when a communication between the

nodes is initiated, it may be determined whether a new dynamic key exchange is warranted, rather than attempting to use an expired common dynamic key.

Note that this assumes that there is an entry for host j in the static database of host i. If there is not, the exchange of dynamic public keys is preceded by an exchange of static public keys and the forming of a database entry for host j in the static database at host i. Moreover, if there is no entry for host j in the dynamic database of host i, such an entry will be generated before the dynamic key exchange.

A packet received by the network security device and the connected host is preferably processed in the following manner. The IP and MAC headers from the packet are copied into a new IP packet. The client host's physical address (e.g., the MAC address of the network interface between the client and the network security device) is replaced with the network security device's MAC address (e.g., the MAC address of the network interface between the network security device and the network). The new IP packet includes a proprietary header and proprietary tail. Information about the packet is stored in the proprietary tail, including check sum information. The data and proprietary tail are then encrypted. The proprietary header is then filled in, including check sum information for the encrypted data. This packet is then transmitted into the network.

This processing method provides a double integrity check. The check sum which was calculated after encryption is checked by the receiver before decryption, providing an integrity test of the encrypted data in transit. The check sum in the proprietary tail was calculated before encryption and checked by the receiver after decryption. This checksum provides a means of strong authentication because the static and dynamic keys used to encrypt the checksum are known only to the two communicating hosts. This check sum will differ if the common secret key is not identical on both sides and also provides an integrity test of the actual data. Note that if the check sum is replaced with a secured hash function, after the packet is encrypted, it becomes a digital signature. It should be noted that encryption takes place at the IP level so that TCP and UDP packets are encoded.

In short, the inventive network security device has a number of significant advantages.

Like a firewall, the inventive network security device is a hardware/software combination in a preferred implementation. However, it is a sealed "box" and cannot be logged into. Hence, it cannot be compromised the way a firewall can. It is much cheaper than a firewall. Thus, each node in the LAN can be equipped with it. This way, it provides protection inside the LAN as well as outside. The network security device works directly at the IP level. It therefore, covers all types of IP protocols and requires no special configuration to different network applications. Thus, the inventive network security device is maintenance free.

Brief Description of the Drawings

The present invention is described with reference to the following figures: FIG. 1 schematically illustrates an Internet system.

FIG. 2 schematically illustrates the architecture of a host in the network of FIG. 1.

FIGs. 3A and 3B illustrate the format of a packet transmitted in the network of FIG. 1.

FIG. 4A illustrates a network security device for use with a host in the network of FIG. 1 in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 4B illustrates a network security device for use with a LAN in accordance with an embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 5 illustrates an entry in a static database maintained by the network security device of FIG. 4.

FIG. 6 illustrates an entry in a dynamic database maintained by the network security device of FIG. 4.

FIG. 7 is a flow chart illustrating an activation method used by the network security device of FIG. 4.

FIG. 8 is a flowchart illustrating a key exchange method used by the network security device of FIG. 4.

FIG. 9 is a flow chart illustrating an IP packet handling algorithm utilized by the network security device of FIG. 4.

FIG. 10 illustrates an IP packet received from a connected host by the network security device and an IP packet transmitted from the network security device into a network.

FIG. 11 is a flowchart illustrating a method of processing the packets of FIG. 5 10.

Detailed Description of the Invention

Overview of the Invention

FIG. 4A schematically illustrates a network security device for protecting a host according to an embodiment of the invention. The security device 400 10 comprises a first interface 402 which is connected to the client host 404. Specifically, the interface 402 is connected to a network interface in the client host 404 (e.g., an interface 13 of Fig. 2) via a cable or wire 406. The security device 400 comprises a second interface 408 which is connected to a portion of 15 a network 100. Illustratively, the interface 408 is connected to an Ethernet so that the interfaces 402, 408 are Ethernet interfaces such as SMC Elite Ultra Interfaces.

FIG. 4B schematically illustrates a network security device 400' for protecting a LAN according to an embodiment of the invention. As seen in FIG. 20 4B, a network security device 400' according to the invention is connected between a LAN 450, such as an Ethernet network (including, for example, a file server 452 and a workstation 454), and a router 456 which routes communications between the LAN 450 and a WAN 100, such as the Internet. As discussed in detail below, several modifications are made in the Network Security 25 Device to adapt it for use in protecting a LAN. As also seen in FIG. 4B, network security devices may be arranged in a cascaded topology. Note that workstation 454 is associated with a network security device 400.

Returning to FIG. 4A, a CPU 410 is connected to the interfaces 402, 408. The CPU is, for example, an Intel 486 DX 62-66 or Pentium. Alternatively, the 30 processing circuit may be implemented as one or more ASICs (Application Specific Integrated Circuits) or a combination of ASICs and a CPU. A static memory 412 (e.g., flash EEPROM) is also connected to the CPU 410 and a dynamic memory

416 (e.g., RAM) is connected to the CPU 410. An optional encryption module 418 may be provided to perform encryption and large number arithmetic operations. The encryption unit may be implemented as a programmable logic array. Alternatively, the encryption module 418 may be omitted and its function
5 may be carried out using a software program which is executed by the CPU 410. However, because certain encryption functions are calculation intensive, it may be preferable to separate the encryption functions from other functions of the Network Security Device 400.

The software executed by the CPU 11 preferably has three components: (1)
10 operating system, (2) networking system, and
(3) key computation algorithms. The operating system and the networking system may both be part of a Unix-like kernel. The key computation algorithms reside in memory and are signaled into action by the networking system. The operating system is a lobotomized Linux system with all drivers taken out except the RAM,
15 disk, and Ethernet interfaces. The networking system is for communication, key exchange, encryption, configuration, etc. In a preferred embodiment, the key computation software may run independently of the other software. This shifts the computationally intensive task of key computation away from the operating system and networking system.

20 The CPU 410 maintains two databases. One database is a static database (SDB) 412 preferably stored in a permanent memory, such as a Flash ROM 412. FIG. 5 illustrates one entry in the SDB 412. The SDB may have an entry for the client host as well as other hosts. As seen in FIG. 5, the static database entry 500 contains permanent information about the network security device 400 and
25 other secured nodes in the network. The static database entry 500 may include the following information about another secured node: the other node's IP address 502, time that this other node was entered into the database 504, the node's permanent public key 506, and a pointer to the static common key shared by the network security device 400 and the other node's device 508. The static
30 database 500 may also contain the IP address and the serial number of the connected host 510.

A second database is a dynamic database (DDB) 416, which may be stored in a volatile memory, such as a RAM. FIG. 6 illustrates one entry in the DDB 416. As seen in FIG. 6, the dynamic database entry 600 contains information about secured and unsecured nodes, i.e., the other node's IP address 602, the time a last packet was sent from that other node 604, a time the other node's dynamic key was generated 606, a pointer to a common secret key shared with that node, time last updated, a secured flag indicating whether the node is secured (e.g., has its own network security device) 602, and a transition flag indicating whether the node is in transition (i.e., in the middle of a key exchange).

Briefly, a preferred embodiment of the present invention operates in the following manner. The interface 402 is put in a promiscuous mode. In this mode, the interface 402 passes all communications from the client host 404 that are sensed on the cable 406 to the CPU 410. The network connection is via the interface 408 which is set to the same IP address as the client 404. The network security device 400 responds to the Address Resolution Protocol by sending its own (rather than the client's) MAC address. This adds a level of security by blocking attempts to bypass the device 400 using the Ethernet protocol.

Received communications are checked to see if they are from a secured host. First, the DDB entry 600 is checked to determine if there is a current dynamic common key shared with the node sending the communication. If yes, this key is used to encrypt and decrypt subsequent packets. If no, if these nodes have communicated previously, a dynamic key exchange is performed. If it is the first time these nodes have communicated, a static key exchange is performed to obtain a static dynamic key. This static key is used to encrypt and decrypt the dynamic key exchange communications.

Activation and Initialization

In a preferred embodiment, the network security device 400 is a sealed box which cannot be logged into. The network security device 400 senses the IP (and/or MAC) address of the client host 404 and locks itself to it. Once the network security device is locked to the address, the client 404 is prevented by the network security device 400 from changing its IP (and/or MAC) address.

Preferably, before the network security device 400 is placed into service, it is activated. The role of activation is to allow or disallow burning the host's 404 IP address into an entry 500 in the static database 412. As discussed above, the SDB 412 may have an entry 500 for the connected client host.

- 5 The network security device's serial number (element 510) and the time of activation (element 504) may also be burned into the static database entry 500. As discussed below, these values may be used to generate a seed for the network security device's static private key.

FIG. 7 is a flowchart 700 illustrating a preferred activation method. First,
10 an "activation packet" containing an activation string in the payload may be sent from a connected computer, such as a host 404, through the network security device 400 (step 702). The packet is received by the device 400, which determines whether it has been activated (step 704). If it has not been activated, the IP address and other information are written into the flash memory (step 706),
15 as described above, and an acknowledgment packet is returned to the computer (step 708). The device 400 may also generate a confirmation message for display on a monitor of the connected computer (step 710). The Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is the protocol which is used to resolve an IP address into a matching Ethernet machine (MAC) address which is the actual address to which
20 the network interface responds. As discussed above, the inventive network security device uses ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) to configure itself and hide the client host. The manner in which the network security device processes an ARP request is described in related application Serial No. 08/529,497, the contents of this description are incorporated herein by reference.

25 **Key Calculation**

A preferred embodiment of the present invention has four keys associated with it:

- (1) a static (permanent) private key;
(2) dynamic (changing) private key;
30 (3) a static public key; and
(4) a dynamic public key.

In a preferred embodiment, the private keys are 128 bits long and are known only to that network security device. In a preferred embodiment, the public keys are 512 bits long and are revealed to others. Public keys, as described above, are exchanged between two network security devices in order to establish a 128 bit long common secret key. The common secret key is the key which is used to encrypt/decrypt all messages between two particular devices. The common secret keys should never be transmitted.

In a preferred embodiment, the keys are generated when the device 400 is turned on. As described in detail below, the static keys are permanent keys unique to each device and the dynamic keys have a predetermined lifespan and are replaced periodically, such as every 24 hours.

Static Keys

Keys are generated using a "seed", or number, which is then processed to generate a key. The seed for a randomly generated static private key for a particular network security device 400 is derived from the device's IP-address, MAC-address, serial number, and a time-stamp. The seed may be determined in the following manner:

$$\text{seed} = \text{IP} + \text{MAC}_l + \text{MAC}_h + \text{serial} + \text{time}$$

where:

MAC_l is the low four bytes of the device's six byte MAC address;
 MAC_h is the high two bytes of the MAC address.

Using this seed, a private key (preferably 128 bits long), is then randomly generated using a random number generator, such as the GNU Multiple Precision library copyrighted by Free Software Foundation Inc. (1996), Boston, Massachusetts, 02111. If the box is non-activated, the seed is the present time, thus it will be different every time the box is turned-on. On the other hand, for activated boxes, the static private key is a property of the box, it will not change by turning the box on/off.

Dynamic Keys

The dynamic private key is randomly generated at predetermined intervals. For example, dynamic keys may be generated every 24 hours. Preferably, the dynamic keys are derived from a random seed obtained from seconds, minutes,

and hours of the present time. The dynamic secret key may be processed from the seed using a random number generator, such as the GNU Multiple Precision library

Public Keys

5 The static and dynamic public keys are calculated from the private keys according to the equation:

$$X_i \equiv q^{x_i} \pmod{n}$$

where:

X_i is the public key;

10 x_i is the private key;

and q and n prime numbers which are preferably installed in each network security device.

Key Exchanges

The first time a client 404 or LAN 450 sends a message to another network security device, a protocol is executed by which the two devices (i) exchange static public keys (unencrypted), (ii) generate a static common key, and then (iii) exchange dynamic public keys encrypted with their static common key. FIG. 8 is a flowchart 800, illustrating the key exchange algorithm.

20 Consider the case where the host client wants to send a communication to a node in the network whose IP = A. When the communication arrives at the network security device of the host client the dynamic data base 416 (DDB) is checked to determine if there is an entry 600 for node A in the dynamic data base (step 702).

25 Note that the DDB includes an entry for a "secured" flag 612 and a "transition" flag 614. The secured flag indicates the current security status between the two network security devices. Preferably, the secured flag may be in one of five states:

- 0 = unsecured
- 1 = secured
- 30 2 = other party was secured, but now does not respond to dynamic key exchange request (i.e., other party has an entry in the SDB 500 but no current entry in the DDB 600)

3 = the device's dynamic key has expired and must renegotiate all dynamic keys

4 = cannot allocate key storage for the other party's key

The transition flag 614 indicates the status of a key exchange. Preferably, the

5 transition flag maybe in one of four states:

0 not in transition

$i \leq N$ waiting to receive a dynamic public key packet

$N + 2$ waiting for a dynamic common key calculation

$-i \geq -N$ waiting for static public key packet

10 $-(N + 2)$ waiting for a static common key calculation

where N is the maximum number of tries, and i is the actual number of tries. As discussed in detail below, if there is no entry 600 in the DDB 416, the SDB 412 is searched for an entry 500 corresponding to node A.

The database searches return:

15 (i) a transition flag; and

(ii) and a reference to the entry number in the database.

The "transition" and "secured" flags in the DDB may then be set accordingly. The following table sets out possible outcomes of a DDB/SDB search.

Possible Outcomes of Database Search.

20

	Need dynamic key	Need static key have nothing to decrypt with	Not asking for any key	Comments
Trans	1	-1	0	

	Need dynamic key	Need static key have nothing to decrypt with	Not asking for any key	Comments
Return	0 -(i + 1)	0	0 -(i + 1) +(i + 1) -(DB size + i + 1)	have nothing to en/decrypt with (no entry in DDB) use st-key to en/decrypt use dyn-key to en/decrypt have st-key in DB, but no dyn-key response (do not encrypt, but use st-key to decrypt)

Where DB size is the number of entries i for node A in the entry number in the dynamic database.

5 Returning to FIG. 8, if there is an entry for node A in the dynamic data base, a check is made to see if a common dynamic key for node A and the protected client has expired (step 803).

 If, for example, there is an entry for node A and the secured flag = 1, then node A is secured. Thus, the common dynamic key has not expired and the
10 packet is encrypted using the session key and an encipherment function such as IDEA (step 806).

 If the common dynamic key has expired, the dynamic data base entry for the node $IP = A$ has a secured flag = 3 and the transition flag is $i \leq N$ (step 804) which means a key exchange is taking place.

15 The exchange of the dynamic parts of the public keys of the host client and the node with $IP = A$ proceeds as follows. The host client (i.e., the source) sends its dynamic public key and IP address to the node with $IP = A$ (the destination) (step 808) and waits for a reply (step 810). The dynamic public key of the host may be encrypted with the static public key of the node with $IP = A$. The reply is
20 the dynamic public key of the destination node with $IP = A$. This may be encrypted

with the static public key of the host client. Steps 808 and 810 may be repeated several times, such as three times.

If no reply is received (step 812) from the destination, the source network security device sets the secured flag to 2 and the transition flag to 0 (step 814) in the DDB entry for the destination. If the packet to be encrypted originated from the host (step 816), the packet may be dropped (step 818). If the packet originated from another party, the network security device may try to decrypt the packet using the static private key (step 820).

If a reply is received, the transition flag for the destination node in the DDB entry 600 of the network security device of the host is set to $N + 2$ (step 822), indicating that the common dynamic key is being calculated. Then a common dynamic (crypto) key for the source and destination is calculated by the network security device of the source (step 824) using, for example, a Diffie-Hellman technique as described above. The common session key is then entered into the DDB entry 600 of the source network security device (step 826) and the transition flag for this DDB entry is marked 0 (step 828) because the transition is complete. The secured flag = 1.

The exchange of dynamic public keys and the calculation of a common crypto key assumes that there is an entry for the destination node with $IP = A$ in the static data base 412 (SDB) of the source network security device and in the dynamic data base 416 of the source network security device. That is, that these two network security devices have communicated before. If these entries do not exist (i.e., these two devices have not previously communicated), they may be created prior to the dynamic public key exchange (steps 708-722 described above).

If there is no DDB entry for node $IP = A$ (step 802), an entry is created (step 830), the secured flag = 0, and the transition flag is marked $-i \geq -N$ (step 832). The SDB 500 is checked to determine if the source network security device has an entry for node $IP = A$ (step 834).

If there is such an entry, proceed with the dynamic key exchange (steps 808-822), the secured flag is set to 1 and the transition flag is set as described above.

If there is no entry for node A in the SDB, then the network security device 400 sends its static public key in a key-packet to node A and drops the original IP-packet (step 836). The device waits a predetermined time, such as five seconds, for a reply (step 838). Steps 836 and 838 may be repeated several, e.g., three
5 times. While waiting for a response, the transition flag is $-i \geq -N$. If a reply is received (step 840), an entry is created in the SDB (step 842), the secured flag = 1 and the transition flag is 0. When the static key is received, the network security device calculates a common static key using its static key and a standard Diffie-Hellman technique. The transition flag is set to $-(N + 2)$. Once the static
10 common key is calculated, it is used to encrypt the dynamic key exchange (steps 808-822). The inventive device preferably uses the well-known Diffie-Hellman key exchange protocol.

If no reply is received, the secured flag = 2 and the transition flag in the entry in the DDB is 0 because the transition off (step 814).

15 Both the static and the dynamic key request maybe repeated N_{try} times at not less then t_{expire} time intervals (in a preferred embodiment they are set to 8 tries and 2 ms, respectively). Note that entries in the SDB are burned in and are permanent. Entries in the DDB may be volatile, that is, the entries may be overwritten or lost if the device 400 is turned off.

20 Note that if the second flag for another node is set at either 2, 3, or 4, the network security device will continue to attempt a dynamic key exchange every predetermined period, such as every five minutes.

Expiration of the Dynamic Keys and Synchronization

As indicated above, the dynamic keys have a predetermined lifespan. For
25 example, new dynamic keys may be generated every 24 hours. When the lifespan expires, all of the dynamic common key entries, which were calculated using an expired dynamic key, for other nodes are incorrect. Thus, all secured flags in the DDB are marked as secured = 3. When the dynamic key of a network security device's 24 hours expires, a new dynamic key is generated. The secured flag is
30 then changed back to 1 (or 2) when the next packet (sent to or received from that IP-address) initiates a successful dynamic key exchange.

Because the dynamic keys of each network security device have a particular lifespan, such as 24 hours, there may be a time difference between times when two device's keys expire. For example, if two devices in different time zones are both programmed to generate new dynamic keys at midnight, there may be several
5 hours difference between key expiration times. Thus, it is possible that one device's dynamic key may expire during a communication. Also, because Internet communications are connectionless, that is, the receiving party does not have to be connected to the sending party when the packet is transmitted, one or the other party's dynamic key may have expired before the packet is received.

10 One way to prevent this occurrence is to take into account this time difference. Referring back to FIG. 6, the DDB entry 600 contains an entry "time generated" 606, which indicates the time that the other device's dynamic key was generated. This is done by correcting the "time generated" entry by the time difference between the time the packet was sent (the time stamp entry 604 in the
15 DDB entry) and the time the packet is received (the present time).

Also, the time generated 606 entry indicates to the network security device 400 when the other party's dynamic key expires. Thus, when a communication between the nodes is initiated, it may be determined whether a new dynamic key exchange is warranted, rather than attempting to use an expired common dynamic
20 key.

During a dynamic key exchange, one party may have received the other party's dynamic key. The other side, however, may be calculating the common dynamic key and sending dynamic key requests encrypted with the static common key. To avoid having to drop the packet, if a received packet cannot be decrypted
25 with a dynamic key, the device tries to decrypt the packet using the static key. As a result, the packet is dropped only if the packet cannot be decrypted with the static key, that is, if it is an illegal packet.

Receiving a Key Packet

30 When a network security device receives an IP-packet containing another party's static or dynamic public key (sent either as a reply to a key-request or as an initiation for a key exchange), the public key is extracted from the packet and sent to either the CPU 410 or the encryption module 418 for further processing.

There the shared secret key is calculated from the device's own private key and the other party's just received public key.

As discussed above, these tasks are calculation-intensive, and it may be preferable to provide a separate structure, such as the encryption module 418, so
5 that the throughput of the entire device is not affected.

Packet Processing

Fig. 9 is a flowchart 900 illustrating a packet handling algorithm utilized by the inventive network security device. Illustratively, the packet arrives with the source address IP = C (step 901). The packet may arrive from the connected host
10 at interface 402 or from the network at interface 408.

First consider the case where the packet arrives from the host at interface 402. If the packet carries an ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) or IGMP (Internet Gateway Message Protocol) identification (step 902), the packet is passed to the interface 408 without encryption. However, the source MAC
15 address in the packet is translated to the MAC address of interface 408 (step 904). ICMP and IGMP Packets are not addressed to a destination host. Rather these packets are utilized by intermediate entities in the network, e.g., routers, for various functions. The source IP address is checked to make sure that it is the same as the entry burned into the SDB 412 for the connected host. This prevents
20 an adversary from posing as the connected host to gain access to secure communications. This is called preventing "IP spoofing" and is described in detail in U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/529,497. The discussion of preventing IP spoofing is incorporated herein by reference.

If the destination to which the packet is addressed is insecure, the packet
25 is dropped (step 906, 908). The device may be in a secured/unsecured mode (special order). In such case the packet will be sent unchanged.

Next, it is determined if the packet contains a part of a message that has been fragmented (step 910). If the packet contains a fragment, the fragments are collected (step 912) and the message is encrypted (step 914). The encryption
30 takes place using the common session key and an encipherment function. If the encrypted message is too long for the particular LAN (step 916), it is fragmented

(step 918). An encrypted packet is then transmitted to interface 408 for transmission into the network 100 (step 920).

An encrypted packet carries a signature in the protocol part of the IP header. This indicates that the packet is encrypted. The IP address of a packet is not encrypted, otherwise the packet could not be routed through the network.

The case where the packet arrives via the network at interface 408 is now considered. If the packet is an ICMP or IGMP packet (step 940) no decryption is necessary and the packet is sent to the first interface 402 (step 942). If the packet is a key exchange packet (step 944) the packet is processed according to the key exchange protocol (step 946). If the packet is not encrypted (step 948) the packet is dropped (step 950). The device may be in a secured/unsecured mode (special order). In such a case the packet will be sent to the client unchanged. If the packet is encrypted but the network security device does not have the key (step 952), the key exchange protocol is carried out (step 954) and the packet is dropped (step 956). If the key is available in the dynamic data base of the network security device, the packet is decrypted (step 958) and sent to interface 402 (step 960).

For packets received from the network the MAC address of the network security device is translated into the MAC address of the client. For packets received from the protected client, the MAC address of the client is translated into the MAC address of the network security device.

Outgoing Packets

As discussed above, the network security device 100 receives an IP-packet on the first interface 402, processes it, and sends it onto network 100 via the second interface 408.

FIG. 10 illustrates an IP packet 1010 (IP_{in}) received from host 404, an IP packet (IP_{out}) 1010 prepared by the network security device 400, and an encrypted IP_{out} packet 1030 transmitted by the second interface 408. As seen in FIG. 10, the IP_{in} packet 1000 includes a MAC header 1002, containing the host's 404 MAC address, an IP header 1004, containing the host's IP address, and a payload 1006 containing data. The IP_{out} packet 1010 includes a MAC header 1012 containing the network security device's MAC address, an IP header 1014 containing the

host's 404 IP address, a proprietary header 1016, a payload 1118 containing the data, and a proprietary tail 1020. Preferably, the data in the payload 1118 is compressed and the proprietary tail 1120 includes packet length, protocol fragment, and checksum information. The encrypted IP_{out} packet 1030 preferably
 5 has everything after the proprietary header 1016 encrypted, including the compressed data 1018 and the proprietary tail 1020.

FIG. 11 is a flowchart 1100 illustrating the processing of IP_{in} and IP_{out}.

- (a) Packet IP_{in} 1000 is received from the host 404 at the first interface 402 (step 1102).
- 10 (b) The IP and MAC headers are copied from IP_{in} to IP_{out} (step 1104).
- (c) The destination MAC address in IP_{in} is replaced by the client's MAC-address (step 1106).
- (d) Skip over the proprietary-header (step 1108).
- (e) Compress the data from IP_{in} to IP_{out} (step 1110). Preferably, the data
 15 is compressed using the LZRW1 compression algorithm.
- (f) Save original length, protocol, frag-info from IP_{in} into the proprietary tail (step 1112).
- (g) In the IP_{out} header, set do not frag = off, and set IP_{out}-protocol = 99 (indicating proprietary protocol) (step 1114).
- 20 (h) Calculate the checksum and save it in the proprietary tail 1120(step 1116).
- (i) Encrypt everything from after the proprietary header until the end of IP_{out} (step 1118).
- (j) Fill the proprietary-header in IP_{out}; set protocol = 191 (encrypted
 25 packet) and calculate the header-checksum (step 1120).

Incoming Packets

For incoming packets, steps (b)-(j) are performed in reverse order.

Double Integrity Checks

The method illustrated in FIG. 11 provides a double integrity check. The
 30 checksum in the proprietary-header on the sender's side is calculated after the encryption and checked on the receiver's side before decryption, thus providing an integrity test of the encrypted data in transit.

The checksum in the proprietary-tail on the sender's side is calculated before encryption and checked on the receiver's side after decryption. This checksum provides strong authentication because the static and dynamic keys used to encrypt the checksum are known only by the two communicating devices. (Strong authentication is where one can prove it knows a secret without revealing the secret.) By using a decrypted checksum that agrees with the packet proves the sender and receiver share the same key.

If the encrypted tail checksum is replaced with a secure hash function, such as the well-known MD5 algorithm, after the packet is encrypted, it becomes a digital signature. Where the tail checksum is encrypted with a static common key, it verifies that the dynamic public key originated from the sender, thus authenticating the sender. When the tail checksum is encrypted with a dynamic common key, it also verifies that the packet originated from the sender, authenticating that the packet originated from the sender.

15 Modifications for Use With LANS

Referring again to FIG. 4B, the network security device 400' may be modified to protect a LAN 450 instead of a single host. These modifications are described below. In this illustrative embodiment, the network security device may protect a Class-C LAN having up to 254 clients (i.e., workstations 454, server 452, etc.), but other LAN types, such as Class-A and Class-B, are also contemplated by the invention.

During activation, the IP address burned into the flash memory 412 is the Class-C post of the client LAN's IP address. A default MAC address, such as Oxf may also be burned into the flash memory 412. This default MAC address is used in the static key generation. Recall that the MAC address is used in the static key seed generation.

A LAN-type network security device 400' may build a MAC-table 460 which contains its clients' IP and MAC addresses. This table serves two functions. First, it prevents IP spoofing of any of the LAN device's 400' clients. Thus, if a packet is received on the first interface 402 that does not have an IP or MAC address of one of the nodes in the LAN, that packet is dropped.

Second, it facilitates the delivery of packets to clients connected to the LAN 450. This permits packets to be sent from one protected client to another without the packet appearing at the second interface 408.

5 In short, a unique network security device has been disclosed. Finally, the above described embodiments of the invention are intended to be illustrative only. Numerous alternative embodiments may be devised by those skilled in the art without departing from the scope of the following claims.

CLAIMS

I claim:

1. A network security device configured to protect at least one particular node, the node having a first physical layer address and an Internet address and which communicates via a network, comprising:
- 5
- a. a first interface connected to the at least one particular node and having said first physical layer address of the node;
- b. a second interface connected to the network and having a second physical layer address, and
- 10
- c. a processing circuit connected to said first and second interfaces, said processing circuit:
- (1) for a packet received at said first interface from said one particular node and the packet having a header containing a source address that is the Internet address of the at least one particular node and said first physical layer address of said one particular node, the circuit configured to:
- 15
- A. replace the first physical layer address contained in the received packet header with the second physical layer address;
- 20
- B. determine a checksum verifying the packet and saving the determined checksum in the packet; and
- C. encrypting the packet including the checksum, but leaving the Internet address unencrypted and its position in the packet header unchanged;
- 25
- (2) for a packet received at said second interface from said network and the packet having a header containing a destination address that is the Internet address of the at least one particular node and said second physical layer address of said second interface, the circuit configured to:
- 30
- A. decrypt the packet including a received checksum
- B. determine if the checksum verifies the packet; and

- 5 C. replace the second physical layer address contained in the received packet header with said first physical layer address of said at least one particular node before said packet is transmitted to the at least one particular node, and leaving the Internet address unencrypted and its position in the packet header unchanged.
- 10 2. The network security device of claim 1, wherein the processing circuit is further configured to:
- 15 a. for a packet received at the first interface:
- (1) determine a second checksum verifying the encrypted packet; and
- (2) save the second checksum in an unencrypted portion of the packet; and
- 20 b. for a packet received at the second interface:
- (1) determine if the second checksum verifies the encrypted packet.
- 25 3. A method for transmitting a packet into a network comprising the steps of:
- a. generating a packet having a header containing a first media access control (MAC) address, an IP address of a destination, and user data,
- b. in a network security device which does no routing and is connected to said network, translating said first MAC address into a second MAC address of said network security device,
- 30 c. determining a checksum for the packet and saving the checksum in the packet
- d. encrypting the user data and the checksum, but not the IP address and retaining as unchanged said IP address and its position in said header, and
- e. transmitting said packet into said network.

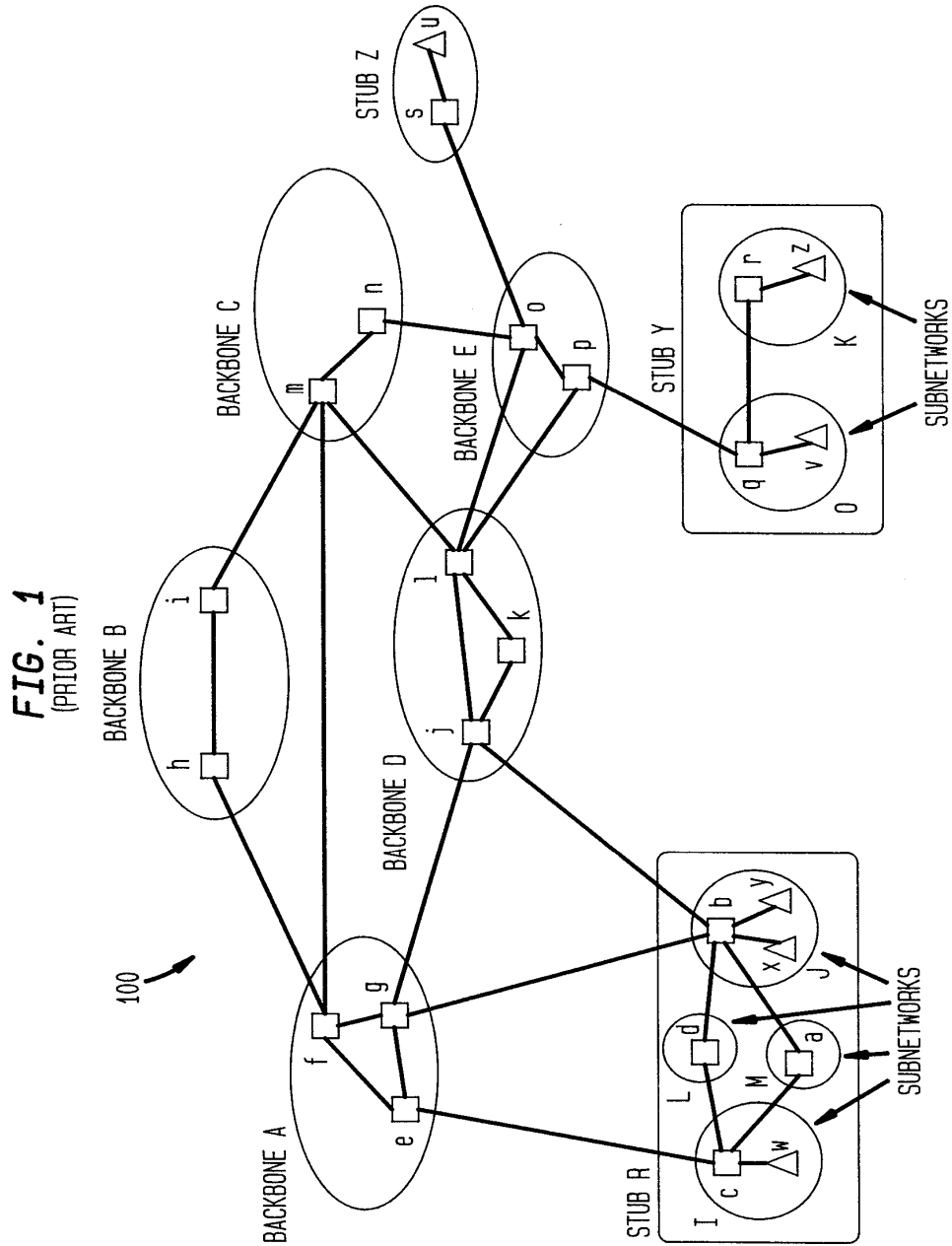
4. The method of claim 3, further comprising the steps of:
- a. determining a second checksum for the packet, including the encrypted user data and checksum;
 - b. saving the second checksum in an unencrypted portion of the packet.
- 5
5. A network security device connected between: (1) a node having an Internet address and (2) a communication network, the device comprising:
- (a) a first interface connected to at least one node, the first interface having a first media access control (MAC) address;
 - 10 (b) a second interface connected to the communication network and having a second MAC address;
 - (c) a processor connected to the first and second interfaces, the processor configured to:
 - 15 (1) receive a packet from the first interface, the packet having a transport layer header, a network layer header, and the first MAC address; the processor configured to:
 - A. replace the first MAC address with the second MAC address in the received packet,
 - 20 B. determine a first checksum verifying the received packet and save the first checksum in the packet;
 - C. encrypt the received transport layer header and the first checksum, and to not encrypt the received network layer header; and to transmit the packet to the second interface; and
 - 25 (2) receive a packet from the second interface, the packet having an encrypted transport layer header and second checksum, an unencrypted network layer header, and the second MAC address; the processor configured to:
 - 30 A. replace the second MAC address with the first MAC address in the received packet;
 - B. decrypt the packet including the transport layer header and the second checksum; and

C. to transmit the packet to the first interface.

6. A method for generating a secret key for a network security device configured to protect at least one host, the secret key being unique to that network security device, the method comprising the steps of:
- 5 a. deriving a seed based on at least one of an Internet protocol (IP) and physical layer address of the at least one host; and
- b. generating a random number based on the seed.
- 10 7. The method of claim 6, wherein the step of deriving the seed further comprises deriving the seed according to:
- $$\text{seed} = \text{IP} + \text{MAC}_l + \text{MAC}_h + \text{serial} + \text{time}$$
- where:
- IP = an IP address for the host;
- 15 MAC_l is a least significant portion of a physical layer address of the host;
- MAC_h is a most significant portion of host's physical layer address;
- serial is a serial number of the network security device; and
- time is a time the seed is derived.
- 20 8. The method of claim 6, wherein the step of generating a random number further comprises supplying the seed to a random number generator and using an output of the random number generator as the secret key.
9. A method for synchronizing a key exchange between a first network security device having a first dynamic key and a second network security device having a second dynamic key, said first and second dynamic keys having a predetermined lifespan and in which at least a first dynamic key of the first network security device may expire before being received by the second network security device, the method comprising:
- 25 a. including with the first dynamic key a time stamp indicating a time that the dynamic key was transmitted and a time that the dynamic key was generated;
- 30

- 5
- 10
- 15
- 20
- 25
- 30
- b. the second network security device receiving the first dynamic key, time stamp, and time the first dynamic key was generated;
 - c. maintaining in the second network security device a database containing the received time stamp and time the first dynamic key was generated; and
 - d. determining a difference between a time indicated in the received time stamp and a current time; and
 - e. correcting the time that the first dynamic key was generated by the determined difference.
10. A network security device configured to protect a local area network (LAN) having a plurality of nodes, each node having a physical layer address and an Internet address, the LAN being in communication with a second network, the network security device comprising:
- a. a first interface connected to the LAN;
 - b. a second interface connected to the second network and having a second physical layer address, and
 - c. a processing circuit connected to said first and second interfaces, said processing circuit including a table of physical layer and Internet addresses of each of the plurality of nodes in the LAN;
 - (1) for a packet received at said first interface from one of the plurality of nodes in the LAN and the packet having a header containing a source address that is the Internet address of the one of the plurality of nodes, a physical layer address of the one of the plurality of nodes, and a destination address, the circuit configured to:
 - A. determine if the destination address is an Internet address of another node in the LAN;
 - i. if so, transmit the packet to the destination node using the first interface;
 - ii. if not, then replace the first physical layer address contained in the received packet header with the

- second physical layer address; and encrypt the packet leaving the Internet address unencrypted and its position in the packet header unchanged;
- 5 (2) for a packet received at said second interface from said network and the packet having a header containing a destination address that is the Internet address of one of the plurality of nodes and said second physical layer address of said second interface, the circuit configured to:
- 10 A. decrypt the packet;
- B. replace the second physical layer address contained in the received packet header with said physical layer address of said one of the plurality of nodes before the packet is transmitted to the one of the plurality of particular nodes.
- 15
11. The network security device of claim 10, wherein when a packet is received on the first interface, the processing circuit is further configured to compare at least one of the physical layer address and the Internet address in the received packet with the physical layer and Internet addresses in the table to determine whether the packet originated from one of the plurality of nodes and, if not, dropping the packet.
- 20



100 ↗

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 2
(PRIOR ART)

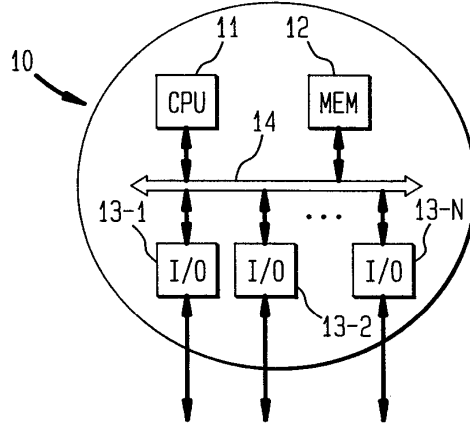


FIG. 3A
(PRIOR ART)

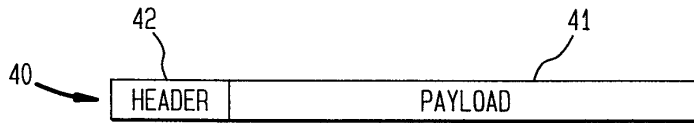
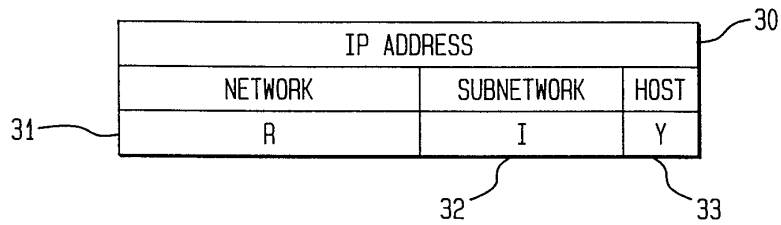


FIG. 3B
(PRIOR ART)



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

3/9

FIG. 4A

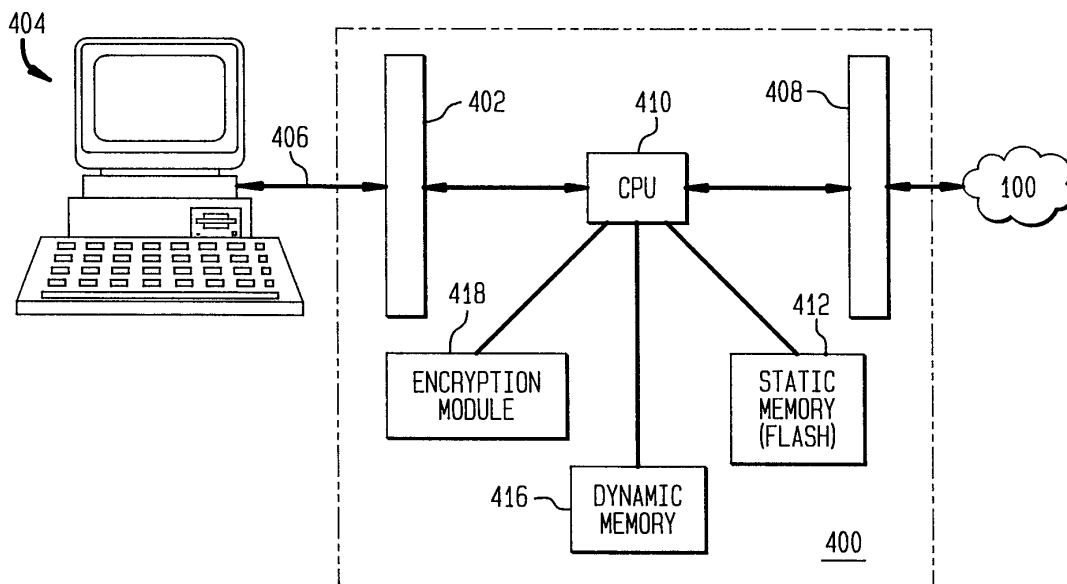
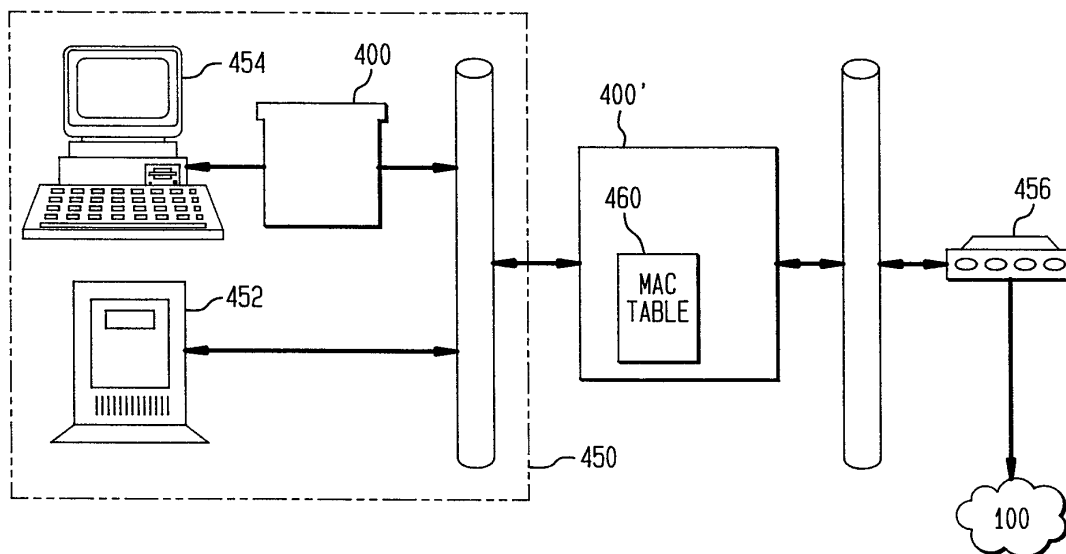


FIG. 4B



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 5

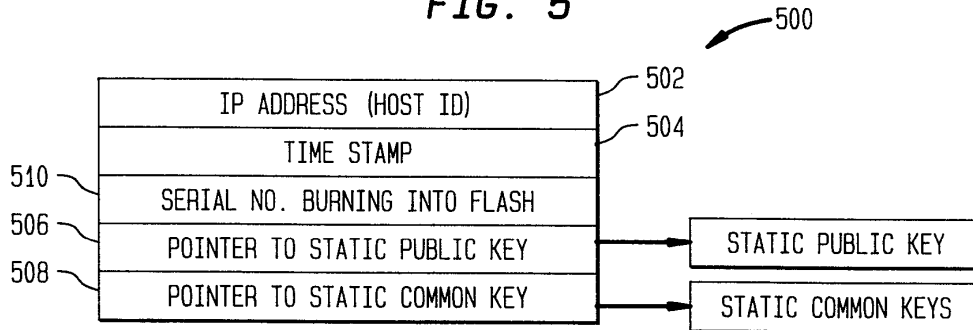


FIG. 6

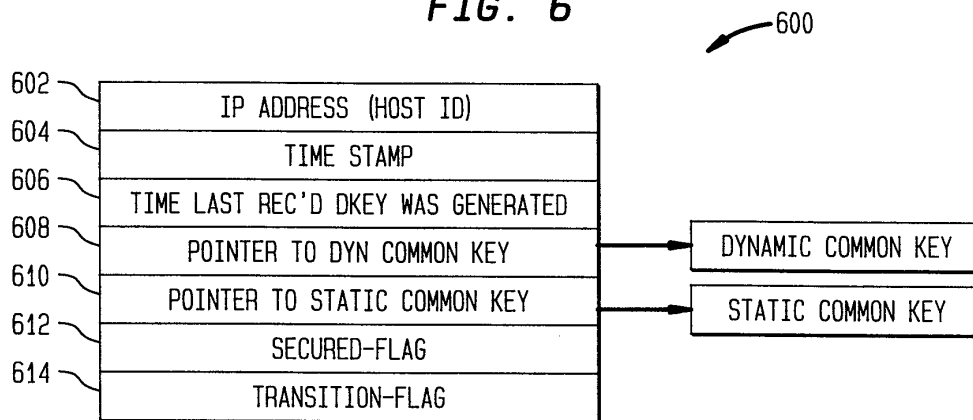
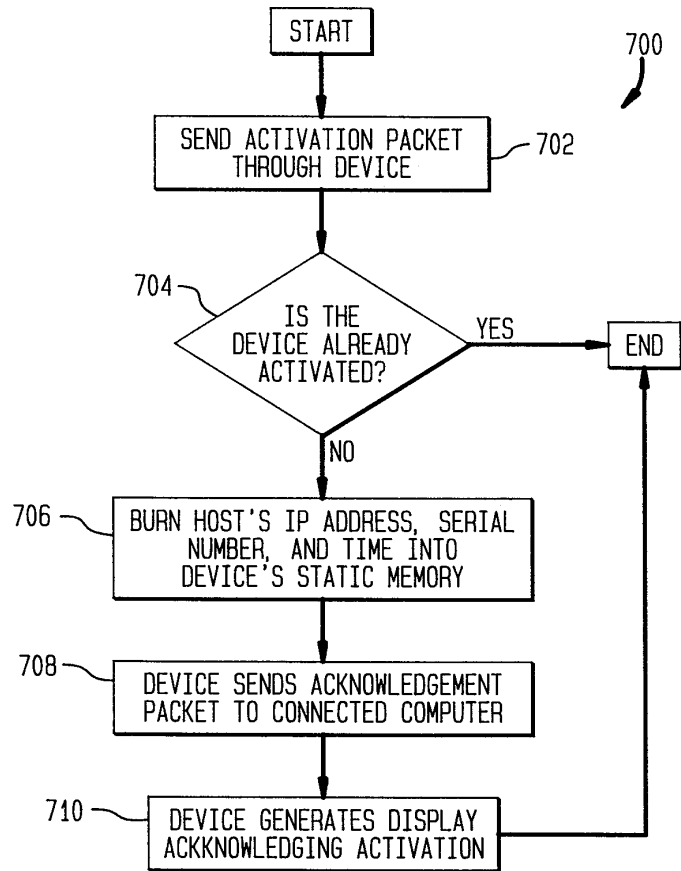
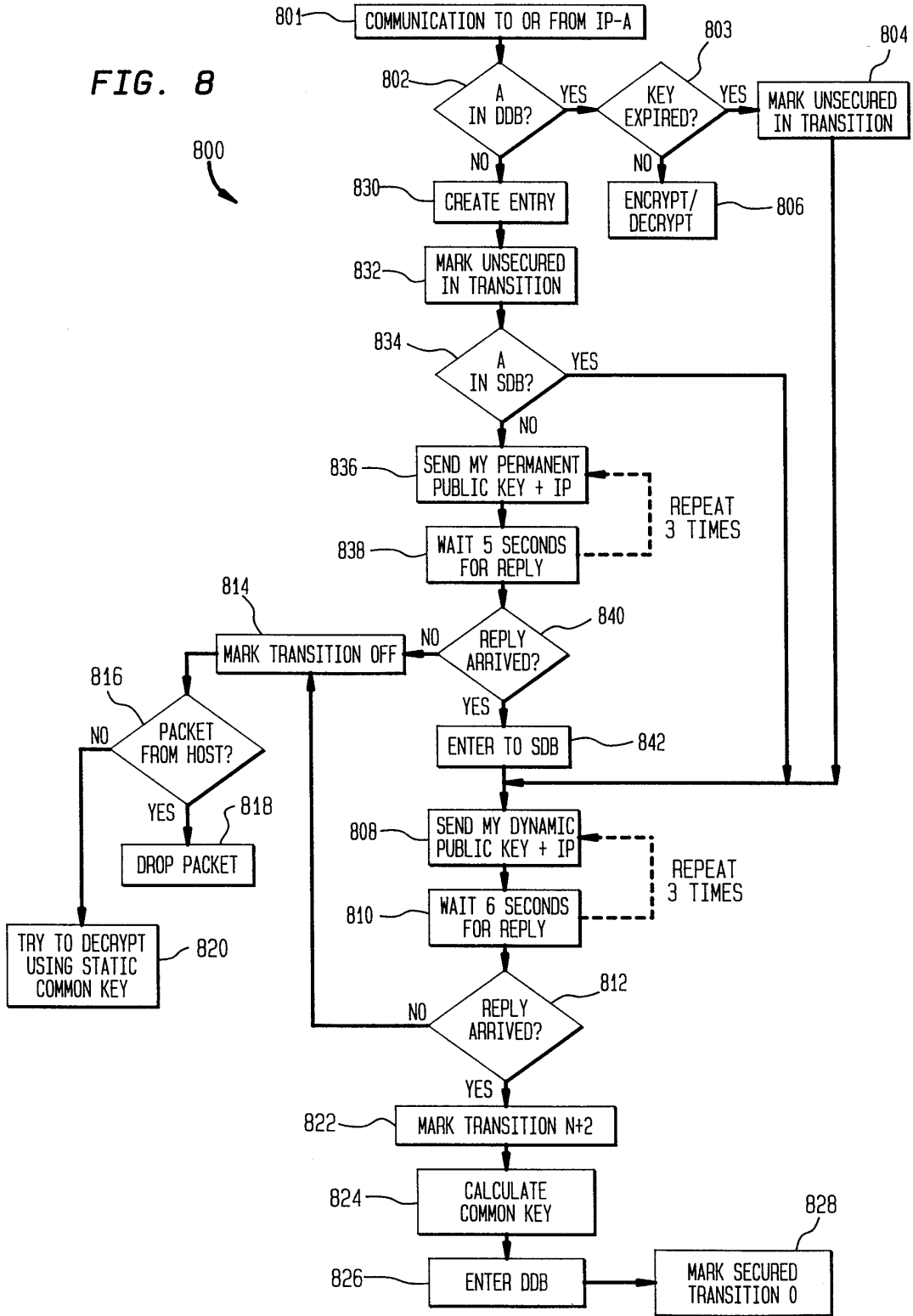


FIG. 7



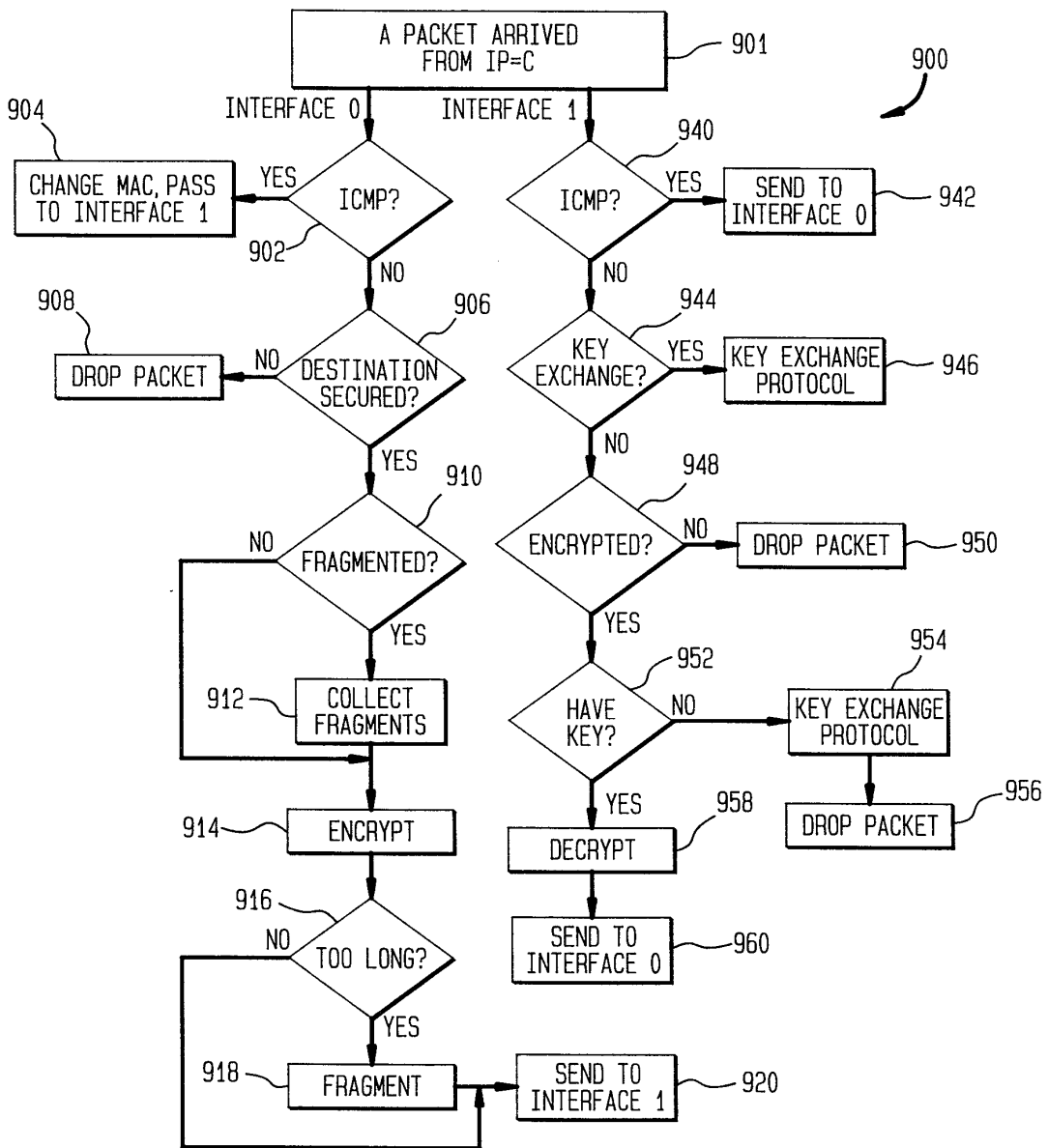
6/9

FIG. 8



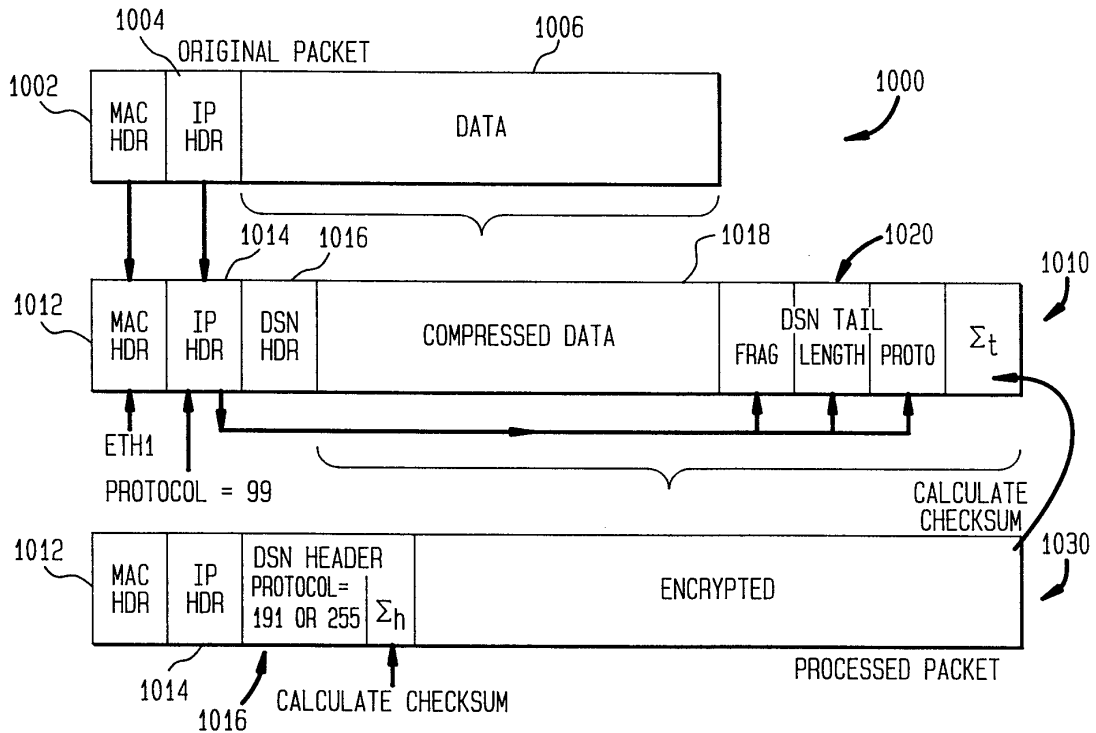
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 9



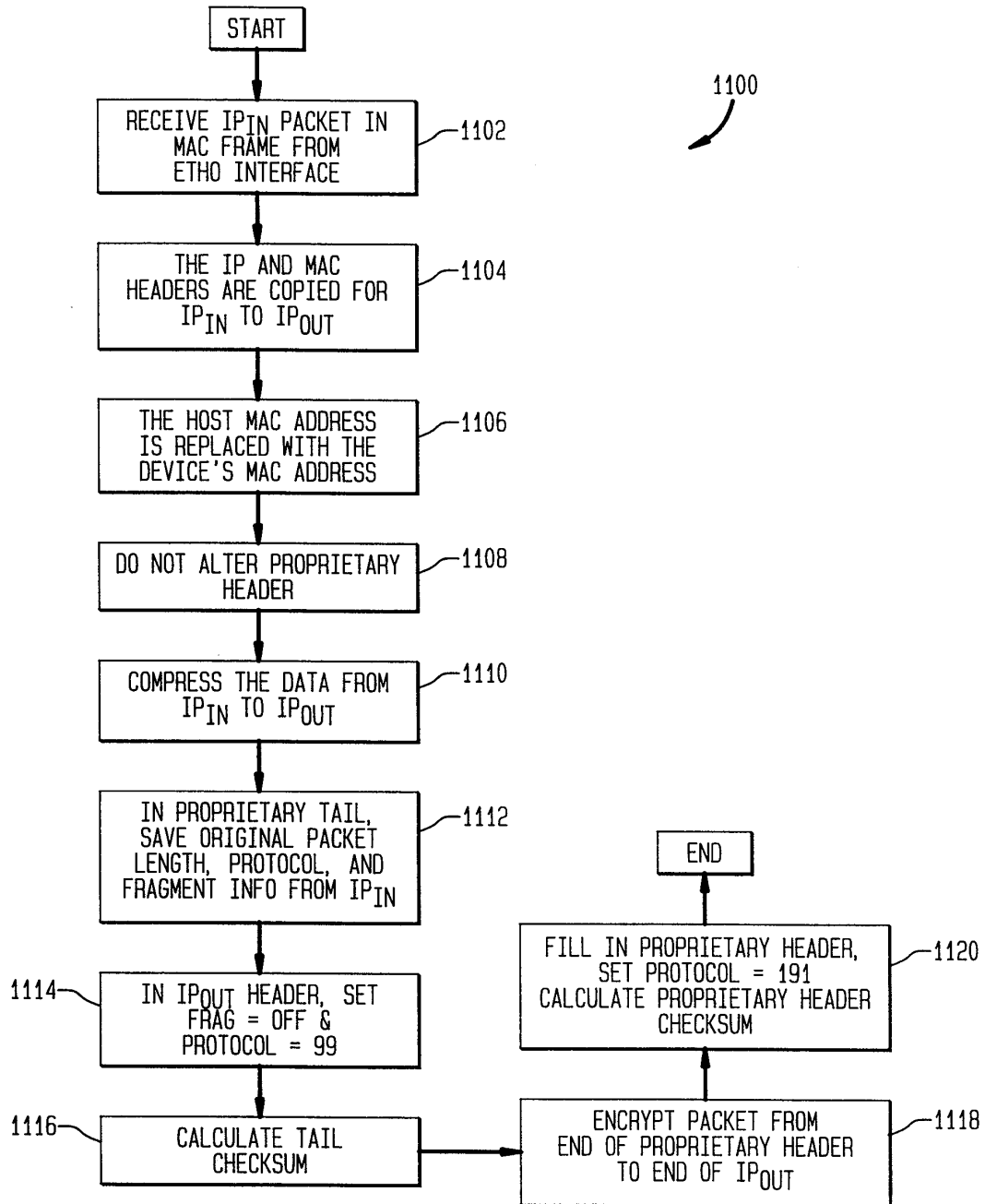
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 10



9/9

FIG. 11



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)



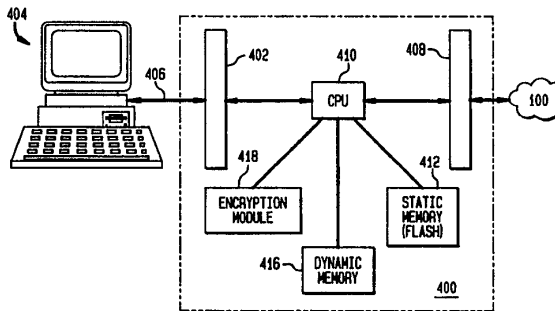
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : H04L 12/22, 12/56</p>	<p>A3</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/32065 (43) International Publication Date: 23 July 1998 (23.07.98)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/24201 (22) International Filing Date: 31 December 1997 (31.12.97) (30) Priority Data: 60/033,995 3 January 1997 (03.01.97) US (71) Applicant: FORTRESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. [US/US]; Suite 650, 2701 North Rocky Point Drive, Tampa, FL 33607 (US). (72) Inventors: FRIEDMAN, Aharon; Apartment 4208, 2717 Seville Boulevard, Clearwater, FL 34624 (US). BOZOKI, Eva; Apartment 2113, 6161 North Memorial Highway, Tampa, FL 33615 (US). (74) Agents: RUBENSTEIN, Kenneth et al.; Meltzer, Lippe, Goldstein, Wolf & Schlissel, P.C., 190 Willis Avenue, Mineola, NY 11501 (US).</p>	<p>(81) Designated States: AL, AU, BA, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KP, KR, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, SG, SI, SK, SL, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p>Published <i>With international search report.</i></p> <p>(88) Date of publication of the international search report: 22 October 1998 (22.10.98)</p>	

(54) Title: IMPROVED NETWORK SECURITY DEVICE

(57) Abstract

A network security device (400) is connected between a protected client (404) and a network(100). The network security device (400) negotiates a session key with an other protected client. Then, all communications between the two clients are encrypted. The inventive device is self-configuring and locks itself to the IP address of its client. Thus, the client cannot change its IP address once set and therefore cannot emulate the IP address of another client. While a packet is transmitted from the protected host, the security device translates the MAC address of the client to its own MAC address before transmitting the packet into the network. Packets addressed to the host contain the MAC address of the security device. The security device translates its MAC address to the client's MAC address before transmitting the packet to the client.



FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakistan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LJ	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/24201

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER				
IPC(6) :H04L 12/22, 12/56 US CL :380/49, 21, 46 According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC				
B. FIELDS SEARCHED				
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) U.S. : Please See Extra Sheet.				
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched				
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used) APS-search terms: physical address, checksum, internet address, encrypt?, mac address.				
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT				
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.		
E, A	US 5,757,924 A (FRIEDMAN et al) 26 May 1998 (26.05.98), col. 5, lines 4-44.	1-11		
A	US 5,371,868 A (KONING et al) 06 December 1994 (06.12.94), Figure 2b.	1-5, 10-11		
A	US 5,386,471 A (BIANCO) 31 January 1995 (31.01.95), col. 2, lines 51-68.	1-5, 10-11		
A	US 5,432,850 A (ROTHENBERG) 11 July 1995 (11.07.95), col. 3, lines 46-57.	6-8.		
A	US 5,550,984 A (GELB) 27 August 1996 (27.08.96), col. 4, lines 3-26.	1-5, 10-11		
A	US 5,351,295 A (PERLMAN et al) 27 September 1994 (27.09.94), col. 2, lines 49-58.	9		
<input type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.				
<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; border: none;"> * Special categories of cited documents: *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance *B* earlier document published on or after the international filing date *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed </td> <td style="width: 50%; border: none;"> *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art *&* document member of the same patent family </td> </tr> </table>			* Special categories of cited documents: *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance *B* earlier document published on or after the international filing date *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art *&* document member of the same patent family
* Special categories of cited documents: *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance *B* earlier document published on or after the international filing date *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art *&* document member of the same patent family			
Date of the actual completion of the international search 24 JUNE 1998		Date of mailing of the international search report 10 AUG 1998		
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230		Authorized officer <i>[Signature]</i> GILBERTO BARRÓN JR. Telephone No. (703) 305-1830		

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/24201

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched
Classification System: U.S.

380/49, 21, 46, 23, 48

370/389, 392, 469



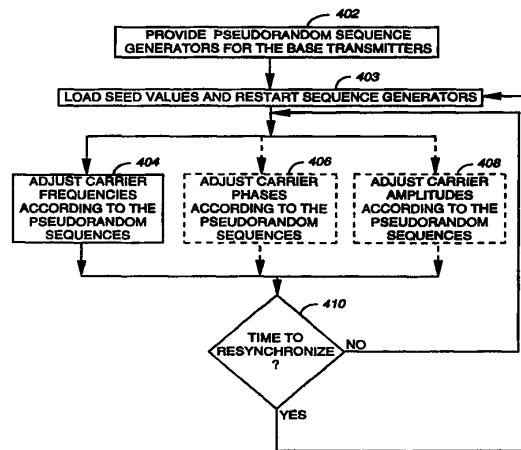
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification ⁶ : H04B 7/005, 7/01, 7/015, 15/00</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/22463 (43) International Publication Date: 6 May 1999 (06.05.99)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/22801 (22) International Filing Date: 27 October 1998 (27.10.98) (30) Priority Data: 08/959,409 28 October 1997 (28.10.97) US 09/079,535 15 May 1998 (15.05.98) US (71) Applicant: MOTOROLA INC. [US/US]; 1303 East Algonquin Road, Schaumburg, IL 60196 (US). (72) Inventors: GOLDBERG, Steven, Jeffrey; 4409 Foxfire Way, Fort Worth, TX 76133 (US). BUDNIK, Brian, Joseph; 6413 Old Mill Circle, Watauga, TX 76148 (US). SEXTON, Thomas, Aloysius; Apartment 224, 5333 Fossil Creek Boulevard, Fort Worth, TX 76137 (US). CARSELLO, Stephen, Rocco; 8204 Ranier Road, Fort Worth, TX 76137 (US). (74) Agents: BETHARDS, Charles, W. et al.; Motorola Inc., Intellectual Property Dept., 5401 North Beach Street/MS E230, Fort Worth, TX 76137 (US).</p>	<p>(81) Designated States: CA, CN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).</p> <p>Published <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	

(54) Title: LIMITING AN INTERVAL OF CARRIER CANCELLATION AND REDUCING ERRORS CAUSED BY INTERSYMBOL INTERFERENCE DURING A SIMULCAST TRANSMISSION

(57) Abstract

In a messaging system having a plurality of simulcasting base transmitters (104), a plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators (216) are provided (402) for the plurality of base transmitters. The plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators are arranged (403) to ensure that they generate a plurality of pseudorandom sequences having sub-sequences that are different from one another during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters. A cancellation-affecting parameter of the plurality of base transmitters is adjusted (404, 406, 408) in accordance with the plurality of pseudorandom sequences during the simulcast transmission from the plurality of base transmitters to limit intervals of carrier cancellation. In addition, a controller (512) controls (1106) at least two transmitters (702) to transmit at least two simulcast signals (902, 904) during a time period. The at least two simulcast signals produce intersymbol interference at a receiver. At least one of the transmitters changes (1108) its output amplitude during a portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference during the portion of the time period.



400

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

LIMITING AN INTERVAL OF CARRIER CANCELLATION AND REDUCING ERRORS CAUSED BY INTERSYMBOL INTERFERENCE DURING A SIMULCAST TRANSMISSION

5

Field of the Invention

This invention relates in general to radio communication systems, and more specifically to a method and apparatus in a messaging system
10 for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation and for reducing errors caused by intersymbol interference during a simulcast transmission.

Background of the Invention

15 Radio messaging systems have utilized simulcast transmissions from multiple transmitters for providing radio coverage to large geographic areas. During a simulcast transmission a receiver positioned midway between two transmitters often can receive signals from both transmitters. The resultant instantaneous sum of the two signals
20 depends upon their relative phase, and can be either larger or smaller than either signal alone. For example, if the two signals are substantially equal in amplitude and phase at the receiver, their resultant sum will be about twice the amplitude of either signal alone. If, however, the two signals are substantially equal in amplitude and 180 degrees out of phase,
25 their resultant sum can be so small as to be undetectable by the receiver, due to destructive cancellation of the two signals.

Modern messaging systems utilize forward error correcting codes and bit interleaving to allow messages to be transmitted successfully in the presence of brief fades and noise bursts. Thus, an error-free message
30 can be received even in the presence of intervals of destructive cancellation, provided that the intervals of destructive cancellation are sufficiently brief. To ensure that the intervals of destructive cancellation are sufficiently brief, the prior art messaging systems have employed a technique of permanently offsetting the carrier frequencies of adjacent
35 transmitters with respect to one another by a small, fixed amount, e.g., 15 to 100 Hz.

A problem with the technique of permanently offsetting the carrier frequencies of adjacent transmitters is that it requires additional system

planning and effort in setting up the radio messaging system.

Furthermore, the technique can cause difficulties when adding new transmitters to an existing system, because the frequency offsets of many of the existing transmitters may have to be readjusted. In addition, some
5 specific frequency offsets between adjacent transmitters, e.g., 200 Hz, are known to cause a higher word error rate, and should be avoided.

Good simulcast transmission has always required some form of delay equalization or launch time synchronization to ensure that the transmissions from different transmitters begin at the same time. For
10 low speed data, having the transmissions begin at the same time has usually been sufficient. For the high speed data which is becoming more prevalent today, having the transmissions begin at the same time is necessary, but not sufficient. The reason is that differential transmission delay introduced in the air links can become a significant fraction of the
15 symbol period when the symbol rate is high. When differential transmission delay becomes a significant fraction of the symbol period, intersymbol interference can occur when two or more simulcast signals arrive at the receiver with similar amplitudes. Such intersymbol interference can cause a high error rate in the received signal.

Thus, what is needed is a method and apparatus for limiting the
20 intervals of destructive cancellation during simulcast transmissions. The method and apparatus preferably will limit the intervals of destructive cancellation without utilizing the prior art technique of permanently offsetting the carrier frequencies of adjacent transmitters with respect to
25 one another.

What is further needed is a method and apparatus that can reduce errors caused by intersymbol interference during a simulcast transmission when two or more simulcast signals are received at similar amplitudes with different transmission delays. The method and
30 apparatus preferably will operate without requiring a custom tuning adjustment during installation and system setup.

Summary of the Invention

35 An aspect of the present invention is a method in a messaging system having a plurality of base transmitters, the method for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation at a reception point during a simulcast

transmission. The method comprises the step of providing a plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators for the plurality of base transmitters, the plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators arranged to ensure that they generate a plurality of pseudorandom sequences having sub-sequences that are different from one another during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters. The method further comprises the step of adjusting a cancellation-affecting parameter of the plurality of base transmitters in accordance with the plurality of pseudorandom sequences during the simulcast transmission from the plurality of base transmitters.

Another aspect of the present invention is a base transmitter in a messaging system having a plurality of base transmitters, the base transmitter for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation at a reception point during a simulcast transmission. The base transmitter comprises a transmitter element for transmitting a message, and a processing system coupled to the transmitter element for controlling the transmitter element to transmit the message. The base transmitter further comprises an input interface coupled to the processing system for receiving the message; and a pseudorandom sequence generator coupled to the transmitter element, the pseudorandom sequence generator arranged to ensure that it generates a pseudorandom sequence having sub-sequences that are different from those generated in other ones of the plurality of base transmitters during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters. The transmitter element is arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator adjusts a cancellation-affecting parameter of the transmitter element in accordance with the pseudorandom sequence during the simulcast transmission from the base transmitter.

A third aspect of the present invention is a method in a messaging system having a plurality of base transmitters, the method for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation at a reception point during a simulcast transmission. The method comprises the step of providing a plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators for the plurality of base transmitters, the plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators arranged to generate a plurality of pseudorandom sequences having sub-sequences that have more than a predetermined probability of being different from one another during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base

transmitters. A parameter of the plurality of pseudorandom sequences is optimized according to a characteristic of a communication protocol utilized by the messaging system. The method further comprises the step of adjusting a cancellation-affecting parameter of the plurality of base
5 transmitters in accordance with the plurality of pseudorandom sequences during the simulcast transmission from the plurality of base transmitters.

A fourth aspect of the present invention is a method in a wireless communication system for reducing errors caused by intersymbol interference in at least two simulcast signals transmitted during a time
10 period. The at least two simulcast signals are received at similar amplitudes and have different transmission delays with respect to one another. The method comprises the steps of transmitting the at least two simulcast signals from a corresponding at least two transmitters, and changing an output amplitude of at least one of the at least two
15 transmitters during a portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference during the portion of the time period.

A fifth aspect of the present invention is a transmitter in a wireless communication system for reducing errors caused by intersymbol interference in at least two simulcast signals transmitted during a time
20 period. The at least two simulcast signals are received by a receiver at similar amplitudes and have different transmission delays with respect to one another. The transmitter comprises a transmitter element for transmitting a first simulcast signal sent simultaneously with at least a second simulcast signal from another transmitter, and a modulator
25 coupled to the transmitter element for changing an output amplitude of the transmitter during a portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference at the receiver during the portion of the time period.

A sixth aspect of the present invention is a controller in a wireless
30 communication system for reducing errors caused by intersymbol interference in at least two simulcast signals transmitted during a time period. The at least two simulcast signals are received at similar amplitudes and have different transmission delays with respect to one another. The controller comprises a network interface for receiving a
35 message from a message originator, and a processing system coupled to the network interface for processing the message. The controller further comprises a base station interface coupled to the processing system for

controlling a transmitter to transmit one of the at least two simulcast signals. The processing system is programmed to control the transmitter to change an output amplitude of the transmitter during a portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference during the
5 portion of the time period.

Brief Description of the Drawings

FIG. 1 is an electrical block diagram of a messaging system in
10 accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 2 is an electrical block diagram of an exemplary implementation of a base transmitter in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 3 is a diagram depicting amplitude and relative phase of two carriers offset in frequency in accordance with the present invention.

15 FIG. 4 is a flow chart depicting operation of the messaging system in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 5 is an electrical block diagram of an exemplary wireless communication system in accordance with the present invention.

20 FIG. 6 is an electrical block diagram of an exemplary controller in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 7 is an electrical block diagram of an exemplary base station in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 8 is a timing diagram depicting intersymbol interference in a prior art wireless communication system.

25 FIG. 9 is a timing diagram depicting reduced intersymbol interference in the wireless communication system in accordance with the present invention.

FIG. 10 is an exemplary protocol diagram in accordance with the present invention.

30 FIG. 11 is a flow diagram depicting operation of the exemplary wireless communication system in accordance with the present invention.

Detailed Description of the Drawings

35 Referring to FIG. 1, an electrical block diagram of a messaging system in accordance with the present invention comprises a plurality of

subscriber units 102, which communicate by radio with a fixed portion of the radio system, comprising a plurality of base transmitters 104 and a plurality of controllers 110. The base transmitters 104 are coupled via communication links 106 to the plurality of controllers 110 for control by
5 and communication with the plurality of controllers 110 utilizing well-known techniques. The controllers 110 are coupled to a home controller 120 via communication links 122, 124, and via a conventional communication network 108 for receiving selective call messages from the home controller 120. The home controller 120 and the controllers 110
10 preferably communicate by utilizing a well-known protocol, e.g., the Telocator Network Paging Protocol (TNPP), the Wireless Messaging transfer protocol (WMtp™), or the InterPaging Networking Protocol (IPNP). It will be appreciated that, alternatively, the home controller 120 and the controller 110 can be collocated. The home controller 120 is
15 preferably coupled via telephone links 126 to a public switched telephone network 112 (PSTN) for receiving the messages from message originators utilizing, for example, a telephone 114 or a personal computer 116 to originate the messages. It will be appreciated that, alternatively, other types of communication networks, e.g., packet switched networks, local
20 area networks, and the Internet can be utilized as well for transporting originated messages to the home controller 120. The hardware of the home controller 120 is preferably similar to the Wireless Messaging Gateway (WMG™) Administrator! paging terminal, while the hardware of the controllers 110 is preferably similar to that of the RF-Conductor!™
25 message distributor, both manufactured by Motorola, Inc. of Schaumburg, IL. The hardware of the base transmitters 104 is preferably similar to that of the Nucleus® and RF-Orchestra!® transmitters manufactured by Motorola, Inc. It will be appreciated that other similar hardware can be utilized as well for the home controller 120, the controllers 110, and the
30 base transmitters 104. It will be further appreciated that the present invention can be applied to both one-way and two-way selective call messaging systems.

The protocol utilized for transmitting the messages between the base transmitters 104 and the subscriber units 102 is preferably similar to Motorola's
35 well-known FLEX™ family of digital selective call signaling protocols. These protocols utilize well-known error detection and error correction techniques and are therefore tolerant to bit errors occurring during transmission,

provided that the bit errors are not too numerous in any one code word. It will be appreciated that other similar messaging protocols can be used as well.

Referring to FIG. 2, an electrical block diagram depicts an exemplary implementation of the base transmitter 104 in accordance with the present invention. The base transmitter 104 comprises an antenna 204 for emitting a radio signal comprising a message. The base transmitter 104 further comprises a conventional transmitter element 208 coupled to the antenna 204 for transmitting the message, and a processing system 206 coupled to the transmitter element 208 for controlling the transmitter element 208 to transmit the message. The processing system is further coupled to a conventional pseudorandom sequence generator 216, which is also coupled to the transmitter element 208. The pseudorandom sequence generator 216 is arranged to ensure that it generates a pseudorandom sequence having sub-sequences that are different from those generated in other ones of the plurality of base transmitters during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters, as described further below. Preferably, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 is further arranged to provide a pseudorandom sequence identical to that of other base transmitters of the plurality of base transmitters, but initialized, concurrently with the other base transmitters, with a seed value different from that of the other base transmitters. It will be appreciated that, alternatively, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 can be arranged to provide a pseudorandom sequence that is different from that of other base transmitters 104 of the plurality of base transmitters by, for example, enabling different feedback taps on the pseudorandom sequence generators 216 associated with different base transmitters 104. In addition, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 preferably has at least a predetermined minimum number of stages, e.g., 20 stages. This preference facilitates allowing the base transmitters 104 to be concurrently initialized with different seed values 226 derived, for example, from the serial number of the base transmitters 104. It also will be appreciated that, alternatively, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 can be incorporated into the processing system 206, where its functions can be performed in software.

The transmitter element 208 is arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 adjusts a cancellation-affecting parameter of the transmitter element 208 in accordance with the

pseudorandom sequence during a simulcast transmission from the base transmitter 104. More specifically, the transmitter element 208 preferably includes a conventional frequency modulator (not shown) coupled to the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 such that the pseudorandom
5 sequence generator 216 adjusts the carrier frequency of the base transmitter 104 in accordance with the pseudorandom sequence. In the simplest case, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 cooperates with the transmitter element 208 to adjust the carrier frequency of the base transmitter 104 to one of two levels, e.g., ± 50 Hz, about a predetermined
10 nominal carrier frequency. It will be appreciated that, alternatively, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 and the transmitter element 208 can be arranged to adjust the carrier frequency to one of N predetermined levels in accordance with the pseudorandom sequence, N being an integer greater than unity. It will be further appreciated that,
15 alternatively, the transmitter element 208 can be arranged such that another cancellation-affecting parameter of the base transmitter 104, e.g., the carrier phase or the carrier amplitude, is adjusted in accordance with the pseudorandom sequence, through well-known techniques. It also will be appreciated that, alternatively, the transmitter element 208 can be
20 arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 adjusts at least two cancellation-affecting parameters selected from a group of cancellation-affecting parameters consisting of the carrier frequency, the carrier phase, and the carrier amplitude. In addition, it will be appreciated that the pseudorandom sequence may have to be filtered to
25 prevent instantaneous shifts of the cancellation-affecting parameter(s).

Preferably, the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 is further arranged to optimize a parameter of the plurality of pseudorandom sequences according to a characteristic of the communication protocol utilized by the messaging system, such that the intervals of destructive
30 cancellation will exist only long enough to potentially destroy, i.e., change the value of, less than a predetermined number of bits, e.g., two bits, of a given (interleaved) code word, which will fall within the error correction capability of the protocol. This essentially moves the bit errors around, distributing them randomly such that the forward error correction is very
35 likely to correct all the errors caused by the intervals of destructive cancellation.

For example, consider the FLEX protocol, which uses (32,21) BCH code words interleaved such that there are 5 ms intervals between bits corresponding to the same code word. Each block of interleaved code words lasts 160 ms. Consider the case of no dithering and no frequency offsets and a 1 Hz frequency error between two adjacent FM transmitters. The interval of destructive cancellation may last on the order of 100 ms, which will destroy most code word bits (exceeding the forward error correction capability) in 1 or 2 interleaved blocks of the transmission, yet leaving another 4 or 5 interleaved blocks error free. In this condition little benefit is derived from the forward error correction. Now consider the use of pseudorandom frequency dithering in accordance with the present invention, e.g., ± 50 Hz about a nominal frequency, with the duration of each dither set to 7.5 ms, for example. An interval of destructive cancellation lasting 7.5 ms and repeating no more frequently than every 160 ms will destroy, on average, 3/4 bit from each code word. If a random phase difference between two signals generates an interval of destructive cancellation with a probability of 0.1 (as derived further below), then, on average, a destructive phase condition will occur 1.6 times per code word in each block, advantageously allowing a greatly increased benefit from forward error correction coding.

Again referring to FIG. 2, the processing system 206 is further coupled to a conventional clock 202 for generating a timing signal for the base transmitter 104. The accuracy of the timing signal preferably is sufficient to maintain synchronization of the pseudorandom sequence generator 216 within a small time tolerance, e.g., 100 microseconds, between resynchronizations of the pseudorandom sequence generator 216. It will be appreciated that, alternatively, the timing signal can be derived from a Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) receiver. The processing system 206 is also coupled to a conventional input interface 214 for receiving the message via the communication link 106.

The processing system 206 comprises a conventional processor 210 and a conventional memory 212. The memory 212 includes locations for storing messages 222 received through the input interface 214 and, preferably, a pseudorandom sequence seed value 226 derived, for example, from a serial number uniquely assigned by the factory to the base transmitter 104. The memory 212 also includes software elements

for message processing 224 and pseudorandom sequence synchronization 228 in accordance with the present invention.

Referring to FIG. 3, a diagram 300 depicting amplitude (represented by length) and relative phase (θ) of two carriers A1, A2 offset in frequency in accordance with the present invention and received by a receiver at a reception point between two of the base transmitters 104. Assume, for example, that the frequency of the carrier A2 is higher than that of the carrier A1. The result is that the phase of A2 is changing faster with time than that of A1. Periodically, the relative phase θ at the receiver is such that A2 enters the shaded area defined as the zone of destructive cancellation 302. The zone of destructive cancellation 302 preferably is defined, by way of example, to correspond to

$$0.9\pi < \theta < 1.1\pi.$$

As θ traverses 2π for each full revolution, one can conclude that for a fixed, nonzero frequency difference between A1 and A2 the probability that A2 is in the zone of destructive cancellation 302 at a randomly chosen instant of time is $P = 0.1$. For a pseudorandomly varied frequency difference between A1 and A2 in accordance with the present invention the probability that A2 is in the zone of destructive cancellation 302 at a randomly chosen instant of time is also $P = 0.1$.

The instantaneous power at the receiver is

$$P(t) = (A1 + A2\cos(\theta))^2 + (A2\sin(\theta))^2.$$

If $A1 = A2 = 1$, the average power is 2.0. At 0.9π and 1.1π the instantaneous power is approximately 0.1. Thus, within the defined zone of destructive cancellation 302 the instantaneous power is approximately 13 dB or more below the average power. While there is no way to prevent the two carriers A1 and A2 from entering the zone of destructive cancellation 302, it is highly desirable to minimize their stay in the zone, as is advantageously accomplished in accordance with the present invention, as described further below. It will be appreciated that, alternatively, other exemplary ranges of θ can be utilized to define the zone of destructive cancellation 302.

FIG. 4 is a flow chart 400 depicting operation of the messaging system in accordance with the present invention. The flow chart 400 begins with providing 402 the pseudorandom sequence generators 216 for the base transmitters 104. After the messaging system is powered up, the processing systems 206 access the seed values 226 corresponding to each of the base transmitters 104. The processing systems 206 then load 403 the seed values 226 and simultaneously restart the pseudorandom sequence generators 216. The restarting of the pseudorandom sequence generators 216 is preferably synchronized by the communication protocol to recur, for example, at the top of each hour. Concurrently restarting the pseudorandom sequence generators 216 periodically in this manner with different seed values 226 advantageously allows identical-sequence pseudorandom sequence generators 216 to be utilized for the base stations, while ensuring that the pseudorandom sequences contain subsequences that are different from one another during concurrent transmissions by the base transmitters 104 (due to the sequences being offset from one another by the different seed values 226). It will be appreciated that, alternatively, the pseudorandom sequence generators 216 can comprise different-sequence pseudorandom sequence generators to ensure that the pseudorandom sequences generated thereby are different from one base transmitter 104 to the next.

Next, the processing systems 206 preferably begin adjusting the carrier frequencies 404 of the corresponding transmitter elements 208 according to the pseudorandom sequences. Alternatively, the processing systems 206 can adjust another cancellation-affecting parameter, such as the carrier phases 406 and/or the carrier amplitudes 408 in addition to, or in lieu of, adjusting the carrier frequencies. For the case of frequency or phase adjustment, the processing systems 206 preferably are programmed to ensure a uniformly distributed phase between 0 and 2π . The processing systems 206 also check 410 whether it is time to resynchronize the pseudorandom sequence generators 216. If so, the flow returns to step 403. If not, the flow returns to the appropriate ones of the adjusting steps 404, 406 and 408.

Simulations in accordance with the present invention have demonstrated that by continuously adjusting a cancellation-affecting parameter of the base stations in accordance with the present invention, the intervals of destructive carrier cancellation advantageously are

limited in length and are randomly dispersed throughout the interleaved transmission blocks of the communication protocol, thereby substantially reducing the word error rate. The simulations have further demonstrated that no other carrier frequency offsetting technique is needed to meet performance objectives. In addition, by randomizing the starting points of the pseudorandom sequences through the use of seed values derived from a random number source, which can include the base station serial numbers, no additional system planning effort is required for adjusting the base stations relative to one another to limit carrier cancellation.

FIG. 5 is an electrical block diagram of an exemplary wireless communication system in accordance with the present invention, comprising a fixed portion 502 including a controller 512 and a plurality of base stations 516, the wireless communication system also including a plurality of receivers 522. The base stations 516 preferably communicate with the receivers 522 utilizing conventional radio frequency (RF) signals for sending simulcast transmissions in accordance with the present invention, as will be explained further below. The base stations 516 are coupled by communication links 514 to the controller 512, which controls the base stations 516.

The hardware of the controller 512 is preferably a combination of the Wireless Messaging Gateway (WMG™) Administrator! paging terminal, and the RF-Conductor!™ message distributor manufactured by Motorola, Inc., and includes software modified in accordance with the present invention. The base stations 516 comprise a transmitter preferably similar to the RF-Orchestra! transmitter, modified in accordance with the present invention, and can include, in two-way wireless communication systems, the RF-Audience!™ receiver manufactured by Motorola, Inc. The receivers 522 are preferably similar to the Advisor Gold™ and Pagefinder™ wireless communication units, also manufactured by Motorola, Inc. It will be appreciated that other similar hardware can be utilized as well for the controller 512, the base stations 516, and the receivers 522.

Each of the base stations 516 transmits RF signals to the receivers 522 via an antenna 518. The RF signals transmitted by the base stations 516 to the receivers 522 (outbound messages) comprise selective call addresses identifying the receivers 522, and voice and data messages originated by a caller, as well as commands originated by the controller 512 for adjusting operating parameters of the radio communication system.

The controller 512 preferably is coupled by telephone links 501 to a public switched telephone network (PSTN) 510 for receiving selective call message originations therefrom. Selective call originations comprising voice and data messages from the PSTN 510 can be generated, for example, from a
5 conventional telephone 511 or a conventional computer 517 coupled to the PSTN 510. It will be appreciated that, alternatively, other types of communication networks, e.g., packet switched networks, the Internet, and local area networks, can be utilized as well for transporting originated messages to the controller 512.

10 The over-the-air protocol utilized for the transmissions is preferably selected from Motorola's well-known FLEX™ family of digital selective call signaling protocols. These protocols utilize well-known error detection and error correction techniques and are therefore tolerant to bit errors occurring during transmission, provided that the bit errors are not too numerous. It
15 will be appreciated that other suitable protocols can be used as well. It will be further appreciated that, while one embodiment for practicing the present invention is a one-way wireless communication system, the present invention is applicable also to a two-way wireless communication system.

FIG. 6 is an electrical block diagram depicting an exemplary
20 controller 512 in accordance with the present invention. The controller 512 comprises a network interface 618 for receiving a message from a message originator via the telephone links 501. The network interface 618 is coupled to a processing system 610 for controlling and communicating with the network interface 618. The processing system is
25 coupled to a base station interface 604 for controlling and communicating with the base stations 516 via the communication links 514. The processing system 610 is also coupled to a conventional clock 630 for providing a timing signal to the processing system 610. The processing system 610 comprises a conventional computer 612 and a conventional
30 mass medium 614, e.g., a magnetic disk drive, programmed with information and operating software in accordance with the present invention. The mass medium 614 comprises a subscriber database 620, including information about the receivers 522 controlled by the controller 512. The mass medium 614 also includes a message processing element
35 622 for programming the processing system 610 to process messages for the receivers 522 in a conventional manner. In accordance with the present invention, the mass medium 614 also includes a transmitter

output amplitude control element 624 for programming the processing system to control the transmitter 702 (FIG. 7) of the base stations 516 to change an output amplitude of the transmitter 702 during a portion of a time period during which simulcast transmissions are sent, thereby
5 altering the intersymbol interference during the portion of the time period.

FIG. 7 is an electrical block diagram of an exemplary base station 516 in accordance with the present invention. The base station 516 comprises the antenna 518 for radiating a signal comprising a message. The antenna
10 518 is coupled to a transmitter 702 for transmitting the message. The transmitter 702 preferably comprises a conventional frequency shift keyed (FSK) transmitter element 708 for transmitting a first simulcast signal sent simultaneously with at least a second simulcast signal from another transmitter 702 (as coordinated by the controller 512 through well-known
15 techniques). It will be appreciated that, alternatively, other types of transmitter elements for demodulating other types of modulated signals can be utilized as well for the transmitter element 708. The transmitter 702 further comprises a conventional amplitude modulator 703 coupled to the transmitter element 708 for changing an output amplitude of the
20 transmitter 702 during a portion of the time period of the first simulcast signal, thereby altering the intersymbol interference at the receiver during the portion of the time period. The transmitter 702 is coupled to a processing system 706 for processing the message and for controlling the transmitter 702 in accordance with the present invention. A
25 conventional controller interface 714 preferably is also coupled to the processing system 706 for interfacing with the controller 512 via the communication link 514 through well-known techniques. In addition, a conventional clock 707 is coupled to the processing system 706 for providing a timing signal thereto.

The processing system 706 comprises a conventional processor 710
30 and a conventional memory 712. The memory 712 comprises software elements and other variables for programming the processing system 706 in accordance with the present invention. The memory 712 includes a transmitter control element 722 for controlling the transmitter 702
35 through well-known techniques. In addition, the memory 712 includes a message processing element 724 for programming the processing system 706 to process the message in a conventional manner. The memory 712

further comprises a transmitter output amplitude control element 726 for cooperating with the modulator 703 to control the output amplitude of the transmitter 702 in accordance with the present invention, as described further below.

5 FIG. 8 is an exemplary timing diagram 800 depicting intersymbol interference in a prior art wireless communication system. The diagram 800 depicts amplitude versus time of a first signal 802 from a first simulcast transmitter and a second signal 804 from a second simulcast transmitter, the second signal 804 identical to, but delayed with respect to,
10 the first signal 802. When the first and second signals 802, 804 are received by a receiver at nearly the same amplitudes, e.g., less than 4 dB of difference, the received signal 806 can comprise indeterminant areas 808 where the received bit cannot be decoded. When the indeterminant areas 808 occupy more than about 50% of the symbol period (corresponding to a
15 differential delay of 25% of the symbol period), receiver sensitivity begins to be reduced slightly. When the indeterminant areas increase to 100% of the symbol period (corresponding to a differential delay of 50% of the symbol period), receiver sensitivity is reduced to zero.

 FIG. 9 is an exemplary timing diagram 900 depicting reduced intersymbol interference in the wireless communication system in
20 accordance with the present invention. The diagram 900 depicts amplitude versus time of a first signal 902 and a second signal 904. A "nominal" value of the amplitude of the first and second signals is represented by the dashed lines 910. Note that during a portion of the
25 time period of the first and second signals 902, 904, the amplitude is changed above and/or below the nominal value, preferably by adjusting the output amplitude of the transmitter 702 by the modulator 703 under control of the processing system 706, in accordance with the present invention. When the nominal values of the first and second signals 902,
30 904 would be received by a receiver at nearly the same amplitudes, the advantageous effect of changing the output amplitudes of the first and second signals 902, 904 is demonstrated by the decoded signal 906. Note that the indeterminant areas 908 advantageously are reduced in number compared to the diagram 800. The reason for the reduced number of
35 indeterminant areas 908 is that when the amplitudes of the first and second signals 902, 904 are different by more than about 4 dB, receiver

"capture" causes one of the signals to dominate, and the intersymbol interference goes away.

FIG. 10 is an exemplary protocol diagram 1000 in accordance with the present invention. This protocol is used by the controller 912 to
5 communicate to the base station 916 how the transmitter 702 is to change its output amplitude during simulcast transmissions. The diagram 1000 comprises a synchronization portion 1002 for synchronizing the base station 916 with the communications of the controller 912, using well-known techniques. The diagram 1000 further comprises a type indication
10 1004 for indicating the message type, e.g., output amplitude control command. In addition, the diagram 1000 includes a command 1006 for controlling the output amplitude configuration of the base station transmitter 702. This protocol advantageously allows the base station 916 to be reconfigured from time to time with regard to how it changes the
15 output amplitude of its transmissions in accordance with the present invention. As an alternative, the base station 916 can be pre-programmed, either in the field or during manufacture, with fixed instructions as to how the transmitter 702 should change its output amplitude during simulcast transmissions.

FIG. 11 is a flow diagram 1100 depicting operation of the exemplary wireless communication system in accordance with the present invention. The diagram 1100 preferably begins with the controller 912 communicating with the base station 916 to control 1102 the transmitter
20 1102 to change the output amplitude of its transmissions during a portion of the time period of each simulcast transmission. Simulations have shown that relatively small changes in the output amplitude, e.g. about ± 0.5 dB, can produce a sizable, e.g., two to one, improvement in word error rate. Alternatively, the transmitter 1102 can be arranged 1104
25 during installation and setup, or during manufacture, to change the output amplitude during a portion of the time period of each simulcast transmission. However the transmitter 1102 is programmed, the controller 912 then controls the base stations 916 to send a simulcast transmission. The transmitter 1102 then performs 1106 according to its programmed instructions for changing the output amplitude. Preferably,
30 the transmitter 1102 changes the output amplitude as a predetermined function of time, in synchronism with the symbols transmitted by the transmitter 1102.

In one embodiment, the transmitter 1102 is arranged such that the output amplitude of a central portion of each symbol does not change, while the output amplitude of non-central portions of the symbol do change. This technique exploits the fact that with normally encountered differential delay characteristics, intersymbol interference occurs primarily in the non-central portions of the symbols. In another embodiment, the transmitted signal comprises an error correcting code that can correct a predetermined number of errors in a code block, and the transmitter 1102 changes the output amplitude according to a pseudorandom sequence having a predetermined number of states, e.g., two states, during a transmission of the code block. In this embodiment, it is preferred that the transmitters 1102 in the wireless communication system utilize pseudorandom sequences that are offset from one another, so that different transmitters 1102 do not adjust their output amplitudes identically at every step of the sequence. In yet another embodiment, the transmitter 1102 is arranged to repeat a change to the output amplitude for a number of symbols, wherein the number of symbols is determined from an encoding characteristic employed by the wireless communication system, e.g., the length of an error correcting code block.

Regardless which embodiment in accordance with the present invention is used, an overall objective is to reduce errors due to intersymbol interference. When used with an error correcting code, the present invention often can reduce the number of received errors sufficiently to change an uncorrectable number of errors into a correctable number of errors, thereby advantageously salvaging a message which would otherwise have been corrupted.

Thus, it should be clear from the preceding disclosure that the present invention provides a method and apparatus for limiting the intervals of destructive cancellation during simulcast transmissions. The method and apparatus advantageously limits the intervals of destructive cancellation without utilizing the administratively difficult prior art technique of permanently offsetting the carrier frequencies of adjacent transmitters with respect to one another. In addition, the present invention provides a method and apparatus that advantageously reduces errors caused by intersymbol interference during a simulcast transmission when two or more simulcast signals are received at similar amplitudes with different transmission delays. The method and

apparatus operates without requiring a custom tuning adjustment during installation and system setup.

Many modifications and variations of the present invention are possible in light of the above teachings. Thus, it is to be understood that,
5 within the scope of the appended claims, the invention can be practiced other than as described herein above for the exemplary embodiments.

What is claimed is:

CLAIMS

1. A method in a messaging system having a plurality of base transmitters, the method for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation at a reception point during a simulcast transmission, the method comprising the steps of:

5 providing a plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators for the plurality of base transmitters, the plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators arranged to ensure that they generate a plurality of pseudorandom sequences having sub-sequences that are different from one another during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters; and

10 adjusting a cancellation-affecting parameter of the plurality of base transmitters in accordance with the plurality of pseudorandom sequences during the simulcast transmission from the plurality of base transmitters.

2. A base transmitter in a messaging system having a plurality of base transmitters, the base transmitter for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation at a reception point during a simulcast transmission, the base transmitter comprising:

20 a transmitter element for transmitting a message;
a processing system coupled to the transmitter element for controlling the transmitter element to transmit the message;

25 an input interface coupled to the processing system for receiving the message; and

a pseudorandom sequence generator coupled to the transmitter element, the pseudorandom sequence generator arranged to ensure that it generates a pseudorandom sequence having sub-sequences that are different from those generated in other ones of the plurality of base transmitters during concurrent transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters,

30 wherein the transmitter element is arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator adjusts a cancellation-affecting parameter of the transmitter element in accordance with the pseudorandom sequence during the simulcast transmission from the base transmitter.

3. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the transmitter element is further arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator adjusts a carrier frequency of the base transmitter.

5

4. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the transmitter element is further arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator adjusts a carrier phase of the base transmitter.

10

5. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the transmitter element is further arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator adjusts a carrier amplitude of the base transmitter.

15

6. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the transmitter element is further arranged such that the pseudorandom sequence generator adjusts at least two cancellation-affecting parameters selected from a group of cancellation-affecting parameters consisting of a carrier frequency, a carrier phase, and a carrier amplitude.

20

7. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the pseudorandom sequence generator is further arranged to optimize a parameter of the plurality of pseudorandom sequences according to a characteristic of a communication protocol utilized by the messaging system.

25

8. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the pseudorandom sequence generator is further arranged to provide a pseudorandom sequence identical to that of other base transmitters of the plurality of base transmitters but initialized, concurrently with the other base transmitters, with a seed value different from that of the other base transmitters.

30

9. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the pseudorandom sequence generator is further arranged to provide a pseudorandom sequence that is different from that of other base transmitters of the plurality of base transmitters.

35

10. The base transmitter of claim 2, wherein the pseudorandom sequence generator has at least a predetermined minimum number of stages.

5 11. The base transmitter of claim 2,
wherein the transmitter element is further arranged to adjust the cancellation-affecting parameter to one of N predetermined levels in accordance with the pseudorandom sequence, N being an integer greater than unity.

10 12. A method in a messaging system having a plurality of base transmitters, the method for limiting an interval of carrier cancellation at a reception point during a simulcast transmission, the method comprising the steps of:

15 providing a plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators for the plurality of base transmitters, the plurality of pseudorandom sequence generators arranged to generate a plurality of pseudorandom sequences having sub-sequences that have more than a predetermined probability of being different from one another during concurrent
20 transmissions by the plurality of base transmitters, wherein a parameter of the plurality of pseudorandom sequences is optimized according to a characteristic of a communication protocol utilized by the messaging system; and

25 adjusting a cancellation-affecting parameter of the plurality of base transmitters in accordance with the plurality of pseudorandom sequences during the simulcast transmission from the plurality of base transmitters.

13. A method in a wireless communication system for reducing errors caused by intersymbol interference in at least two simulcast signals transmitted during a time period, the at least two simulcast signals received at similar amplitudes and having different transmission delays with respect to one another, the method comprising the steps of:

5 transmitting the at least two simulcast signals from a corresponding at least two transmitters; and
changing an output amplitude of at least one of the at least
10 two transmitters during a portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference during the portion of the time period.

14. A transmitter in a wireless communication system for reducing errors caused by intersymbol interference in at least two simulcast signals transmitted during a time period, the at least two simulcast signals received by a receiver at similar amplitudes and having different transmission delays with respect to one another, the transmitter comprising:

20 a transmitter element for transmitting a first simulcast signal sent simultaneously with at least a second simulcast signal from another transmitter; and

a modulator coupled to the transmitter element for changing an output amplitude of the transmitter during a portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference at the receiver
25 during the portion of the time period.

15. The transmitter of claim 14, wherein the modulator is arranged to change the output amplitude in synchronism with a symbol transmitted from the transmitter.

30

16. The transmitter of claim 14, wherein the modulator is arranged to change the output amplitude as a predetermined function of time.

17. The transmitter of claim 14,
wherein the modulator is arranged to change the output
amplitude in synchronism with a symbol transmitted from the
transmitter, such that the output amplitude of a central portion of the
5 symbol does not change, while the output amplitude of non-central
portions of the symbol do change.
18. The transmitter of claim 14,
10 wherein the first simulcast signal comprises an error
correcting code that can correct a predetermined number of errors in a
code block, and
wherein the modulator is arranged to change the output
amplitude according to a pseudorandom sequence having a
15 predetermined number of states during a transmission of the code block.
19. The transmitter of claim 14, wherein the modulator is arranged
to repeat a change to the output amplitude for a number of symbols,
wherein the number of symbols is determined from an encoding
20 characteristic employed by the wireless communication system.
20. A controller in a wireless communication system for reducing
errors caused by intersymbol interference in at least two simulcast signals
transmitted during a time period, the at least two simulcast signals
25 received at similar amplitudes and having different transmission delays
with respect to one another, the controller comprising:
a network interface for receiving a message from a message
originator;
a processing system coupled to the network interface for
30 processing the message; and
a base station interface coupled to the processing system for
controlling a transmitter to transmit one of the at least two simulcast
signals,
wherein the processing system is programmed to control the
35 transmitter to change an output amplitude of the transmitter during a
portion of the time period, thereby altering the intersymbol interference
during the portion of the time period.

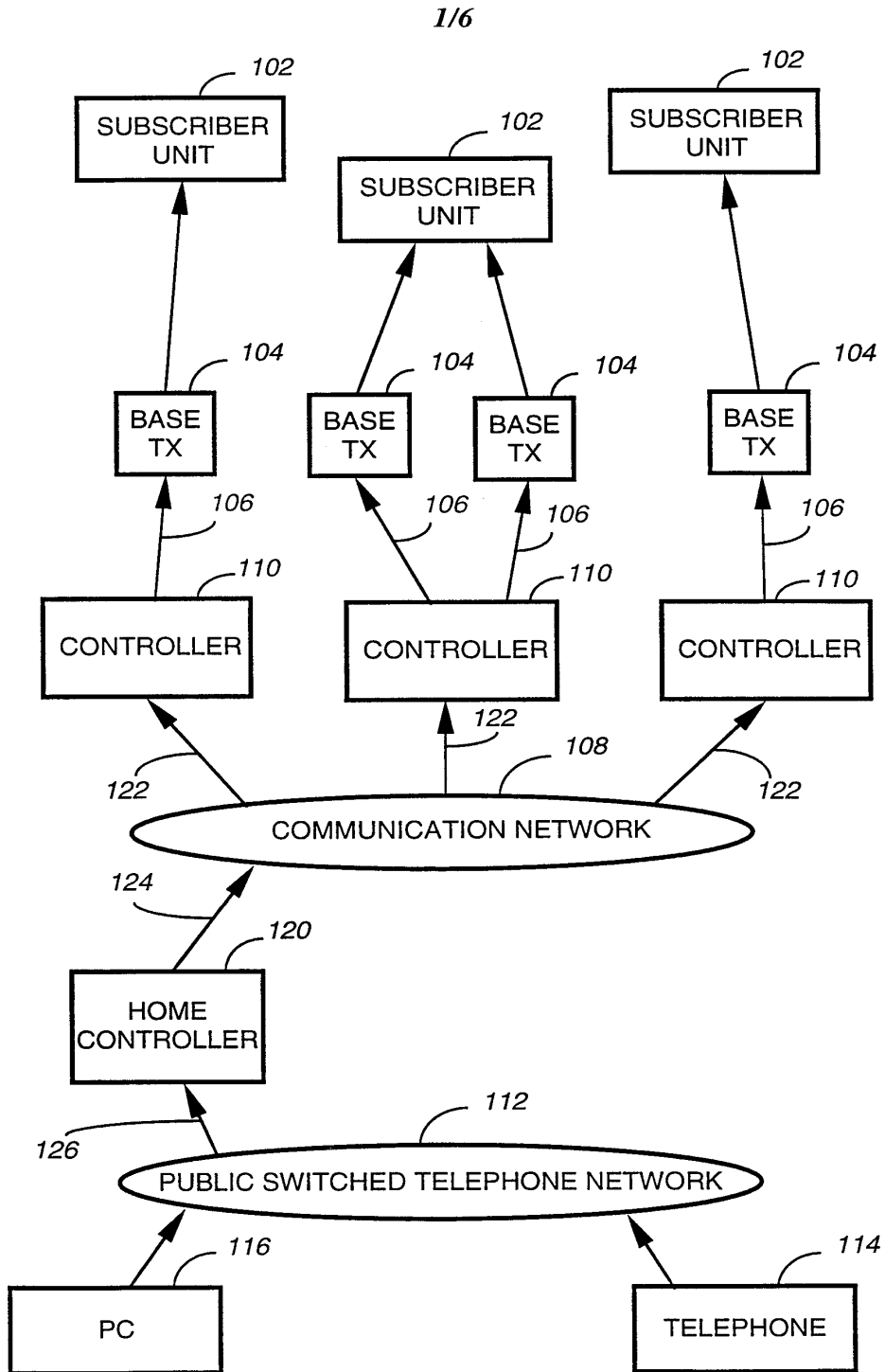
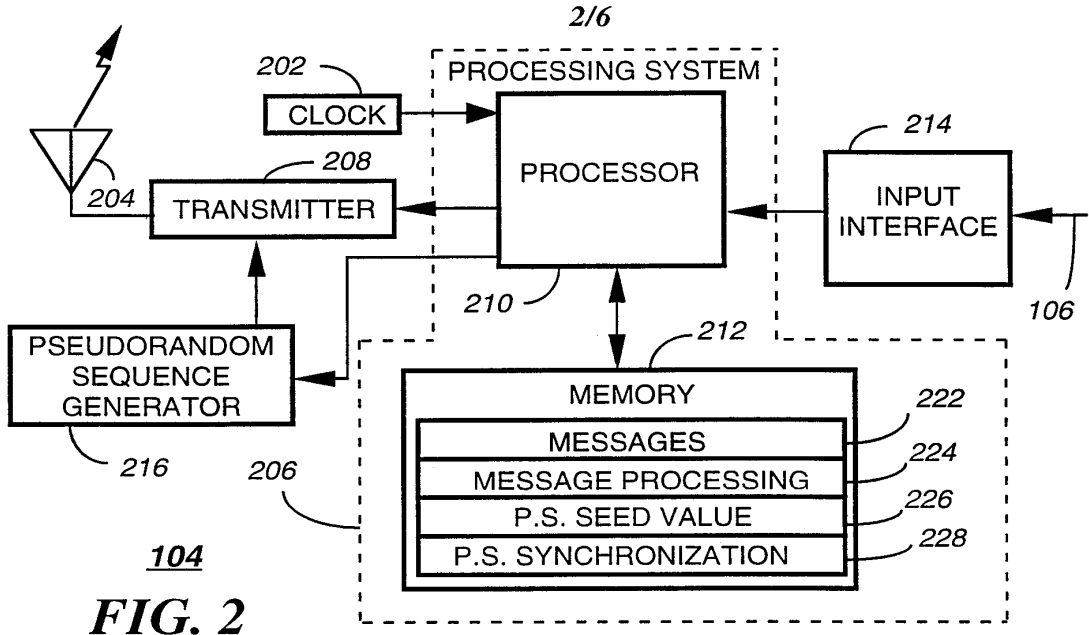
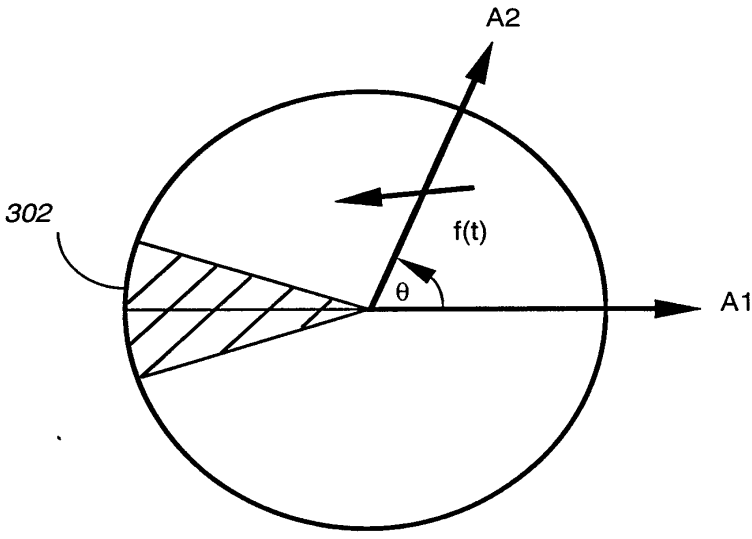


FIG. 1

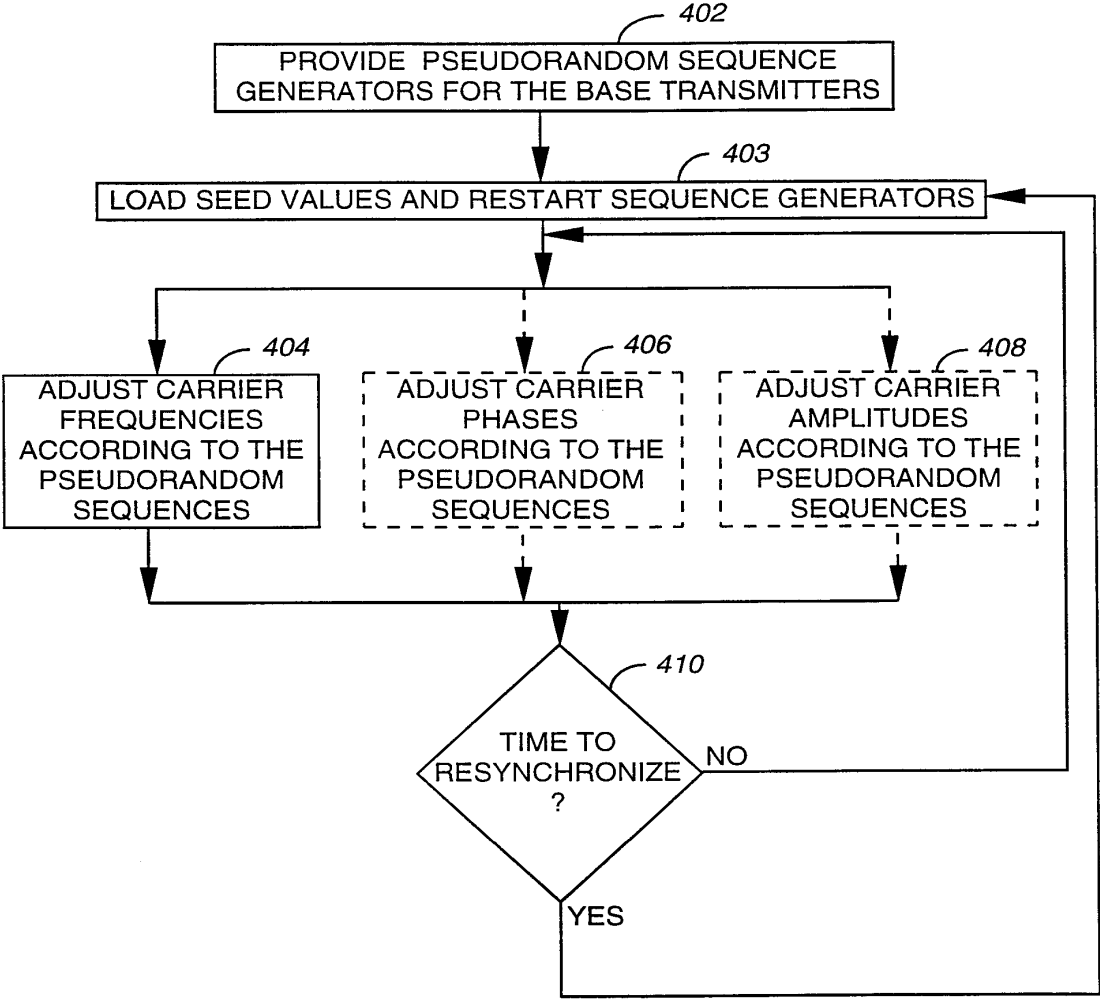


104
FIG. 2



300
FIG. 3

3/6



400

FIG. 4

4/6

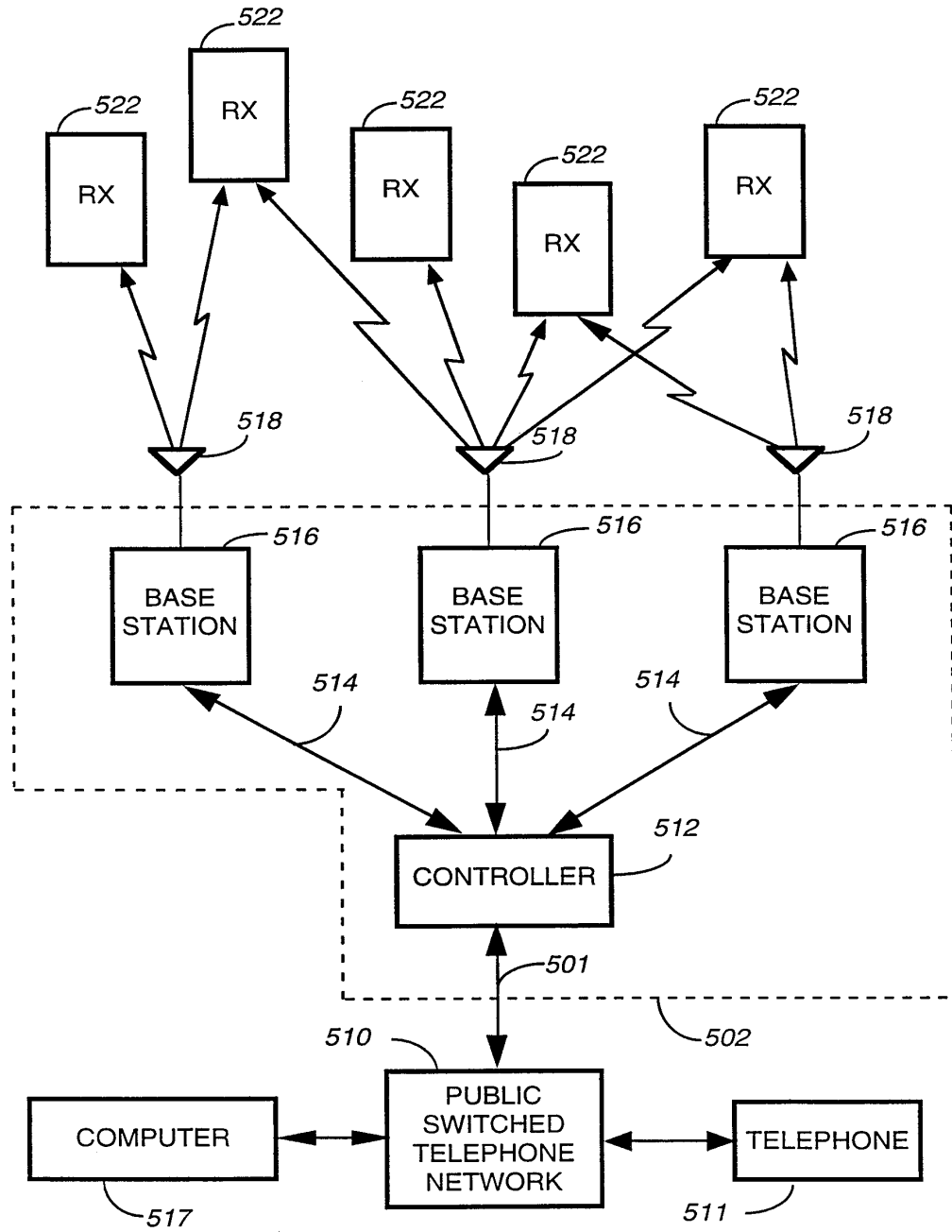
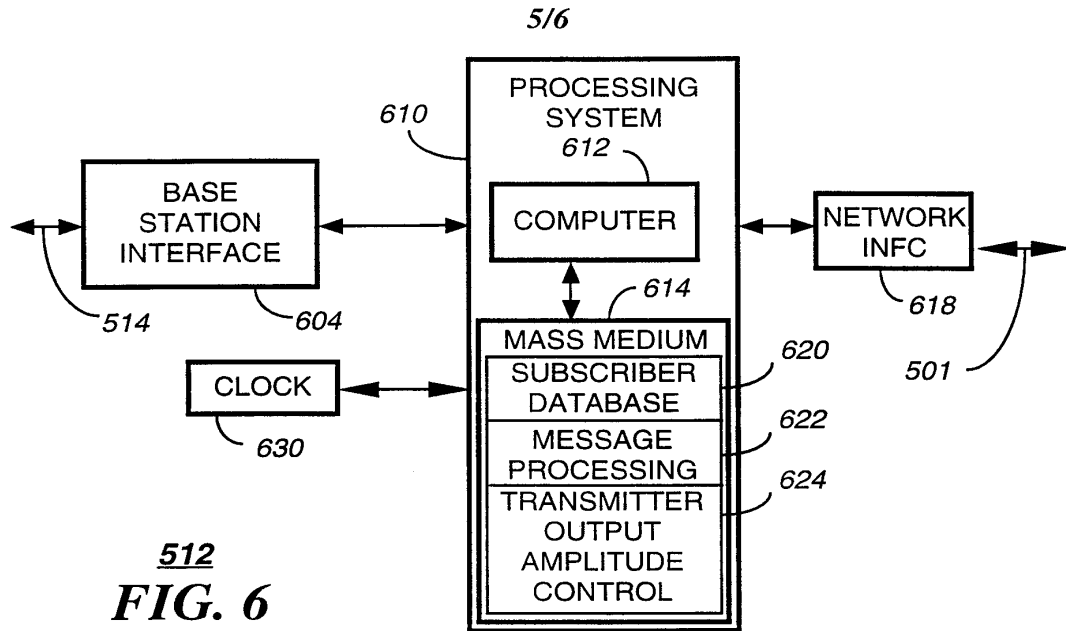
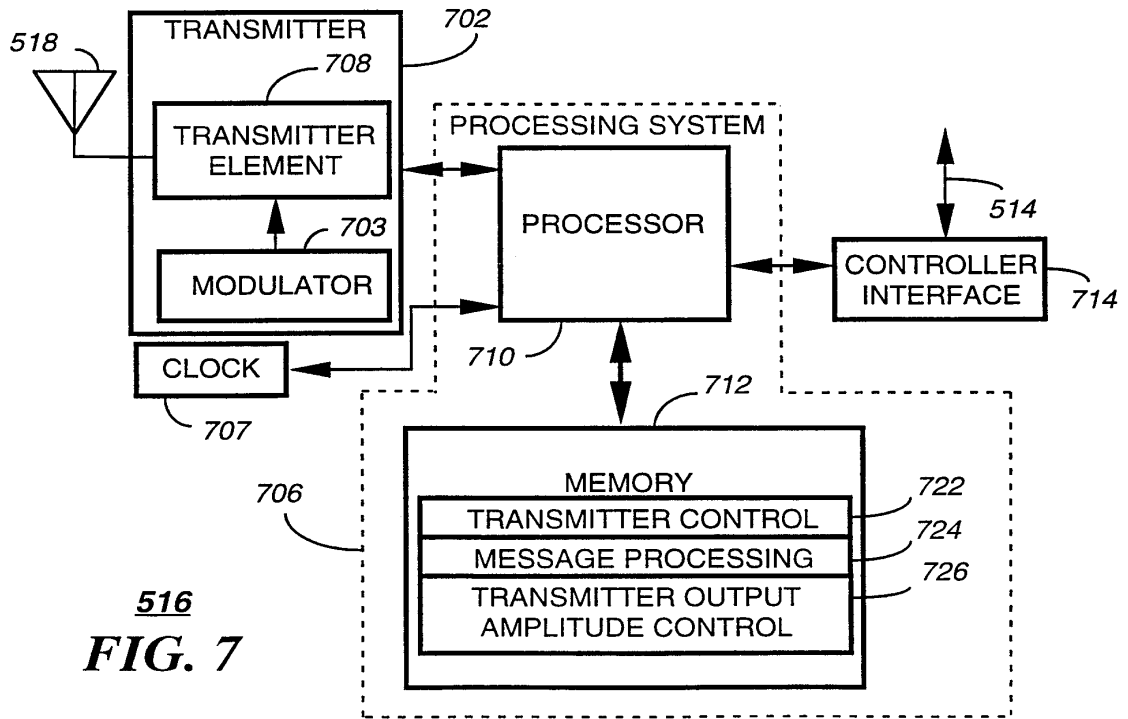


FIG. 5



512
FIG. 6



516
FIG. 7

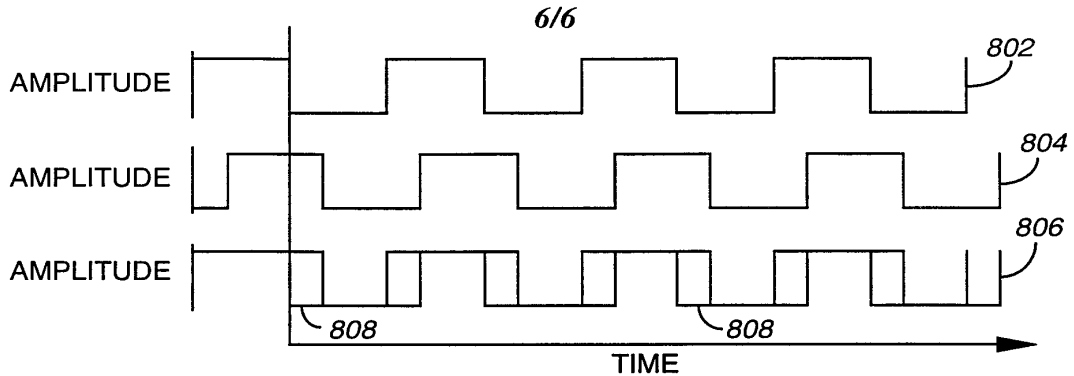
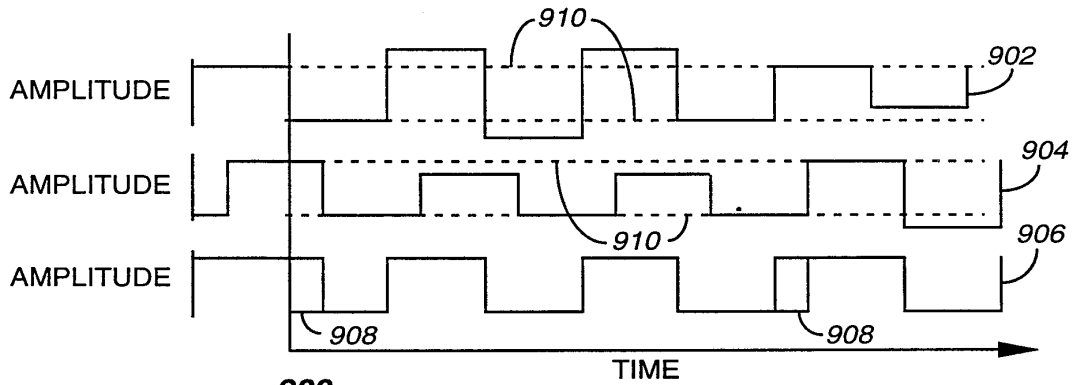


FIG. 8 800 **PRIOR ART**



900 **FIG. 9**

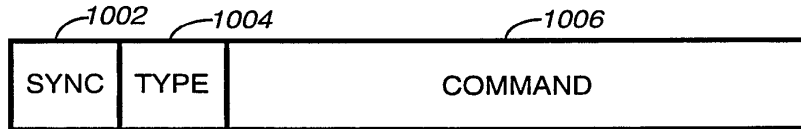


FIG. 10 1000

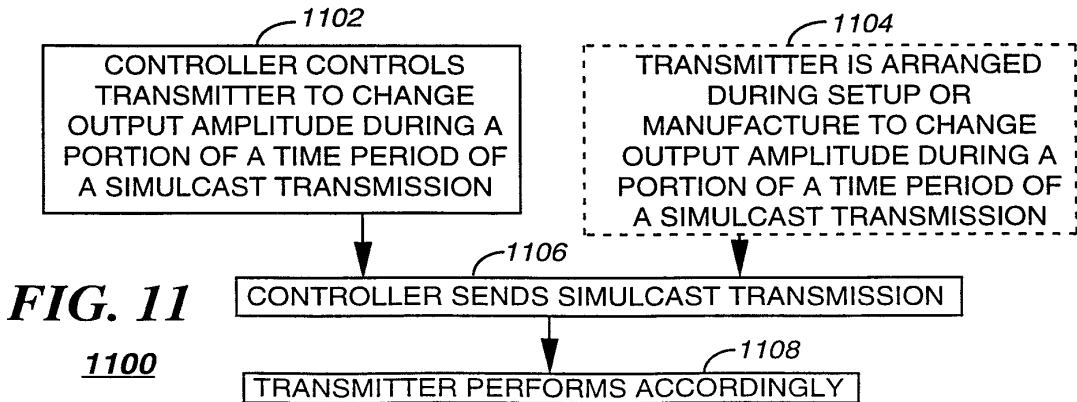


FIG. 11
1100

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US98/22801

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER		
IPC(6) :HO4B 7/005, 7/01, 7/015, 15/00 US CL : 455/503		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC		
B. FIELDS SEARCHED		
Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)		
U.S. : 455/503, 31.1, 31.2, 38.1, 59, 67.6; 340/825.44		
Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched		
Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)		
C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	US 5,392,452 A (DAVIS) 21 FEBRUARY 1995, see abstract	1-20
A,P	US 5,802,117 A (GHOSH) 01 SEPTEMBER 1998, see column 4, line 35 through column 9, line 12	1-20
A	US 5,353,307 A (LESTER et al.) 04 OCOTOBER 1994, see abstract.	1-20
A,P	US 5,737,322 A (BURBIDGE et aL.) 07 APRIL 7, 1998, see all	1-20
A	US 5,535,215 A (HIEATT, III) 09 JULY 1996, see figure 2	1-20
<input type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.		
* Special categories of cited documents:	*T*	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	*X*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
B earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*&*	document member of the same patent family
O document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		
Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report	
16 DECEMBER 1998	25 FEB 1999	
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Authorized officer DARNELL R. ASH <i>ASH</i> Telephone No. (703) 306-3015 <i>Hill</i>	

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

Application Number:				
Filing Date:				
Title of Invention:	A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM			
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes			
Filer:	Jason Vick/Christine Jacquet			
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3			
Filed as Large Entity				
Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees				
Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
Utility application filing	1011	1	330	330
Utility Search Fee	1111	1	540	540
Utility Examination Fee	1311	1	220	220
Pages:				
Claims:				
Miscellaneous-Filing:				
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				1090

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

EFS ID:	4152324
Application Number:	12255713
International Application Number:	
Confirmation Number:	3870
Title of Invention:	A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Marcos C. Tzannes
Customer Number:	62574
Filer:	Jason Vick/Christine Jacquet
Filer Authorized By:	Jason Vick
Attorney Docket Number:	5550-47-CON-3
Receipt Date:	22-OCT-2008
Filing Date:	
Time Stamp:	10:42:18
Application Type:	Utility under 35 USC 111(a)

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$ 1090
RAM confirmation Number	7122
Deposit Account	191970
Authorized User	

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Application Data Sheet	US_ADS_FORM.pdf	1198048 9a302ce5cd1ccf6a043aeb31fd8449f053fb4973	no	4

Warnings:

Information:

2		PAT_APP_FROM_PARENT.pdf	2104080 07abb8b3fd3d9aed526e9d7ee8ce2391957849	yes	25
---	--	-------------------------	---	-----	----

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description

Document Description	Start	End
Specification	1	18
Claims	19	24
Abstract	25	25

Warnings:

Information:

3		DRAW_AND_DEC_FROM_PARENT.pdf	389447 f310789259cc1cb342db07863e30d7db68cc862	yes	5
---	--	------------------------------	---	-----	---

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description

Document Description	Start	End
Drawings-only black and white line drawings	1	2
Oath or Declaration filed	3	5

Warnings:

Information:

4		PRELIM_AMEND.pdf	342135 7dea92ef56971c46a0dac0b2c4592bae848b1b08	yes	6
---	--	------------------	--	-----	---

Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description

Document Description	Start	End
Preliminary Amendment	1	1
Specification	2	2

	Claims		3	5
	Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment		6	6
Warnings:				
Information:				
5		IDS_01.pdf	525125 8bc68fa62123b2bac8ad3b4df0457df5362333d0	yes 6
Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description				
Document Description		Start	End	
Information Disclosure Statement Letter		1	3	
Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed (SB/08)		4	6	
Warnings:				
Information:				
6	Foreign Reference	JP_H10_1998_-084329.pdf	1648963 40c9155ecb0146a20291f62f095a0a7d62cf0c00	no 18
Warnings:				
Information:				
7	Foreign Reference	JP8321820A.pdf	1472960 24ac2b63d7fa8eb73096977d4f0bb76e9ad5da48	no 15
Warnings:				
Information:				
8	Foreign Reference	WO99029078.pdf	457552 b4a959a6b0a559f2d90c59bc2c5159e966512e04	no 13
Warnings:				
Information:				
9	Foreign Reference	EP0719004A2.pdf	1255520 d63e031d26b98c38621e6d8b0795c1426f90b6f0	no 26
Warnings:				
Information:				
10	NPL Documents	Bauml_Reducing.pdf	206575 2870f9e075f40e668b3949db8071f7ca765a9ae1	no 2
Warnings:				
Information:				

11	NPL Documents	5550-47-PCT_Search_Report.pdf	207210 fde804da2cecf174e0d00f3a5556afa753bd2afb	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
12	NPL Documents	5550-47-PCT_IPER.pdf	254373 f0cc02d4d93aaf6927e25ae3344f3755192fc91	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
13	NPL Documents	5550-47-PJP_OA_3-3-08.pdf	239891 51dea09ec4c4130a741e3d331e1e8cfa31a67233	no	4
Warnings:					
Information:					
14	NPL Documents	5550-47-PKR_Rejection.pdf	293800 ab883fb5d197f76d615b217a2a822de34cd82c6b	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
15	NPL Documents	5550-47-CON-2_OA_2-6-08.pdf	381810 bb3a2d806d1e7caaeda7cd7eade83670b6f23749	no	10
Warnings:					
Information:					
16	Foreign Reference	EP584534_B1.pdf	542734 c67d81817757a71f5475f3e705df348b47072481	no	10
Warnings:					
Information:					
17	Foreign Reference	GB2330491_A.pdf	1177083 d5d3aca5c0b48247e2e553f8f3638aaf69972417	no	33
Warnings:					
Information:					
18	Foreign Reference	WO1998032065_A2_A3.pdf	1849258 99089d2059ab63a73eaf4d5b7fbc2d86a41559b6	no	48
Warnings:					
Information:					
19	Foreign Reference	WO1999022463_A1.pdf	1505402 4807729580b1de08249460472dec3907313c3800	no	32
Warnings:					
Information:					

20	NPL Documents	5550-47-CON-2_OA_10-08-08.pdf	315738 84b7306f5676758faedbf784984cb640103baf5	no	6
Warnings:					
Information:					
21	Foreign Reference	5550-47-PCT_Annex.pdf	78735 d4efd5b41789dbb561f40a0cbbdbe547f93cb9da	no	3
Warnings:					
Information:					
22	Fee Worksheet (PTO-06)	fee-info.pdf	33202 fb08ce741577c81fd8d6dc65c651c3a3f9171c83	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):				16479641	
<p>This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.</p> <p><u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.</p> <p><u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.</p> <p><u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.</p>					

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76	Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3
	Application Number	
Title of Invention	A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM	
The application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it is being submitted. The following form contains the bibliographic data arranged in a format specified by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as outlined in 37 CFR 1.76. This document may be completed electronically and submitted to the Office in electronic format using the Electronic Filing System (EFS) or the document may be printed and included in a paper filed application.		

Secrecy Order 37 CFR 5.2

Portions or all of the application associated with this Application Data Sheet may fall under a Secrecy Order pursuant to 37 CFR 5.2 (Paper filers only. Applications that fall under Secrecy Order may not be filed electronically.)

Applicant Information:

Applicant 1					<input type="button" value="Remove"/>
Applicant Authority		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Inventor		<input type="radio"/> Legal Representative under 35 U.S.C. 117	
				<input type="radio"/> Party of Interest under 35 U.S.C. 118	
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Marcos	C.	Tzannes		
Residence Information (Select One)					
		<input checked="" type="radio"/> US Residency		<input type="radio"/> Non US Residency	
				<input type="radio"/> Active US Military Service	
City	Orinda	State/Province	CA	Country of Residence	US
Citizenship under 37 CFR 1.41(b) i	US				
Mailing Address of Applicant:					
Address 1	121 La Espiral				
Address 2					
City	Orinda	State/Province	CA		
Postal Code	94563	Country	US		
All Inventors Must Be Listed - Additional Inventor Information blocks may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.					<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Correspondence Information:

Enter either Customer Number or complete the Correspondence Information section below. For further information see 37 CFR 1.33(a).			
<input type="checkbox"/> An Address is being provided for the correspondence information of this application.			
Customer Number	62574		
Email Address	srlaw@sheridanross.com	<input type="button" value="Add Email"/>	<input type="button" value="Remove Email"/>

Application Information:

Title of the Invention	A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM		
Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3	Small Entity Status Claimed <input type="checkbox"/>	
Application Type	Nonprovisional		
Subject Matter	Utility		
Suggested Class (if any)		Sub Class (if any)	
Suggested Technology Center (if any)			
Total Number of Drawing Sheets (if any)	2	Suggested Figure for Publication (if any)	

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM		

Publication Information:

Request Early Publication (Fee required at time of Request 37 CFR 1.219)

Request Not to Publish. I hereby request that the attached application not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and certify that the invention disclosed in the attached application **has not and will not** be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing.

Representative Information:

Representative information should be provided for all practitioners having a power of attorney in the application. Providing this information in the Application Data Sheet does not constitute a power of attorney in the application (see 37 CFR 1.32). Enter either Customer Number or complete the Representative Name section below. If both sections are completed the Customer Number will be used for the Representative Information during processing.

Please Select One: Customer Number US Patent Practitioner Limited Recognition (37 CFR 11.9)

Customer Number 62574

Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information:

This section allows for the applicant to either claim benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, or 365(c) or indicate National Stage entry from a PCT application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and 37 CFR 1.78(a)(2) or CFR 1.78(a)(4), and need not otherwise be made part of the specification.

Prior Application Status	Pending		Remove		
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)		
	Continuation of	11863581	2007-09-28		
Prior Application Status	Patented		Remove		
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
11863581	Continuation of	11211535	2005-08-26	7292627	
Prior Application Status	Patented		Remove		
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Patent Number	Issue Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
11211535	Continuation of	09710310	2000-11-09	6961369	
Prior Application Status	Expired		Remove		
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)		
09710310	non provisional of	60164134	1999-11-09		
Additional Domestic Benefit/National Stage Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.					Add

Foreign Priority Information:

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	5550-47-CON-3
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	A SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF THE CARRIERS IN A MULTICARRIER COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM		

This section allows for the applicant to claim benefit of foreign priority and to identify any prior foreign application for which priority is not claimed. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and 37 CFR 1.55(a).

<input type="button" value="Remove"/>			
Application Number	Country ⁱ	Parent Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Priority Claimed
			<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Additional Foreign Priority Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.			<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Assignee Information:

Providing this information in the application data sheet does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of the CFR to have an assignment recorded in the Office.

<input type="button" value="Remove"/>			
Assignee 1			
If the Assignee is an Organization check here. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			
Organization Name	Aware, Inc.		
Mailing Address Information:			
Address 1	40 Middlesex Turnpike		
Address 2			
City	Bedford	State/Province	MA
Country ⁱ	US	Postal Code	01730
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			
Additional Assignee Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.			<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Signature:

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33 and 10.18. Please see 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

Signature	/Jason H. Vick/		Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2008-10-21	
First Name	Jason H.	Last Name	Vick	Registration Number	45285

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.76. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 23 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application data sheet form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

5

**A System and Method for Scrambling the Phase of the Carriers in a Multicarrier
Communications System**

Related Application

This application claims the benefit of the filing date of copending U.S. Provisional
10 Application, Serial No. 60/164,134, filed November 9, 1999, entitled "A Method For Randomizing
The Phase Of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System To Reduce The Peak To
Average Power Ratio Of The Transmitted Signal," the entirety of which provisional application is
incorporated by reference herein.

15

Field of the Invention

This invention relates to communications systems using multicarrier modulation. More
particularly, the invention relates to multicarrier communications systems that lower the peak-to-
average power ratio (PAR) of transmitted signals.

Background of the Invention

20 In a conventional multicarrier communications system, transmitters communicate over a
communication channel using multicarrier modulation or Discrete Multitone Modulation (DMT).
Carrier signals (carriers) or sub-channels spaced within a usable frequency band of the
communication channel are modulated at a symbol (i.e., block) transmission rate of the system. An
input signal, which includes input data bits, is sent to a DMT transmitter, such as a DMT modem.
25 The DMT transmitter typically modulates the phase characteristic, or phase, and amplitude of the

carrier signals using an Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT) to generate a time domain signal, or transmission signal, that represents the input signal. The DMT transmitter transmits the transmission signal, which is a linear combination of the multiple carriers, to a DMT receiver over the communication channel.

5 The phase and amplitude of the carrier signals of DMT transmission signal can be considered random because the phase and amplitude result from the modulation of an arbitrary sequence of input data bits comprising the transmitted information. Therefore, under the condition that the modulated data bit stream is random, the DMT transmission signal can be approximated as having a Gaussian probability distribution. A bit scrambler is often used in the DMT transmitter to scramble
10 the input data bits before the bits are modulated to assure that the transmitted data bits are random and, consequently, that the modulation of those bits produces a DMT transmission signal with a Gaussian probability distribution.

 With an appropriate allocation of transmit power levels to the carriers or sub-channels, such a system provides a desirable performance. Further, generating a transmission signal with a Gaussian
15 probability distribution is important in order to transmit a transmission signal with a low peak-to-average ratio (PAR), or peak-to-average power ratio. The PAR of a transmission signal is the ratio of the instantaneous peak value (i.e., maximum magnitude) of a signal parameter (e.g., voltage, current, phase, frequency, power) to the time-averaged value of the signal parameter. In DMT
20 systems, the PAR of the transmitted signal is determined by the probability of the random transmission signal reaching a certain peak voltage during the time interval required for a certain number of symbols. An example of the PAR of a transmission signal transmitted from a DMT transmitter is 14.5 dB, which is equivalent to having a 1E-7 probability of clipping. The PAR of a

In one embodiment, the input bit stream is modulated onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristic to produce a transmission signal with a reduced peak-to-average power ratio (PAR). The value is derived from a predetermined parameter, such as a random number generator, a carrier number, a DMT symbol count, a superframe count, and a hyperframe count. In another embodiment, a predetermined transmission signal is transmitted when the amplitude of the transmission signal exceeds a certain level.

In another aspect, the invention features a method wherein a value is associated with each carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. A phase shift for each carrier signal is computed based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The transmission signal is demodulated using the phase shift computed for each carrier signal.

In another aspect, the invention features a system comprising a phase scrambler that computes a phase shift for each carrier signal based on a value associated with that carrier signal. The phase scrambler also combines the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal to substantially scramble the phase characteristic of the carrier signals. In one embodiment, a modulator, in communication with the phase scrambler, modulates bits of an input signal onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristics to produce a transmission signal with a reduced PAR.

Description of the Drawings

The invention is pointed out with particularity in the appended claims. The advantages of the invention described above, as well as further advantages of the invention, may be better understood

by reference to the following description taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, in which:

Fig. 1 is a block diagram of an embodiment of a digital subscriber line communications system including a DMT (discrete multitone modulation) transceiver, in communication with a remote transceiver, having a phase scrambler for substantially scrambling the phase characteristics of carrier signals; and

Fig. 2 is a flow diagram of an embodiment of a process for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals in a transmission signal.

Detailed Description

Fig. 1 shows a digital subscriber line (DSL) communication system 2 including a discrete multitone (DMT) transceiver 10 in communication with a remote transceiver 14 over a communication channel 18 using a transmission signal 38 having a plurality of carrier signals. The DMT transceiver 10 includes a DMT transmitter 22 and a DMT receiver 26. The remote transceiver 14 includes a transmitter 30 and a receiver 34. Although described with respect to discrete multitone modulation, the principles of the invention apply also to other types of multicarrier modulation, such as, but not limited to, orthogonally multiplexed quadrature amplitude modulation (OQAM), discrete wavelet multitone (DWMT) modulation, and orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM).

The communication channel 18 provides a downstream transmission path from the DMT transmitter 22 to the remote receiver 34, and an upstream transmission path from the remote transmitter 30 to the DMT receiver 26. In one embodiment, the communication channel 18 is a pair of twisted wires of a telephone subscriber line. In other embodiments, the communication channel 18 can be a fiber optic wire, a quad cable, consisting of two pairs of twisted wires, or a quad cable

that is one of a star quad cable, a Dieselhorst-Martin quad cable, and the like. In a wireless communication system wherein the transceivers 10, 14 are wireless modems, the communication channel 18 is the air through which the transmission signal 38 travels between the transceivers 10, 14.

5 By way of example, the DMT transmitter 22 shown in Fig. 1 includes a quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) encoder 42, a modulator 46, a bit allocation table (BAT) 44, and a phase
scrambler 66. The DMT transmitter 22 can also include a bit scrambler 74, as described further
below. The remote transmitter 30 of the remote transceiver 14 comprises equivalent components as
the DMT transmitter 22. Although this embodiment specifies a detailed description of the DMT
10 transmitter 22, the inventive concepts apply also to the receivers 34, 36 which have similar
components to that of the DMT transmitter 22, but perform inverse functions in a reverse order.

The QAM encoder 42 has a single input for receiving an input serial data bit stream 54 and
multiple parallel outputs to transmit QAM symbols 58 generated by the QAM encoder 42 from the
bit stream 54. In general, the QAM encoder 42 maps the input serial bit-stream 54 in the time
15 domain into parallel QAM symbols 58 in the frequency domain. In particular, the QAM encoder 42
maps the input serial data bit stream 54 into N parallel quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM)
constellation points 58, or QAM symbols 58, where N represents the number of carrier signals
generated by the modulator 46. The BAT 44 is in communication with the QAM encoder 42 to
specify the number of bits carried by each carrier signal. The QAM symbols 58 represent the
20 amplitude and the phase characteristic of each carrier signal.

The modulator 46 provides functionality associated with the DMT modulation and
transforms the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70 each comprised of a plurality of time-

domain samples. The modulator 46 modulates each carrier signal with a different QAM symbol 58. As a result of this modulation, carrier signals have phase and amplitude characteristics based on the QAM symbol 58 and therefore based on the input-bit stream 54. In particular, the modulator 46 uses an inverse fast Fourier transform (IFFT) to change the QAM symbols 58 into a transmission signal 38 comprised of a sequence of DMT symbols 70. The modulator 46 changes the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70 through modulation of the carrier signals. In another embodiment, the modulator 46 uses the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT) to change the QAM symbols 58 into DMT symbols 70. In one embodiment, a pilot tone is included in the transmission signal 38 to provide a reference signal for coherent demodulation of the carrier signals in the remote receiver 34 during reception of the transmission signal 38.

The modulator 46 also includes a phase scrambler 66 that combines a phase shift computed for each QAM-modulated carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal. Combining phase shifts with phase characteristics, in accordance with the principles of the invention, substantially scrambles the phase characteristics of the carrier signals in the transmission signal 38. By scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals, the resulting transmission signal 38 has a substantially minimized peak-to-average (PAR) power ratio. The phase scrambler 66 can be part of or external to the modulator 46. Other embodiments of the phase scrambler 66 include, but are not limited to, a software program that is stored in local memory and is executed on the modulator 46, a digital signal processor (DSP) capable of performing mathematical functions and algorithms, and the like. The remote receiver 34 similarly includes a phase scrambler 66' for use when demodulating carrier signals that have had their phase characteristics adjusted by the phase scrambler 66 of the DMT transceiver 10.

To compute a phase shift for each carrier signal, the phase scrambler 66 associates one or more values with that carrier signal. The phase scrambler 66 determines each value for a carrier signal independently of the QAM symbols 58, and, therefore, independently of the bit value(s) modulated onto the carrier signal. The actual value(s) that the phase scrambler 66 associates with each carrier signal can be derived from one or more predefined parameters, such as a pseudo-random number generator (pseudo-RNG), a DMT carrier number, a DMT symbol count, a DMT superframe count, a DMT hyperframe count, and the like, as described in more detail below. Irrespective of the technique used to produce each value, the same technique is used by the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 so that the value associated with a given carrier signal is known at both ends of the communication channel 18.

The phase scrambler 66 then solves a predetermined equation to compute a phase shift for the carrier signal, using the value(s) associated with that carrier signal as input that effects the output of the equation. Any equation suitable for computing phase shifts can be used to compute the phase shifts. When the equation is independent of the bit values of the input serial bit stream 54, the computed phase shifts are also independent of such bit values.

In one embodiment (shown in phantom), the DMT transmitter 22 includes a bit scrambler 74, which receives the input serial bit stream 54 and outputs data bits 76 that are substantially scrambled. The substantially scrambled bits 76 are then passed to the QAM encoder 42. When the bit scrambler 74 is included in the DMT transmitter 22, the operation of the phase scrambler 66 further assures that the transmission signal 38 has a Gaussian probability distribution and, therefore, a substantially minimized PAR.

Fig. 2 shows embodiments of a process used by the DMT transmitter 22 for adjusting the phase characteristic of each carrier signal and combining these carrier signals to produce the transmission signal 38. The DMT transmitter 22 generates (step 100) a value that is associated with a carrier signal. Because the value is being used to alter the phase characteristics of the carrier signal, both the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 must recognize the value as being associated with the carrier signal. Either the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 independently derive the associated value, or one informs the other of the associated value. For example, in one embodiment the DMT transmitter 22 can derive the value from a pseudo-RNG and then transmit the generated value to the remote receiver 34. In another embodiment, the remote receiver 34 similarly derives the value from the same pseudo-RNG and the same seed as used by the transmitter (i.e., the transmitter pseudo-RNG produces the same series of random numbers as the receiver pseudo-RNG).

As another example, the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 can each maintain a symbol counter for counting DMT symbols. The DMT transmitter 22 increments its symbol counter upon transmitting a DMT symbol; the remote receiver 34 upon receipt. Thus, when the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 both use the symbol count as a value for computing phase shifts, both the DMT transmitter 22 and remote receiver 34 “know” that the value is associated with a particular DMT symbol and with each carrier signal of that DMT symbol.

Values can also be derived from other types of predefined parameters. For example, if the predefined parameter is the DMT carrier number, then the value associated with a particular carrier signal is the carrier number of that signal within the DMT symbol. The number of a carrier signal represents the location of the frequency of the carrier signal relative to the frequency of other carrier

signals within a DMT symbol. For example, in one embodiment the DSL communication system 2 provides 256 carrier signals, each separated by a frequency of 4.3125 kHz and spanning the frequency bandwidth from 0 kHz to 1104 kHz. The DMT transmitter 22 numbers the carrier signals from 0 to 255. Therefore, "DMT carrier number 50" represents the 51st DMT carrier signal which is
5 located at the frequency of 215.625 kHz (i.e., 51×4.3125 kHz).

Again, the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 can know the value that is associated with the carrier signal because both the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34 use the same predefined parameter (here, the DMT carrier number) to make the value-carrier signal association. In other embodiments (as exemplified above with the transmitter pseudo-RNG), the
10 DMT transmitter 22 can transmit the value to the remote receiver 34 (or vice versa) over the communication channel 18.

In other embodiments, other predefined parameters can be used in conjunction with the symbol count. One example of such a predefined parameter is the superframe count that increments by one every 69 DMT symbols. One exemplary implementation that achieves the superframe
15 counter is to perform a modulo 68 operation on the symbol count. As another example, the DMT transmitter 22 can maintain a hyperframe counter for counting hyperframes. An exemplary implementation of the hyperframe count is to perform a modulo 255 operation on the superframe count. Thus, the hyperframe count increments by one each time the superframe count reaches 255.

Accordingly, it is seen that some predefined parameters produce values that vary from carrier
20 signal to carrier signal. For example, when the predefined parameter is the DMT carrier number, values vary based on the frequency of the carrier signal. As another example, the pseudo-RNG generates a new random value for each carrier signal.

Other predefined parameters produce values that vary from DMT symbol 70 to DMT symbol 70. For example, when the predefined parameter is the symbol count, the superframe count, or hyperframe count, values vary based on the numerical position of the DMT symbol 70 within a sequence of symbols, superframes, or hyperframes. Predefined parameters such as the pseudo-RNG, symbol count, superframe count, and superframe can also be understood to be parameters that vary values over time. Any one or combination of the predefined parameters can provide values for input to the equation that computes a phase shift for a given carrier signal.

In one embodiment, the phase scrambling is used to avoid clipping of the transmission signal on a DMT symbol 70 by DMT symbol 70 basis. In this embodiment, the DMT transmitter 22 uses a value based on a predefined parameter that varies over time, such as the symbol count, to compute the phase shift. It is to be understood that other types of predefined parameters that vary the values associated with carrier signals can be used to practice the principles of the invention. As described above, the transceivers 10, 14 may communicate (step 110) the values to synchronize their use in modulating and demodulating the carrier signals.

The DMT transmitter 22 then computes (step 115) the phase shift that is used to adjust the phase characteristic of each carrier signal. The amount of the phase shift combined with the phase characteristic of each QAM-modulated carrier signal depends upon the equation used and the one or more values associated with that carrier signal.

The DMT transmitter 22 then combines (step 120) the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal. By scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals, the phase scrambler 66 reduces (with respect to unscrambled phase characteristics) the combined PAR of the plurality of carrier signals and, consequently, the

transmission signal 38. The following three phase shifting examples, PS #1 – PS #3, illustrate methods used by the phase scrambler 66 to combine a computed phase shift to the phase characteristic of each carrier signal.

Phase Shifting Example #1

5 Phase shifting example #1 (PS #1) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $N \times \frac{\pi}{3}$, modulo (mod) 2π . In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 50 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $50 \times \frac{\pi}{3} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{2}{3}\pi$. The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 51 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $51 \times \frac{\pi}{3} \pmod{2\pi} = \pi$. The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 0 has no phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal.

Phase Shifting Example #2

 Phase shifting example #2 (PS #2) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(N + M) \times \frac{\pi}{4}$, mod 2π , where
15 M is the symbol count. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 50 on DMT symbol count M equal to 8 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $(50 + 8) \times \frac{\pi}{4} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{\pi}{2}$. The carrier signal with the same carrier number N equal to 50 on the next DMT symbol count M equal to 9 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of that carrier signal equal to $(50 + 9) \times \frac{\pi}{4} \pmod{2\pi} = \frac{3\pi}{4}$.

Phase Shifting Example #3

Phase shifting example #3 (PS #3) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $(X_N) \times \frac{\pi}{6}, \text{ mod } 2\pi$, where X_N is an array of N pseudo-random numbers. In this example, a carrier signal having a carrier number N equal to 5 and X_N equal to [3, 8, 1, 4, 9, 5, ...] has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal that is equal to $(9) \times \frac{\pi}{6} (\text{mod } 2\pi) = \frac{\pi}{3}$. (Note that 9 is the 5th value in X_N .) The carrier signal with a carrier number N equal to 6 has a phase shift added to the phase characteristic of the carrier signal equal to $(5) \times \frac{\pi}{6} (\text{mod } 2\pi) = \frac{5\pi}{3}$.

It is to be understood that additional and/or different phase shifting techniques can be used by the phase scrambler 66, and that PS #1, #2, and #3 are merely illustrative examples of the principles of the invention. The DMT transmitter 22 then combines (step 130) the carrier signals to form the transmission signal 38. If the transmission signal is not clipped, as described below, the DMT transmitter 22 consequently transmits (step 160) the transmission signal 38 to the remote receiver 34.

Clipping of Transmission Signals

A transmission signal 38 that has high peak values of voltage (i.e., a high PAR) can induce non-linear distortion in the DMT transmitter 22 and the communication channel 18. One form of this non-linear distortion of the transmission signal 38 that may occur is the limitation of the amplitude of the transmission signal 38 (i.e., clipping). For example, a particular DMT symbol 70 clips in the time domain when one or more time domain samples in that DMT symbol 70 are larger than the maximum allowed digital value for the DMT symbols 70. In multicarrier communication

systems when clipping occurs, the transmission signal 38 does not accurately represent the input serial data bit signal 54.

In one embodiment, the DSL communication system 2 avoids the clipping of the transmission signal 38 on a DMT symbol 70 by DMT symbol 70 basis. The DMT transmitter 22
5 detects (step 140) the clipping of the transmission signal 38. If a particular DMT symbol 70 clips in the time domain to produce a clipped transmission signal 38, the DMT transmitter 22 substitutes (step 150) a predefined transmission signal 78 for the clipped transmission signal 38.

The predefined transmission signal 78 has the same duration as a DMT symbol 70 (e.g., 250 ms) in order to maintain symbol timing between the DMT transmitter 22 and the remote receiver 34.
10 The predefined transmission signal 78 is not based on (i.e., independent of) the modulated input data bit stream 54; it is a bit value pattern that is recognized by the remote receiver 34 as a substituted signal. In one embodiment, the predefined transmission signal 78 is a known pseudo-random sequence pattern that is easily detected by the remote receiver 34. In another embodiment, the predefined transmission signal 78 is an “all zeros” signal, which is a zero voltage signal produced at
15 the DMT transmitter 22 output (i.e., zero volts modulated on all the carrier signals). In addition to easy detection by the remote receiver 34, the zero voltage signal reduces the power consumption of the DMT transmitter 22 when delivered by the DMT transmitter 22. Further, a pilot tone is included in the predefined transmission signal 78 to provide a reference signal for coherent demodulation of the carrier signals in the remote receiver 34 during reception of the predefined transmission signal
20 78.

After the remote receiver 34 receives the transmission signal 38, the remote receiver 34 determines if the transmission signal 38 is equivalent to the predefined transmission signal 78. In

one embodiment, when the remote receiver 34 identifies the predefined transmission signal 78, the remote receiver 34 ignores (i.e., discards) the predefined transmission signal 78.

Following the transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78, the phase scrambler 66 shifts (step 120) the phase characteristic of the QAM-modulated carrier signals (based on one of the predefined parameters that varies over time). For example, consider that a set of QAM symbols 58 produces a DMT symbol 70 comprising a plurality of time domain samples, and that one of the time domain samples is larger than the maximum allowed digital value for the DMT symbol 70.

Therefore, because the transmission signal 38 would be clipped when sent to the remote receiver 34, the DMT transmitter 22 sends the predefined transmission signal 78 instead.

After transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78, the DMT transmitter 22 again attempts to send the same bit values that produced the clipped transmission signal 38 in a subsequent DMT symbol 70'. Because the generation of phase shifts in this embodiment is based on values that vary over time, the phase shifts computed for the subsequent DMT symbol 70' are different than those that were previously computed for the DMT symbol 70 with the clipped time domain sample.

These different phase shifts are combined to the phase characteristics of the modulated carrier signals to produce carrier signals of the subsequent DMT symbol 70' with different phase characteristics than the carrier signals of the DMT symbol 70 with the clipped time domain sample.

DMT communication systems 2 infrequently produce transmission signals 38 that clip (e.g., approximately one clip every 10^7 time domain samples 70). However, if the subsequent DMT symbol 70' includes a time domain sample that clips, then the predefined transmission signal 78 is again transmitted (step 150) to the remote receiver 34 instead of the clipped transmission signal 38. The clipping time domain sample may be on the same or on a different carrier signal than the

previously clipped DMT symbol 70. The DMT transmitter 22 repeats the transmission of the predefined transmission signal 78 until the DMT transmitter 22 produces a subsequent DMT symbol 70' that is not clipped. When the DMT transmitter 22 produces a DMT symbol 70' that is not clipped, the DTM transmitter 22 transmits (step 160) the transmission signal 38 to the remote receiver 34. The probability of a DMT symbol 70 producing a transmission signal 38 that clips in the time domain depends on the PAR of the transmission signal 38.

For example, the following phase shifting example, PST #4, illustrates the method used by the phase scrambler 66 to combine a different phase shift to the phase characteristic of each carrier signal to avoid the clipping of the transmission signal 38.

10 Phase Shifting Example #4

Phase shifting example #4 (PS #4) corresponds to adjusting the phase characteristic of the carrier signal associated with a carrier number N by $\frac{\pi}{3} \times (M + N)$, mod 2π , where M is the DMT symbol count. In this example, if the DMT symbol 70 clips when the DMT symbol count M equals 5, the predefined transmission signal 78 is transmitted instead of the current clipped transmission signal 38. On the following DMT symbol period, the DMT count M equals 6, thereby causing a different set of time domain samples to be generated for the subsequent DMT symbol 70', although the QAM symbols 58 used to produce both DMT symbols 70, 70' are the same.

If this different set of time domain samples (and consequently the transmission signal 38) is not clipped, the DMT transmitter 22 sends the transmission signal 38. If one of the time domain samples in the different set of time domain samples 70 (and consequently the transmission signal 38) is clipped, then the DMT transmitter 22 sends the predefined transmission signal 78 again. The process continues until a DMT symbol 70 is produced without a time domain sample 70 that is

clipped. In one embodiment, the transmitter 22 stops attempting to produce a non-clipped DMT symbol 70' for the particular set of QAM symbols 58 after generating a predetermined number of clipped DMT symbols 70'. At that moment, the transmitter 22 can transmit the most recently produced clipped DMT symbol 70' or the predetermined transmission signal 78.

5 The PAR of the DSL communication system 2 is reduced because the predefined transmission signal 78 is sent instead of the transmission signal 38 when the DMT symbol 70 clips. For example, a DMT communication system 2 that normally has a clipping probability of 10^{-7} for the time domain transmission signal 38 can therefore operate with a 10^{-5} probability of clipping and a lower PAR equal to 12.8 dB (as compared to 14.5 dB). When operating at a 10^{-5} probability of
10 clipping, assuming a DMT symbol 70 has 512 time-domain samples 70, the DMT transmitter 22 experiences one clipped DMT symbol 70 out of every $\frac{10^5}{512}$, or 195 DMT symbols 70. This results in the predefined (non-data carrying) transmission signal 78 being transmitted, on average, once every 195 DMT symbols. Although increasing the probability of clipping to 10^{-5} results in approximately a 0.5% (1/195) decrease in throughput, the PAR of the transmission signal 38 is
15 reduced by 1.7 dB, which reduces transmitter complexity in the form of power consumption and component linearity.

 While the invention has been shown and described with reference to specific preferred embodiments, it should be understood by those skilled in the art that various changes in form and detail may be made therein without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined
20 by the following claims. For example, although the specification uses DSL to describe the invention, it is to be understood that various form of DSL can be used, e.g., ADSL, VDSL, SDSL, HDSL, HDSL2, or SHDSL. It is also to be understood that the principles of the invention apply to

various types of applications transported over DSL systems (e.g., telecommuting, video conferencing, high speed Internet access, video-on demand).

Claims

What is claimed is:

- 1 1. In a multicarrier modulation system including a first transceiver in communication with a
2 second transceiver using a transmission signal having a plurality of carrier signals for
3 modulating an input bit stream, each carrier signal having a phase characteristic associated
4 with the input bit stream, a method for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier
5 signals comprising:
 - 6 associating each carrier signal with a value determined independently of any input bit
7 value carried by that carrier signal;
 - 8 computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that
9 carrier signal; and
 - 10 combining the phase shift computed for each carrier signal with the phase
11 characteristic of that carrier signal so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristics
12 of the plurality of carrier signals.
- 1 2. The method of claim 1 further comprising modulating bits of the input bit stream onto the
2 carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristics to produce a
3 transmission signal with a reduced peak-to-average power ratio (PAR).
- 1 3. The method of claim 1 further comprising independently deriving the value associated with
2 each carrier signal at each transceiver.

- 1 4. The method of claim 1 further comprising transmitting the value associated with each carrier
2 signal from one transceiver to the other transceiver.
- 1 5. The method of claim 1 further comprising maintaining synchronization between the
2 transceivers using the value associated with each carrier signal.
- 1 6. The method of claim 1 wherein the value varies with each carrier signal.
- 1 7. The method of claim 1 wherein the value varies with each DMT symbol.
- 1 8. The method of claim 1 wherein the value is derived from a predetermined parameter.
- 1 9. The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a carrier number.
- 1 10. The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a symbol count.
- 1 11. The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a hyperframe count.
- 1 12. The method of claim 8 wherein the predefined parameter is a superframe count.
- 1 13. The method of claim 1 further comprising scrambling the bits of the input bit stream.
- 1 14. The method of claim 1 further comprising transmitting a predetermined transmission signal
2 when the amplitude of the transmission signal exceeds a certain level.
- 1 15. The method of claim 14 wherein the predetermined transmission signal comprises a
2 predetermined pattern of bits.

- 1 16. The method of claim 14 wherein the predetermined transmission signal comprises a pilot
2 tone.
- 1 17. The method of claim 16 wherein the pilot tone is used to maintain timing synchronization
2 between the first transceiver and the second transceiver.
- 1 18. The method of claim 15 wherein each bit value in the predetermined pattern of bits is a zero
2 value.
- 1 19. The method of claim 15 wherein the predetermined pattern of bits is a pseudo-random
2 sequence pattern.
- 1 20. In a multicarrier modulation system including a first transceiver in communication with a
2 second transceiver using a transmission signal having a plurality of carrier signals for
3 modulating an input bit stream, each carrier signal having a phase characteristic with the
4 input bit stream, a method for scrambling the phase characteristics of the carrier signals
5 comprising:
6 associating each carrier signal with a value determined independently of any input bit
7 value carried by that carrier signal;
8 computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that
9 carrier signal; and
10 demodulating the transmission signal using the phase shift computed for each carrier
11 signal.

- 1 21. The method of claim 20 further comprising independently deriving the value associated with
2 each carrier signal at each transceiver.
- 1 22. The method of claim 20 further comprising transmitting the value associated with each
2 carrier signal from one transceiver to the other transceiver.
- 1 23. The method of claim 20 further comprising maintaining synchronization between the
2 transceivers using the value associated with each carrier signal.
- 1 24. The method of claim 20 wherein the value varies with each carrier signal.
- 1 25. The method of claim 20 wherein the value varies with each DMT symbol.
- 1 26. The method of claim 20 wherein the value is derived from a predetermined parameter.
- 1 27. The method of claim 26 wherein the predefined parameter is a carrier number.
- 1 28. The method of claim 26 wherein the predefined parameter is a symbol count.
- 1 29. The method of claim 26 wherein the predefined parameter is a hyperframe count.
- 1 30. The method of claim 26 wherein the predefined parameter is a superframe count.
- 1 31. The method of claim 20 further comprising receiving a predetermined transmission when the
2 amplitude of the transmission signal exceeds a certain level.
- 1 32. The method of claim 31 wherein the predetermined transmission signal comprises a
2 predetermined pattern of bits.

- 1 33. The method of claim 31 wherein the predetermined transmission signal comprises a pilot
2 tone.
- 1 34. The method of claim 33 wherein the pilot tone is used to maintain timing synchronization
2 between the first transceiver and the second transceiver.
- 1 35. The method of claim 32 wherein each bit value in the predetermined pattern of bits is a zero
2 value.
- 1 36. The method of claim 32 wherein the predetermined pattern of bits is a pseudo-random
2 sequence pattern.
- 1 37. A transceiver for communicating over a communication channel using a transmission signal
2 having a plurality of carrier signals, each carrier signal having a phase characteristic, the
3 transceiver comprising:
4 a phase scrambler computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on a value
5 associated with that carrier signal and combining the phase shift computed for each carrier
6 signal with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal so as to substantially scramble the
7 phase characteristics of the plurality of carrier signals.
- 1 38. The transceiver of claim 37 further comprising a modulator in communication with the phase
2 scrambler, the modulator modulating bits of an input signal onto the carrier signals having
3 the substantially scrambled phase characteristics to produce a transmission signal with a
4 reduced PAR.

1 39. In a multicarrier modulation system, a method for communicating over a communication
2 channel, comprising:
3 receiving over the communication channel a transmission signal comprised of a
4 sequence of DMT symbols that each have a bit-value pattern;
5 comparing the bit-value pattern of each received DMT symbol with a predetermined
6 bit value pattern;
7 discarding a given one of the received DMT symbols in the sequence of DMT
8 symbols if the bit-value pattern of that DMT symbol matches the predetermined bit-value
9 pattern, otherwise demodulating that DMT symbol.
10

Abstract

A system and method that scrambles the phase characteristic of a carrier signal are described. The scrambling of the phase characteristic of each carrier signal includes associating a value with each carrier signal and computing a phase shift for each carrier signal based on the value associated with that carrier signal. The value is determined independently of any input bit value carried by that carrier signal. The phase shift computed for each carrier signal is combined with the phase characteristic of that carrier signal so as to substantially scramble the phase characteristic of the carrier signals. Bits of an input signal are modulated onto the carrier signals having the substantially scrambled phase characteristic to produce a transmission signal with a reduced PAR.

10 rodrigue/457/17.1102554-2

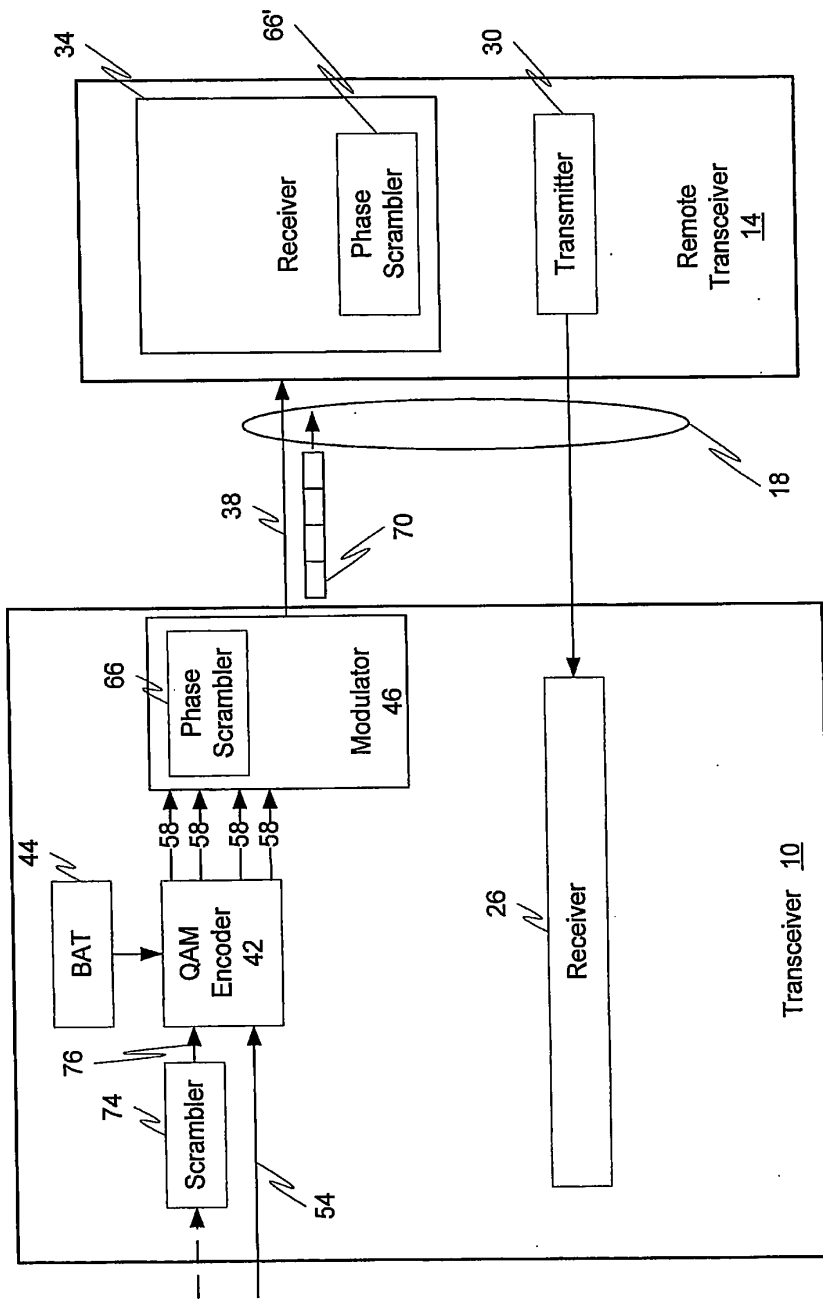


Fig. 1

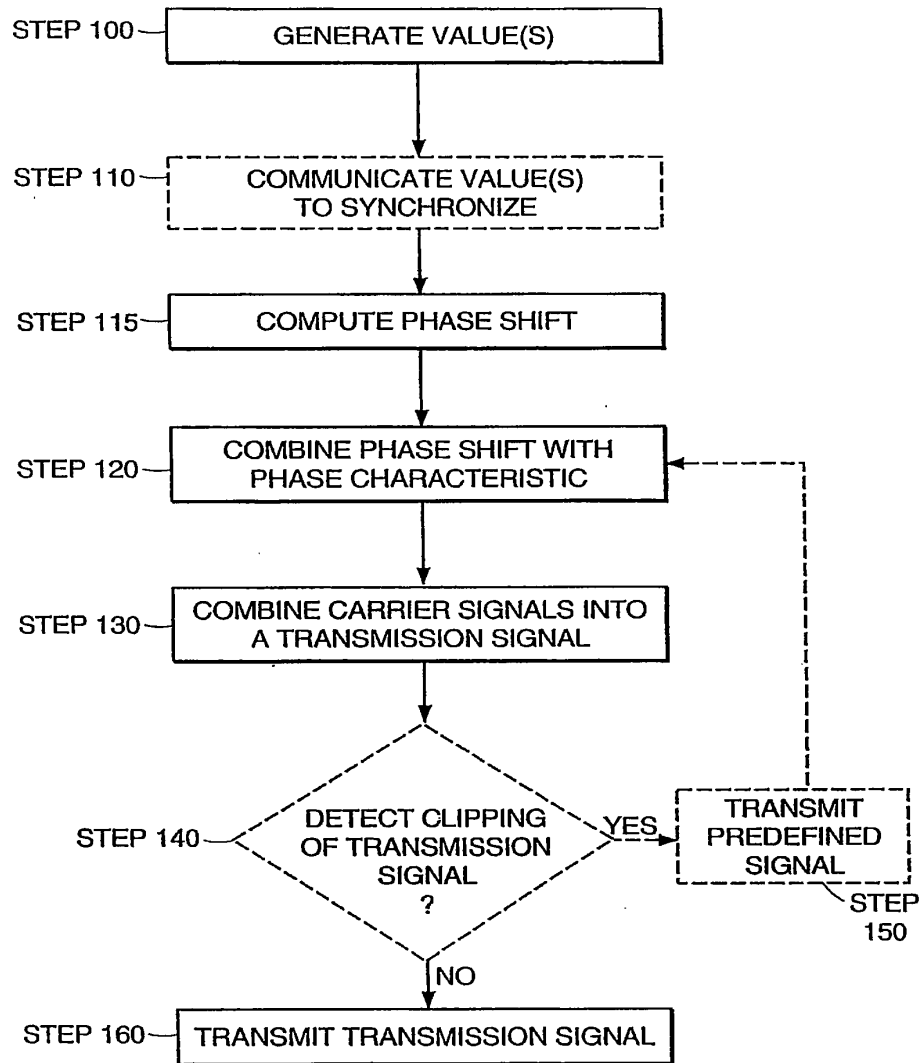


FIG. 2

DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN PATENT APPLICATION <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Declaration <input type="checkbox"/> Declaration Submitted with Submitted after Initial Initial Filing Filing (surcharge 37 CFR 1.16(e) required)	Attorney Docket No.	AWR-017 (457/19)
	First Named Inventor	Tzannes
	<i>COMPLETE IF KNOWN</i>	
	Application Serial Number	Not Yet Assigned
	Filing Date	Herewith
	Group Art Unit	Not Yet Assigned
Examiner Name	Not Yet Assigned	

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:
My residence, post office address, and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.
I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

A System And Method For Scrambling The Phase Of The Carriers In A Multicarrier Communications System

(Title of the Invention)

the specification of which
 is attached hereto
OR
 was filed on _____ as United States Application Serial Number or PCT International
(MM/DD/YYYY) Application Number _____ and was amended on (MM/DD/YYYY) _____ (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose to the Patent Office all information known by me to be material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT international application which designated at least one country other than the United States of America, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or of any PCT international application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

Prior Foreign Application Number(s)	Country	Foreign Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Priority Not Claimed	Certified Copy Attached?	
				YES	NO
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Additional foreign application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet attached hereto.

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

Application Serial Number(s)	Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	
60/164,134	11/09/1999	<input type="checkbox"/> Additional provisional application serial numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet attached hereto.

DECLARATION – Utility or Design Patent Application

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120 of any United States application(s), or 365(c), of any PCT international application designating the United States of America, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application.

U.S. Parent Application or PCT Parent Serial Number	Parent Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Parent Patent Number (if applicable)

Additional U.S. or PCT international application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet attached hereto.

As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following registered practitioners to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: Customer Number



Place Customer
Number Bar Code
Label Here

OR

Registered practitioner(s) name/registration number listed below

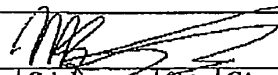
Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number
Steven M. Bauer	31,481	Thomas C. Meyers	36,989
John V. Bianco	36,748	Joseph B. Milstein	42,897
Isabelle A.S. Blundell	43,321	David G. Miranda	42,898
Maureen A. Bresnahan	44,559	Ronda P. Moore	44,244
Michael H. Brodowski	41,640	Indranil Mukerji	P-46,944
Jennifer A. Camacho	43,526	Edmund R. Pitcher	27,829
Joseph A. Capraro, Jr.	36,471	Michael A. Rodriguez	41,274
John J. Cotter	38,116	Jamie H. Rose	45,054
John V. Forcier	42,545	R. Stephen Rosenholm	45,283
Steven J. Frank	33,497	Christopher W. Stamos	35,370
Brian M. Gaff	44,691	Joseph P. Sullivan	45,349
Michael J. Giannetta	42,574	Robert J. Tosti	35,393
Duncan A. Greenhalgh	38,678	Thomas A. Turano	35,722
William G. Guerin	41,047	Michael J. Twomey	38,349
Jonathan A. Harris	44,744	Christine C. Vito	39,061
Ira V. Heffan	41,059	Patrick R.H. Waller	41,418
Danielle L. Herritt	43,670	Daniel A. Wilson	45,508
Douglas J. Kline	35,574	Yin P. Zhang	44,372
John D. Lanza	40,060		
Kurt W. Lockwood	40,704		

Additional registered practitioners named on supplemental Registered Practitioner Information sheet attached hereto.

Direct all correspondence to:

Patent Administrator
 Testa, Hurwitz & Thibault, LLP
 High Street Tower
 125 High Street
 Boston, MA 02110
 Tel. No.: (617) 248-7000
 Fax No.: (617) 248-7100

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Name of Sole or First Inventor:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor					
Given Name (first and middle (if any))				Family Name or Surname			
Marcos C.				Tzannes			
Inventor's Signature						Date	
						Nov 9, 2000	
Residence	City	Orinda	State	CA	Country	USA	Citizenship
							USA
Post Office Address		121 LaEspiral					
P.O. Address (line 2)		City	Orinda	State	CA	ZIP	94563
						Country	USA
<input type="checkbox"/> Additional inventors are being named on the _____ supplemental Additional Inventor(s) sheet(s) attached hereto.							
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor					
Given Name (first and middle (if any))				Family Name or Surname			
Inventor's Signature						Date	
Residence	City		State		Country		Citizenship
Post Office Address							
P.O. Address (line 2)		City		State		ZIP	
						Country	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor					
Given Name (first and middle (if any))				Family Name or Surname			
Inventor's Signature						Date	
Residence	City		State		Country		Citizenship
Post Office Address							
P.O. Address (line 2)		City		State		ZIP	
						Country	

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re the Application of:) Group Art Unit: Not yet assigned
)
Tzannes) Confirmation No.: Not yet assigned
)
Serial No.: Not yet assigned) Examiner: Not yet assigned
)
Filed: Herewith) INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
)
Atty. File No.: 5550-47-CON-3) Electronically Submitted
)
For: SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR)
SCRAMBLING THE PHASE OF)
THE CARRIERS IN A)
MULTICARRIER)
COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM)

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

The references cited on attached Form PTO-SB08 are being called to the attention of the Examiner.

Copies of the cited non-patent and/or foreign references are enclosed herewith.
 Copies of the cited U.S. patents and/or patent applications are enclosed herewith.
 Copies of the cited U.S. patents/patent application publications are not enclosed in accordance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(a).

Copies of the cited references are not enclosed, in accordance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.98(d), because the references were cited by or submitted to the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office in prior application Serial No. _____ filed _____, which is relied upon for an earlier filing date under 35 U.S.C. § 120.

To the best of applicants' belief, the pertinence of the foreign-language references are believed to be summarized in the attached English abstracts and in the figures, although applicants do not necessarily vouch for the accuracy of the translation.

- Examiner's attention is drawn to the following co-pending application:
 Serial No. 11/860080 filed 09-24-2007 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-CON-DIV)
 Serial No. 11/863581 filed 09-28-2007, now U.S. Patent Publication No. 2008/0069253 (Attorney's Ref. No. 5550-47-CON-2)
- Other: _____

Submission of the above information is not intended as an admission that any item is citable under the statutes or rules to support a rejection, that any item disclosed represents analogous art, or that those skilled in the art would refer to or recognize the pertinence of any reference without the benefit of hindsight, nor should an inference be drawn as to the pertinence of the references based on the order in which they are presented. Submission of this statement should not be taken as an indication that a search has been conducted, or that no better art exists.

It is respectfully requested that the cited information be expressly considered during the prosecution of this application and the references made of record therein.

FEES

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<p>37 CFR 1.97(b): No fee is believed due in connection with this submission, because the information disclosure statement submitted herewith is satisfies one of the following conditions ("X" indicates satisfaction):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Within three months of the filing date of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under 37 CFR 1.53(d), or <input type="checkbox"/> Within three months of the date of entry into the national stage of an international application as set forth in 37 CFR 1.491 or <input type="checkbox"/> Before the mailing date of a first Office Action on the merits, or <input type="checkbox"/> Before the mailing of a first Office action after the filing of a request for continued examination under 37 CFR 1.114. <p>Although no fee is believed due, if any fee is deemed due in connection with this submission, please charge such fee to Deposit Account 19-1970.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>37 CFR 1.97(c): The information disclosure statement transmitted herewith is being filed after all the above conditions (37 CFR 1.97(b)), but before the mailing date of one of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) a final action under 37 C.F.R. 1.113 or (2) a notice of allowance under 37 C.F.R. 1.311, or (3) an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application. <p>This Information Disclosure Statement is accompanied by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> A Certification (below) as specified by 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e). Although no fee is believed due, if any fee is deemed due in connection with this submission, please charge such fee to Deposit Account 19-1970. <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Please charge Deposit Account 19-1970 in the amount of \$180.00 for the fee set forth in 37 C.F.R. 1.17(p) for submission of an information disclosure statement. Please credit any overpayment or charge any underpayment to Deposit Account 19-1970.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>37 CFR 1.97(d): This Information Disclosure Statement is being submitted after the period specified in 37 CFR 1.97(c).</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> This information Disclosure Statement includes a Certification (below) as specified by 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e) AND</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Applicants hereby requests consideration of the reference(s) disclosed herein. Please charge Deposit Account 19-1970 in the amount of \$180.00 under 37 C.F.R. 1.17(p). Please credit any overpayment or charge any underpayment to Deposit Account 19-1970. Election to pay the fee should not be taken as an indication that applicant(s) cannot execute a certification.</p>
--------------------------	--

<p>Certification (37 C.F.R. 1.97(e)) (Applicable only if checked)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The undersigned certifies that:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input type="checkbox"/> Each item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of this statement. 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e)(1).</p> <p style="margin-left: 80px;"><input type="checkbox"/> A copy of the communication from the foreign patent office is enclosed.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> No item of information contained in this information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the undersigned after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in this Information Disclosure Statement was known to any individual designated in 37 C.F.R. 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of this statement. 37 C.F.R. 1.97(e)(2).</p>

Respectfully submitted,

SHERIDAN ROSS P.C.

By: _____

Jason H. Vick
 Registration No. 45285
 1560 Broadway, Suite 1200
 Denver, Colorado 80202-5141
 (303) 863-9700

Date: 21 Oct 108

Filing Date: 10/22/08

Approved for use through 7/31/2006. OMB 0651-0032
 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 12/255,713
---	---

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I			SMALL ENTITY		OR		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
FOR	NUMBER FILED (Column 1)	NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2)	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)	
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	330	
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	540	
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	220	
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	20	minus 20 =	x\$26		OR	x\$52		
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	2	minus 3 = *	x\$110			x\$220		
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$260 (\$130 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR							
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))			195			390		
			TOTAL			TOTAL	1090	

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II					SMALL ENTITY		OR		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
AMENDMENT A	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	MINUS	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X	=	OR	X	=
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X	=	OR	X	=
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))					N/A		OR	N/A	
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))										
					TOTAL ADD'T FEE			TOTAL ADD'T FEE		

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II					SMALL ENTITY		OR		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY	
AMENDMENT B	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT	MINUS	HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X	=	OR	X	=
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X	=	OR	X	=
	Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))					N/A		OR	N/A	
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))										
					TOTAL ADD'T FEE			TOTAL ADD'T FEE		

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
 *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875				Application or Docket Number 12/255,713	Filing Date 10/22/2008	<input type="checkbox"/> To be Mailed					
APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I				OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY							
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		SMALL ENTITY <input type="checkbox"/>		OR					
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)	RATE (\$)	FEE (\$)					
<input type="checkbox"/> BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A		N/A						
<input type="checkbox"/> SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (l), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A		N/A						
<input type="checkbox"/> EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A		N/A						
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	minus 20 =	*	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =					
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	minus 3 =	*	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =					
<input type="checkbox"/> APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is \$250 (\$125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).										
<input type="checkbox"/> MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))											
* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.											
APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II				OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY							
(Column 1)		(Column 2)		(Column 3)		SMALL ENTITY		OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY		
AMENDMENT	10/22/2008	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	* 20	Minus	** 20	= 0	X \$ =		OR	X \$52=	0	
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	* 2	Minus	***3	= 0	X \$ =		OR	X \$220=	0	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))										
	<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))										
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	0	
AMENDMENT		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA	RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)		RATE (\$)	ADDITIONAL FEE (\$)	
	Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =		
	Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X \$ =		OR	X \$ =		
	<input type="checkbox"/> Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))										
	<input type="checkbox"/> FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))										
						TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE		
<p>* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3. ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20". *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3". The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.</p>											
						Legal Instrument Examiner: /EVANGELINE HARRIS/					

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.16. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**
 If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.